



Cornell University Library

9724

Cornell University Library
arV18532

The art of soap-making:



3 1924 031 277 266
olin,anx

**THE
ART OF SOAP-MAKING**

THE ART OF SOAP-MAKING

A PRACTICAL HANDBOOK

OF

THE MANUFACTURE OF HARD AND SOFT SOAPS,
TOILET SOAPS, ETC.

INCLUDING MANY NEW PROCESSES, AND A CHAPTER ON
THE RECOVERY OF GLYCERINE FROM WASTE LEYS

BY ALEXANDER WATT

AUTHOR OF "ELECTRO-METALLURGY PRACTICALLY TREATED," ETC. ETC.

With Numerous Illustrations

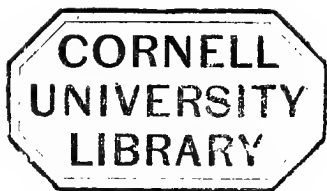


LONDON
CROSBY LOCKWOOD AND CO.

7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL

1884

[All rights reserved]



LONDON
PRINTED BY J. S. VIRTUE AND CO., LIMITED
CITY ROAD.

PREFACE.

IN compiling this book, the Author has endeavoured to fill a void in English technical literature. While almost every art is represented by treatises or handbooks of a more or less practical character, Soap-making, so far as the Author is aware, has not until the present time been furnished with a special book of reference for the convenience of its numerous followers. In the United States, however, several elaborate treatises of foreign origin have appeared, and to these the author has been greatly indebted for much valuable information, especially as regards the Continental methods of making ordinary soaps and toilet soaps, given by Dussauce, Cristiani, Ott, and Kürten.

An important feature in the present volume is the chapter on the Recovery of Glycerine from Waste Leys, in which many processes for recovering this valuable product are given.

Although it would not have been possible nor even desirable to include every known process of soap-making, a great number of processes in an abridged form are given, which cannot fail to be useful to the manufacturer.

To write an original work upon an art which has been

built up, so to speak, by the ingenuity of the great host of inventors and patentees, would be an impossibility: the present work, therefore, must be accepted as an epitome of their collective processes and improvements rather than as an original treatise, and the Author trusts that in his endeavour to produce a work which would be useful both as a practical handbook and a work of general reference, he may not have been wholly unsuccessful.

CONTENTS.



INTRODUCTION	PAGE 1
------------------------	-----------

CHAPTER I.

SAPONIFICATION EXPLAINED.

Chevreul's Theory—Liebig's Researches on Saponification	7
---	---

CHAPTER II.

THE SOAP FACTORY—ITS APPARATUS AND APPLIANCES.

The Sosp-pans—Morfit's Steam Series—The Ley Tanks—The Frames—Wooden Frames—Iron Frames—Crutches—Steam Crutch—Various other Implements—Barring Apparatus	16
---	----

CHAPTER III.

MATERIALS USED IN SOAP-MAKING.

The Fats and Oils—Olive-oil—Tallow—Lard—Palm-oil—Cocoa-nut Oil—Castor-oil—Bone-grease—Horse-gresse—Kitchen-stuff—Oleine, or Tallow-oil—Fish-oils—Resin, or Celophony—Recovered Grease or Yorkshire Fat—The Alkalies—Caustic Soda—Potash—Silicate of Soda, or Soluble Glass—China Clay, or Kaolin—Sulphate of Soda, or Glauber's Salt	25
--	----

CHAPTER IV.

CAUSTIC LEYS.

The Ley Tanks—Method of Preparing the Leys	32
--	----

CHAPTER V.

MANUFACTURE OF HARD SOAPS.

	PAGE
Castile, or Olive-oil Soap—Pure Olive-oil Soap, or White Castile Soap—Marseilles Soap—French Marbled Soap—Notes on Mottling—French Formulæ for Soaps—The Composition of Pure Olive-oil Soap—London Mottled Soap—White Curd Soap . . .	36

CHAPTER VI.

MANUFACTURE OF HARD SOAPS—Continued.

Yellow, or Resin Soaps—Continental Method—Dunn's Process—Meinicke's Process	58
---	----

CHAPTER VII.

MANUFACTURE OF HARD SOAPS—Continued.

Treatment of "Nigers"—Anderson's Process—Cocoa-nut Oil Soaps—Sturtevant's Process—French Cocoa-nut Oil Soaps	71
--	----

CHAPTER VIII.

MAKING SOAP BY THE COLD PROCESS.

Hawes's System—Making small Quantities of Soap—To prepare White Soap—Lard Soap by the Cold Process	79
--	----

CHAPTER IX.

OLEIC ACID—SOAP FROM RECOVERED GREASE.

Oleic Acid—Soap from Recovered Grease—Morfit's System of Soap-making—Oleic Acid Soaps—Kottula's Soaps—Instantaneous Soap	84
--	----

CHAPTER X.

CHEAPENED SOAPS.

Dr. Normandy's Process—Silicated Soaps: Sheridan's Process—Gossage's Processes—Preparation of Silicate of Soda—Preparation of Silicate of Potassa—Mixing Silicate of Soda with Soaps	96
--	----

CHAPTER XI.

CHEAPENED SOAPS—Continued.

	PAGE
Dunn's Process—Guppy's Process—Thomas's Process—Potato-flour in Soap—China Clay (Kaolin) in Soap—Douglas's Improvements—Fuller's Earth Soap—Davis's Process	105

CHAPTER XII.

DISINFECTING SOAP.

Chloridised Sanitary Soap—Bleaching Soap in the Pan—Pearlash added to Combined Soap—Lime Soap, by Lunge's Method	112
--	-----

CHAPTER XIII.

SAPONIFICATION UNDER PRESSURE.

Bennett and Gibbs's Process—Mr. G. W. Rogers's Process—New Process of Saponification—Gluten in Soap	117
---	-----

CHAPTER XIV.

VARIOUS PROCESSES.

Kürten's Process—Lumbarton's Process—Mr. Symons's Disinfecting Soap—Soaps made from Animal Refuse—Bernadet's Process—Villart's Process—Crevel's Process—Villacrose's Process—Cutting Soap	123
---	-----

CHAPTER XV.

MANUFACTURE OF SOFT SOAPS.

Preparation of the Potash Ley—The Fatty Materials employed—Scotch Soft Soap—London "Crown Soap"—Resin in Soft Soaps—Continental Methods	128
---	-----

CHAPTER XVI.

MANUFACTURE OF SOFT SOAPS—Continued.

Belgian Soap—Russian Soft Soap—Gentele's Process—Jacobson's Process—Soap for Silks and Printed Goods—Fulling Soap—M. Loch's Soft Soap	136
---	-----

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER XVII.

MANUFACTURE OF TOILET OR FANCY SOAPS.

	PAGE
Apparatus for Re-melting the Soap—Machine for Slicing the Soap— Re-melting the Soap—Mixing Colouring Matters and Perfumes— Cutting the Soap—Stamping the Soap	140

CHAPTER XVIII.

MANUFACTURE OF TOILET SOAPS—Continued.

Rose Soap, or Savon à la Rose—Orange-flower Soap—Cinnamon Soap—Musk Soap—Bitter Almond Soap, or Savon d'Amandes Amères—Windsor Soap—Brown Windsor Soap—Violet Windsor Soap—Savon au Bouquet—Savon à la Cannelle (Cinnamon Soap) —Almond-oil Soap—Marshmallow Soap—Vanilla Soap—Benzoin Soap	149
--	-----

CHAPTER XIX.

MANUFACTURE OF TOILET SOAPS—Continued.

French System of making Toilet Soaps—Formulae for French Toilet Soaps—Savon de Guimauve (Marshmallow Soap)—Savon aux Fleurs d'Italie—Savon de Crimée—Savon de Palme—Violet ap (Yellow)—Vanilla Soap—Rose-leaf Soap—Savon à la Maréchale—Lettuce Soap—Ambergris Soap—Elder-flower Soap —Lemon Soap—Orange Soap—Glycerine Soap—Savonnettes or Washballs—Violet Washballs—Honey Savonnettes—Savon- nettes of Sweet Herbs—Savonnettes of Camphor—Savonnettes of Neroli—Savonnettes à la Vanille—Marbled Savonnettes—Savon- nettes au Miel (Honey Savonnettes)—Floating Savonnettes— Sand-Balls	154
--	-----

CHAPTER XX.

SOFT TOILET SOAPS.

Naples Soap, or Almond Cream—French Method—White Soft Toilet Soap—Powdered Soaps—Shaving Paste—Essence of Soap— Essence de Savon Vienne—Essence de Savon Corinthe—Trans- parent Soap	165
---	-----

CHAPTER XXI.

MEDICATED SOAPS.

	PAGE
Sir H. Marsh's Sulphur Soap—Mercurial Soap—Medicinal Soft Soap—Antimonial Soap—Carbolic Acid Soap—Medicated Tar Soap—Tooth Soap—Liquid Glycerine Soap—Bordhardt's Herb Soap—Arsenical Soap—A Soap for Washing Dogs—Turpentine Soap—Tar Soap—Black Soap—Various Substances introduced into Manufactured Soaps	172

CHAPTER XXII.

MISCELLANEOUS PROCESSES.

Jennings's Processes—Levat's Process—Violet's Palm-oil Soap—Hampel's Shaving Soap—Mrs. Marriott's Process—Sawdust in Soap—Lewis's Process—Borax Soap—Camphor and Ammonia Soaps—Mackay and Seller's Process—Petroleum Soap: Bastet's Process—Besson and Remy's Process—Tardani's Process—Half-resin Soap—Mr. G. Payne's Process—Mr. Bankmann's Process—Mr. W. Jeyes's Process—M. Varicas's Process—Lorbury's Process—Cleaver's Terabene Soap—Scharr's Liquid Soap—Mr. Bichford's Process—Marking Soaps	176
---	-----

CHAPTER XXIII.

ALKALIMETRY—METHODS OF DETERMINING THE PERCENTAGE OF REAL ALKALI IN COMMERCIAL SODA ASH, POTASH, AND CAUSTIC ALKALI.

Mohr's Alkalimeter—Preparation of Test-Acid, or Standard Solution—Sampling Alkalies—The Assay—Normandy's Method—Testing Commercial Pearlashes—To determine the Percentage of real or anhydrous Alkali	188
---	-----

CHAPTER XXIV.

METHODS OF ANALYZING OR ASSAYING SOAPS.

Soap Assay—Rampel's Method of Assaying Soaps—D'Arcet's Method—Richardson and Watt's System	201
--	-----

CHAPTER XXV.

PURIFYING AND BLEACHING OILS AND FATS.

Bleaching Palm-oil: Watt's Chrome Process—Recovery of the Chrome—Bleaching Palm-oil with Chromate of Lime—Purifying	
---	--

	PAGE
Oils—Dunn's Method—Justice's Method of Purifying and Bleaching Oils and Fats	208

CHAPTER XXVI.

RECOVERY OF THE GLYCERINE FROM WASTE OR SPENT LEYS.

Young's Process—Payne's Process—Vermann's Process—O'Farrell's Process—Thomss and Fuller's Process—Allan's Process—Lawson and Sulman's Process—M. Victor Clolus's Method—Benno, Jappé, and Co.'s Method	215
--	-----

CHAPTER XXVII.

MISCELLANEOUS SOAPS.

Soap to be used in Cloth Manufactories—White Cocoa-nut Oil Soap—Dresden Palm Soap—Altenburge's Resin Soap—Ox-gall Soap—Scouring-Balls—Borax Soft Sosp—Borax Soap Powder—London Soap Powder	223
--	-----

CHAPTER XVIII.

USEFUL NOTES AND TABLES.

Pickling Soap—The Oleometer—Aluminate of Sodas—To determine the Quantity of Resin in Sosp—Detection of Resin in Soap—Cheap Almond Soap—Analyses of Soft Soaps—Potato-flour in Soft Soap—Saponification of Neutral Fatty Bodies by Soaps—Jellifying—Twaddell's Hydrometer—Causticising Sodas—Soda Soft Soap—Half-palm Soap—Adulteration of Commercial Silicate of Soda—Soaps for Calico-printers—Fulling Soaps—Table showing Percentage of Soda in Caustic Ley at 60° Fahr.—Table showing the Percentage of Anhydrous Caustic Potash in a Ley at 60° Fahr.—Comparative French and English Thermometer Scales—Table showing the Specific Gravity corresponding with the Degrees of Baumé's Hydrometer for Liquids denser than Water—Table showing the Specific Gravity corresponding with the Degrees of Baumé's Hydrometer for Liquids lighter than Water—Table of Essential Oils—Fusing and Congealing Points of Fats and Oils—Kürten's Table, showing the Composition and Product of Sosp by the Cold Process from Concentrated Ley and Mixture of Cocoa-nut Oil with Palm-oil, Lard, and Tallow—Boiling-points of some Volatile Oils—Boiling-points of Caustic Alkaline Leys—Table showing the Quantity of Caustic Soda in Leys of different Densities—Table of the Mechanical Power of Steam	228
---	-----

THE ART OF SOAP-MAKING.

INTRODUCTION.

ACCORDING to the great Roman historian, Pliny, the Gauls were the original inventors of the art of soap-making—their best product being a combination of goats' fat and the ashes of the beech-tree. The Romans subsequently acquired a knowledge of the art, and eventually introduced it into Italy after their successful invasions of Gaul. In proof of the antiquity of soap as an article of commerce, a soap-maker's shop has been discovered in the ruins of Pompeii, and is still exhibited to travellers.

Prior to the invention of soap, the ancients employed the juices of certain plants as detergents, and also fullers'-earth, which was first spread upon the surface of their clothes, and then stamped in by the feet. By this means greasy matter was removed on subsequent scouring, the fullers'-earth having the property of absorbing grease to a considerable extent. Sometimes this earth was employed as a cleansing medium in baths, and even up to the beginning of the eighteenth century this system was adopted in Rome by persons of the highest distinction.

In the eighth century there were many soap manufactories in Italy and Spain, but it is a remarkable and interesting fact that nearly five hundred years elapsed ere soap manufacture was introduced into France and practised as an art by the Phoceans, an intelligent and industrious race, of Grecian and Egyptian origin. The first soap manufactories in France were established at Marseilles, a city surrounded with natural advantages of soil and climate for the production of all the crude mate-

rials necessary for soap-making. The olive-tree, the fruit of which yields a fixed oil in great abundance, flourished in the south of France, while the shores of the Mediterranean yielded an ample supply of maritime plants, from which crude soda was obtained by calcination. Marseilles, however, with all these advantages, was unable to produce sufficient material to meet the demands of her manufacturers; therefore, as time progressed, Italy furnished supplies of olive-oil, while Spain contributed crude soda, or *barilla*.

The manufacture of soap in France was entirely confined to the combination of olive-oil and soda until the beginning of the present century, when palm-oil and cocoa-nut oil were also employed in the art, and subsequently toilet, or fancy soaps, were introduced, and ultimately formed an extensive and important addition to the soap trade.

The exact period at which soap was first manufactured in England appears somewhat uncertain, but it was probably in the fourteenth century, when it was chiefly made upon the French system, that is to say, with *barilla* (crude carbonate of soda); and some other manufacturers adopted a method practised in Germany, in which potash, followed up by salt, superseded the use of soda obtained by the calcination of maritime plants.

We find that the first patent for improvements in the manufacture of soap was obtained in 1622, by Messrs. Jones and Palmer, an abridgment of which is given below :

“The misterie, arte, way, and means of makinge of hard soape, comonly called bȳ the name of Venice or castile soape, without the vse of anie fire in the boyling or makinge thereof, and with a materiall comonly called or known by the name of berillia, and The art, misterie, way and means of makinge of softe soape without the vse of fire in the boylinge and makinge thereof.”

From the above period up to the present time, many patents for important improvements in soap-making have been taken out in England.

Having passed through a long period of rude and unscientific manipulation, the art of soap-making at last—namely, at the beginning of the present century—commanded the attention of scientific men, and the world was startled first by Leblanc's splendid process for the manufacture of soda from common salt, which process was practically developed in this country by the late Mr. James Muspratt, of St. Helen's, near Liverpool. The advantages of this invention are far beyond estimation, and although it has since been superseded to a certain extent by the ammonia process, it can never be forgotten that its introduction did more for the soap and glass manufacturer than any other invention under the sun.

The next great discovery, though not second in importance, was due to another French chemist—Chevreul—who raised soap-making from empiricism and rule-of-thumb guesswork to its present exalted position as a truly scientific art. With the rapid advance of chemical knowledge which followed the discoveries of Davy, Dalton, Chevreul, and other English and foreign chemists, the art of soap-making gradually improved, and many saponifiable substances were introduced from time to time, until, at the present day, the lengthy list includes oils and other fatty matters which were never dreamed of by our forefathers. It would not be incorrect, however, to say that up to forty years ago soap manufacture was generally conducted without any reference to scientific principles or chemical theories. Except in very rare instances, the aid of science was never consulted, and the operations were frequently carried on by persons absolutely void of even the rudiments of chemical knowledge. Indeed, the manufacturers were so completely in the power of their soap-boilers that any attempt to recognise an improvement, by giving it a fair trial, was invariably opposed and frustrated by the so-called "practical man." At the time we refer to, the prejudice against chemical interference, if we may so call it, was so great, that even scientific men of the highest ability

were spurned, and their attempts to improve the crude art were foiled in every possible way. There were, however, a few exceptions to the general rule (of thumb), and several large firms—notably the firm of Benjamin, William, and Thomas Hawes, of Lambeth—who dared to admit the teachings of science within their portals. Not only did these manufacturers encourage improvements based upon chemical principles, but they also employed chemists in their works, who, furnished with a laboratory and appliances, soon converted the operation of soap-making into an art, in the proper sense of the term. The estimation of the actual amount of alkali in a given sample of soda-ash was determined by their own chemist, in many instances indicating a wide difference when compared with the analysis of the alkali-broker's chemist. All "goods" were subjected to examination by the soap-maker's analyst before purchase, and thus the intelligent manufacturer was protected from fraud and imposition, which gave him an incalculable advantage over his unaided competitors.

Although the great French chemist, Chevreul, had clearly explained the nature of the reactions which take place when fatty substances are treated with boiling solutions of caustic alkali, few soap-makers would venture to modify their antiquated system of manufacture by calling to their aid the man of science. The soap-maker's argument seemed to be: "My soap has a large sale, it yields a good profit; what more can I require?" If the chemist told him that he was liberating a large portion of glycerine, which flowed away with his waste lye into the river or sewer, instead of being recovered, and he was thereby losing a large sum annually, the soap-maker cared not, for he still had a good profit on his soaps.

In 1836, the author's father, the late Mr. Charles Watt, patented his now well-known process for bleaching palm-oil by means of chromic acid; but it was not until several years after that soap-makers "took up" the process and adopted it. So great was the prejudice against

any and all improvement, that even a trial of the process was for a time rejected; and when at last the trade were induced, after some of the more intelligent firms had become licencees under the patent, to give the process a trial, not unfrequently would the workmen put raw (that is, unbleached) palm-oil into the batch which had been operated upon, during the patentee's absence, so that their employers might denounce the demonstration as a failure. In at least one instance a trick of this kind was practised upon the author, who for many years conducted the operation of bleaching palm-oil, on his father's behalf, in London and the provinces.

Referring to the importance of chemical knowledge in soap manufacture, Mr. William Hawes, in a paper which he read before the Society of Arts on the 28th of March, 1856, stated that 6,000 tons of tallow were converted into glycerine annually, causing a loss of about £180,000, and there is no doubt whatever that the whole of this waste could be avoided by manufacturing soap by the cold process, or at all events this valuable product should be recovered as hereafter described. At the present day, in most of the larger soap-works, the teachings of science are not only recognised, but an experienced chemist is engaged, under whose skilful guardianship the various operations are conducted. In some instances the sons of members of the firm have been properly instructed in chemical knowledge, and to them are intrusted the scientific details of this strictly chemical art. In some establishments, the principals, or at least one of them, have acquired sufficient knowledge of chemistry to enable them to conduct their operations *with a knowledge of what they are doing*; so that we may now say that at last science and soap-making go hand in hand, except in a few instances where the British workman is still looked upon as an idol.

Another important feature in the manufacture of soap was the application of steam, and superheated steam, in place of the ordinary fire. Again, improvements were made in the machinery and appliances of the soap-works,

amongst which may be noticed the substitution of cast-iron frames for the old-fashioned wooden ones, from which many a ton of soap leaked out before solidification took place ; the steam-pump superseded the ordinary ladle for fitted soaps ; the steam-crutch, in some works, supplanted the wooden or iron hand-worked implement, and (in America more especially) many mechanical contrivances have been introduced for diminishing labour and hastening the operations of manufacture. To these may be added the long series of patented processes having for their object the cheapening of the manufacture by the introduction of certain substances which, without injuring the soap, enable it to be sold at a lower price to the consumer. The various processes will be fully described when treating of the manufacture of hard soaps.

CHAPTER I.

SAPONIFICATION EXPLAINED.

Chevreul's Theory.—Liebig's Researches on Saponification.

THE combination of fatty matters with an alkali—as soda and potash for example—by the aid of water and heat, is the result of *chemical action*. It is not a mere combining of the substances in the ordinary sense, for we find, after their perfect union has been effected, that the constituents of tallow, for instance (*stearine, palmitine, and oleine**), have undergone a remarkable change—each of these substances has acquired the properties of an acid. This important discovery was made by Chevreul, and when properly understood the practice of soap-making becomes not only more certain in its results, but infinitely more economical.

Chevreul's Theory.—Chevreul discovered that when soap was decomposed by an acid, the fatty matter which thus became *separated* or set free, possessed properties entirely different from the original substance. When melted, it reddened litmus paper; it was freely soluble in warm alcohol, and was capable of forming *salts*, like ordinary acids. When a solution of carbonate of soda was added to the separated and saponified matter, soap was again formed, while a third substance, possessing a very sweet taste, remained in the “mother liquor,” which was found to be *glycerine*. The gifted chemist thus proved that soap made from tallow was in reality a compound of *stearate* and *palmitate of soda*, and that glycerine was set free during the process of saponification, which substance, being soluble, remained in the waste or spent leys, and eventu-

* The liquid constituent of tallow was generally termed *oleine* until more recent research proved it to be a compound of palmitine and oleine.

ally found its way into the sewer, or river, as the case might be.

The acids liberated during the process of converting fats and oils into soap are called "fatty acids," those obtained from tallow being chiefly stearic and palmitic acids. Olive-oil and other soft fats yield on saponification oleic acid. Palm-oil yields a mixture of palmitic and oleic acids; and cocoa-nut oil furnishes palmitic, oleic, and lauro-stearic acids.

Soap, then, is a compound of fatty acids combined with alkali and water. Other substances, however, besides oils and fats are employed in soap-making; for example, resin, a compound of several vegetable acids, is used, with tallow, to form yellow soap. *Metallic soaps*, as they are called, are produced by boiling oxides of metals with oils or other fatty matters. Diachylon-plaster, which is formed by boiling litharge (oxide of lead) with olive-oil and water, is an insoluble soap composed of oleate and margarate of lead. The glycerine formed during the process remains with the water.

Soaps are divided into two principal classes, namely HARD and SOFT SOAPS. The former are produced by combining soda and water with fatty matters, and the latter are made with potash combined with horse-oil, fish, and other inferior oils, and hence these are sometimes distinguished as *soda soaps* and *potash soaps*.

Hard soaps are of various kinds, the most important being Castile Soap, White Curd, Mottled, Yellow, and Transparent Soap. These soaps are combinations of tallow, palm-oil, cocoa-nut oil, olive oil or other fatty substances with caustic soda—that is, soda deprived of its carbonic acid by boiling with fresh lime and water.

When tallow is boiled for a considerable time in a solution of caustic soda (or *ley*, as the solution is called) the fatty matters, stearine and palmitine, assume a granular or curd-like appearance, entirely losing their greasy and oily character; and if a small portion be pressed between the folds of a piece of paper it will not produce a greasy

stain. This is proof that the conversion of the fatty substances into stearate and palmitate of soda is complete—that the mass is *saponified*, in fact. If the boiling has been sufficient, and an excess of caustic alkali remains in the ley, this will subside; and the soap, after being allowed to repose for a short time, will appear on the surface. If now a small portion be treated with warm alcohol, it will readily and entirely dissolve, forming a transparent solution of soap. After expelling the alcohol by evaporation, the transparent soap will remain, which on cooling will assume considerable hardness.

In saponifying the various fatty matters employed at the present time in soap manufacture, and which differ greatly in their composition, much care is exercised as to the strength of alkaline ley used in the first and subsequent operations of boiling. If the ley be too strong, its superior density will retard its free diffusion through the mass of fatty matter. It is commonly the practice, therefore, with tallow soaps, to apply caustic ley of a moderate strength at first, and when this has become exhausted or “spent,” as it is termed, it is pumped out of the copper or pan, and a fresh charge of ley of superior strength given, and the boiling continued until the grease or fat is “killed” or neutralised by the alkali. During the boiling glycerine is liberated, and this substance, being soluble in water, subsides with the ley. Until recently, the exhausted leys were allowed to flow away as a waste product; at the present time, however, the glycerine is usually recovered by one or other of the various processes fully described in Chapter XXVI.

It is well known that caustic ley acts differently upon the various fatty bodies with which it comes in contact. For example, a weak ley will act upon tallow until its alkali becomes exhausted, or nearly so; whereas a ley of equal strength will scarcely, if at all, saponify cocoa-nut oil. When, however, cocoa-nut oil is blended with other fatty substances, it will readily become acted upon by weak leys. Again, resin, although it is readily converted

into soap by treatment with alkali, will not form a hard soap unless combined with a certain proportion of tallow, which, during the process of saponification, exerts a powerful influence upon its constituents, probably by chemical action not yet fully understood.

Liebig's Researches on Saponification.—Justus Liebig—to whose original mind we are indebted for so many valuable discoveries in organic chemistry—made some important researches on the saponification of fatty bodies, and his views should be well understood by the soap-maker who recognises the value of scientific knowledge in the pursuit of his interesting art.

“Potassa and soda soaps,” says Liebig, “are readily soluble in hot water and alcohol. The addition of a quantity of water to the aqueous solution produces precipitation, the neutral salts of stearic and margaric acid decomposing into free alkali, which remains in solution, and stearate and margarate of the alkali (potash or soda), which precipitates in the form of pearly crystalline scales. Potassa soaps are more soluble in water than those containing soda. Stearate of soda may be considered as the type of hard soaps, and when in contact with ten times as much water it undergoes no striking change. Stearate of potassa forms a thick paste with the same quantity of water. Oleate of soda is soluble in ten parts of water, while oleate of potassa dissolves in four parts of water, forming a gelatinous mass with two parts, and possesses such a strong affinity for water that 100 parts absorb 162 parts in a moist atmosphere. Margaric acid acts like stearic acid. From this it follows that soaps are soft in proportion to the oleates, and hard in proportion to the stearates and margarates, they contain. Soda soap exhibits a peculiar behaviour with common salt; it loses the power of being penetrated by ley or dissolving in a solution of salt of a certain strength, and this remarkable action is an important condition in its manufacture, on which depends the separation of all free alkali and oxide of glyceryl (glycerine), its percentage of water, and its marketable condition.

“ If a piece of common hard soap be cut into pieces and then put into a saturated solution of salt, at the ordinary temperature, it floats on the surface without becoming moistened, and if heated to boiling, it separates into gelatinous flocculæ, which collect on the surface, and upon cooling unite into a solid mass, from which the solution flows off like water from grease. If the flocculæ be taken out of the fluid, they congeal on cooling into an opaque mass, which may be pressed between the fingers into fine laminæ without adhering to them. If the solution of salt be not quite saturated, the soap takes up a certain quantity of the water, and the flocculæ separate through the fluid in boiling. But even when the water contains $\frac{1}{400}$ th of common salt, boiling produces no solution.

“ If the soap be boiled in a dilute and alkaline solution of salt, and allowed to cool, it again collects on the fluid in a more or less solid state, depending on the greater or less concentration of the solution—that is, on the quantity of water taken up by the soap. By boiling the dilute solution with soap for a considerable time, the watery flocculæ swell up, and the mixture assumes a foaming appearance; but they still are undissolved, for the solution separates from them. The flocculæ, however, have become soft and pasty, even when cold, and their clamminess is due more or less to the quantity of water they have taken up. By continued boiling this character again changes, and in proportion as the evaporation of water renders the solution more concentrated, the latter again extracts water from the flocculæ, the liquid continues to foam, but the bubbles are larger. At length a point is reached when the solution becomes saturated; but before this, large iridescent bubbles are observed to form, and in a short time all the froth disappears, the liquid continues to boil without foam, all the soap collects in a translucent mass on the surface, and the solution and soap cease to attract water from each other. If the plastic soap be now removed and cooled while the solution is pressed out, it will have become so solid as scarcely to receive an impression from the finger. In this condition it is called *grain soap*.

“The addition of salt, or a solution thereof, to a concentrated alkaline solution of soap in water, precipitates the soap in gelatinous flocculæ, and the mixture behaves precisely like solid soap boiled with a dilute solution of salt. Carbonated and caustic potassa act exactly like salt, by separating soap from the alkaline fluid (ley) in which it is absolutely insoluble.”

These observations, so carefully made and clearly explained, cannot fail to be of the greatest value to the manufacturer of a commercial article so important as soap, and which, at the present day, is made from such a great variety of fatty materials, each requiring a different treatment for its skilful and economical conversion into soap. Continuing his observations, Liebig says, “The application of the above to the manufacture of soap is evident. The fat is kept boiling in an alkaline ley until all pasty matters disappear, but the ley should have only a certain strength, so that the soap may be perfectly dissolved in it. Thus tallow may be boiled for days in a caustic potassa ley of the specific gravity of 1.25° without saponifying. If the ley be stronger, a partial saponification takes place, but, being soluble in the fluid, it floats upon the surface as a solid mass. By the gradual addition of water and continued boilings, at a certain point the mass becomes thick and clammy, and with more water a kind of emulsion is formed, which continued heating renders perfectly clear and transparent if a sufficient quantity of alkali be present. In this state it may be drawn into long threads, which on cooling either remain transparent, or are more milky and gelatinous. As long as the hot mass, when it drops from a spatula, exhibits cloudiness or opalescence, the boiling is continued or fresh alkali added. When excess of alkali is present the cloudiness arises from imperfect saponification or insufficiency of water: the former is seen by dissolving a little in pure water, which becomes perfectly clear when the whole is saponified. If the ley contains lime the mixture is also clouded, but the addition of carbonated alkali instantly clarifies it.

“In order to separate the soap from water, free alkali,

and oxide of glyceryl, a large quantity of salt is gradually added to the boiling mass, on each addition waiting until it is dissolved. The first addition increases the consistency of the mass, while each successive portion renders it more fluid, till it loses its threading character, and drops from the spatula in short, thick lumps. As soon as the congelation is complete—that is, when the gelatinous flocculæ separate from a clear watery liquid—the fire is extinguished, the soap allowed to collect on the surface, and cooled either on the liquid or ladled out and allowed to solidify. In the former case it is impure from water, free alkalis, or other impurities of the ley, and is therefore unfit for the market, although sufficiently good for domestic use. As in other chemical operations a precipitate is purified by boiling it in a fluid in which it is not soluble, so is soap purified by a solution of salt rendered alkaline.

“When the saponified fluid is made with potassa, the salt (chloride of sodium) operates in a two-fold manner: it dissolves in the pasty liquid and decomposes, forming on the one hand chloride of potassium, and on the other soda soap. When potash ley is employed in soap-making, the first salting requires more than twice the quantity of salt. In the preparation of potash soaps, a concentrated potassa ley is employed for separating the soap. The saponification of fats is not completed by the first treatment with leys, and the subsequent addition of fresh leys, besides purifying, also renders saponification more perfect.”

It must be obvious, on perusing the above remarks of the great German chemist, that the first duty of the soap-maker is to make himself thoroughly conversant with the principles of saponification, and not to rely solely upon his own observation. The soap-boiler, be he ever so skilful and observant—and there are many such—should avail himself of such important information as is conveyed in the above lucid and practical observations.

It will be seen that the combination of alkali with fatty matter is not by any means a rapid process, but is the result of slow and gradual chemical action, during which

considerable heat is generated over and above the actual temperature of the materials when placed in contact. Although saponification is hastened by the process of boiling, it is not advisable to apply vigorous boiling in the earlier stages of the operation. On the contrary, it is found better in practice to allow the boiling to be gentle at first, and to increase its rapidity toward the close of the operation, or when the materials have absorbed their full percentage of alkali.

Although it is practically impossible to make soap without liberating a portion of the fatty matters as glycerine, this soluble substance may be recovered, as a valuable by-product, by either of the processes hereafter described. The proper strength of leys, their gradual combination with the various fatty bodies with which they come in contact, and the slow and gentle augmentation of the boiling operation while saponification is progressing, are important considerations, upon which too much care cannot be bestowed. Indeed, it is gratifying to know that of late years some of our leading soap-makers have devoted much attention to alkalimetry, and the treatment of various fats and oils with alkaline leys of appropriate strength, according to the nature of the fatty matter to be used. The examination, by analysis, of samples from various boils of soap enables the manufacturer not only to regulate his mode of working, but also to determine the intrinsic value, so to speak, of his productions.

In making what are called "fitted soaps," the ingredients are boiled into a thin liquid mass, or emulsion, during the first operation, after which a second dose of ley, as also a considerable quantity of common salt, are introduced into the pan for the purpose of "cutting the pan," as it is termed, by which the soap separates from the ley and salt, and rises to the surface, while most of the impurities and foreign matters subside with the ley. If the materials are not sufficiently saponified and purified, the ley is pumped out and fresh ley introduced, with further boiling, and the mass is again "cut," or separated, by the addition of weaker ley and salt, the operation

being repeated if necessary. The application of common salt not only promotes the separation of the saponified or semi-saponified matters from existing impurities and the exhausted alkaline ley, but it also, by its density, facilitates their subsidence. Moreover, the presence of salt in the ley doubtless enables it to acquire a higher temperature during the subsequent boilings, and thus hastens the evaporation of water from the saponified materials.

CHAPTER II.

THE SOAP FACTORY—ITS APPARATUS AND APPLIANCES.

The Soap-Pans. — Morfit's Steam Series. — Ley Tanks. — Frames. —
Wooden Frames. — Iron Frames. — Crutches. — Steam Crutch. —
Various other Implements. — Barring Apparatus.

WHEN we consider the magnitude of the operations connected with the art of soap-making, and the large quantities of soap annually produced by our numerous manufacturers, we cannot help reflecting upon the comparative simplicity of the apparatus and utensils employed at an ordinary soap-works. A series of iron pans or coppers, set in brickwork, with firegrate below, or steam-pipes passing into the interior of each pan; a series of wooden or cast-iron frames to receive the finished soap; sundry pails or buckets, shovels and trowels; iron pumps and "shoots" for removing waste or spent leys; a few hydrometers and thermometers; tanks for preparing caustic alkali; wheelbarrows and trollies for conveying materials; "swimmers" and ladles of various kinds; "crutches" and stirrers; a wooden machine for cutting soap into bars, with the usual firing tools, form the chief requirements of an ordinary soapery.

In some of the more extensive works, however, many mechanical improvements have been introduced, which will be referred to in the following pages. For the present we will endeavour to demonstrate the requirements of a soap factory of moderate dimensions, in which advantage has been taken of some useful labour-saving appliances, as also of the application of steam, in place of fire, in the operations of soap-boiling.

The Soap-Pans were generally made of cast-iron, with a flange round the upper surface. These pans are concave at the bottom, and are fitted with steam-pipes which terminate in a perforated coil which rests on the bottom of each pan. The pans are set in brickwork, and an iron pump for removing the finished soap and leys is fixed between each pair of pans. This pump is worked by steam, and is connected to two movable arms of broad iron tubing, one of which rests in each pan. These tubes are raised or lowered by means of a chain and pulley, so that they may be allowed to dip into the soap to any required depth, or into the ley beneath it. The pump can empty the contents of one or both pans at the same time.

The pans project about three feet above the floor, which enables the soap-boiler and his assistants to manipulate them with perfect ease. Each pan is fitted with an iron lid, or with a wooden lid covered with sheet-iron. The lids are lowered or raised by a chain and pulley.

The soap-pan or copper (or as the French and Americans term it, *kettle*), is sometimes made of cast-iron, in several divisions, united together by iron cement, the lower portion, or pan proper, being of a concave form, the whole being set in brickwork, which is so constructed that the fire plays only upon the lower part of the pan, and not upon its sides. Soap-pans of large dimensions are generally made of wrought-iron plates riveted together.

The soap-pan is sometimes extended by placing what is termed a *curb* above its upper rim, which is made of stout sheet-iron, or of wood bound with iron. The object of the curb is to prevent the overflow of the soap during the more vigorous operation of boiling. Sometimes (when steam heat is employed) stout blocks of wood are placed round the flange of the pan instead of employing the curb.

Morfit's Steam Series.—The accompanying engraving (Fig. 1) represents a steam series designed by Mr. Morfit. Although not so simple as the arrangement previously described, it is an ingenious system, and might be adopted with

advantage. The three pans represented may be employed, if preferred, for boiling three different kinds of soap—namely, one for white or curd soaps, another for yellow or resin soaps, and a third for superior soaps. *w* is the boiler, to which the main pipe or feeder *G* is connected. The boiling-pans, which are of iron, are each fitted with a wooden curb *A A*, hooped round by iron bands. The

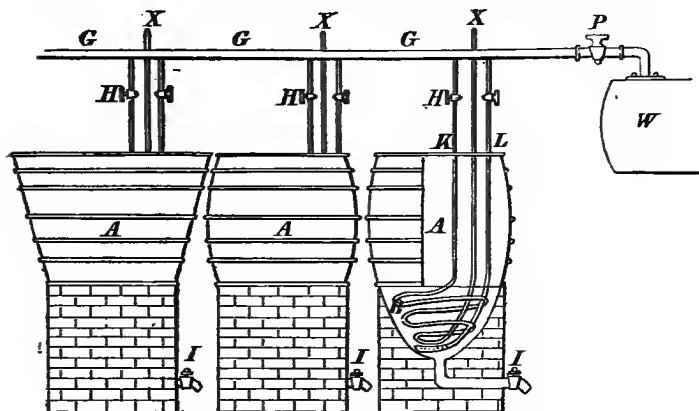


Fig. 1.

lower part of each pan *B* is of cast-iron. Connected to the bottom of the pans is a pipe and stop-cock *i*, for drawing off the spent leys. *H H* is a downward pipe for conveying the steam to the coil, which terminates in a vertical length of piping *x* for the escape of waste steam. The taps *H H* are used for turning the steam on or off. A "blowpipe" *L* is connected to the main pipe *G*. This blowpipe terminates in a single coil perforated with a number of holes. The object of the blowpipe is to give additional heat, when necessary, and to assist in stirring up the contents of the pan. The tap *P* is used for regulating the pressure of steam from the boiler *w*.

Steam-jacket pans, especially for small operations, are very useful in a soap factory, and are admirably suited for

remelting, in the preparation of fancy soaps. Such pans are much used in dissolving silicate of soda, sulphate of soda, and other materials employed in cheapening soaps.

The Ley Tanks, containing caustic alkali of various ascertained strengths, are sometimes placed at one end of the series of soap-pans, and at a suitable height above them, so that the leys may be conveniently run off by iron shoots into each pan, by turning the tap connected to either tank. These tanks are commonly made of wrought iron plates riveted together.

The Frames for casting the finished soap are now generally made of cast-iron plates, united by movable bolts and screws—the ends and sides of which fit into an iron base. These frames generally hold about 11 cwt. of soap.

Wooden Frames, which formerly were used for all varieties of soap, are now chiefly used for mottled soaps, which are required to cool slowly in order to acquire the agreeable marbled appearance for which they are famed. These wooden frames are furnished with pegs and holes, so that they may be piled one above another, and form, as it were, one deep frame or well, capable of holding a considerable quantity of soap. Indeed, sometimes these frames are built up, through several floors, to a great height, forming a receptacle for an entire boil of many tons of soap. Sometimes the frames are bound together by long iron screwed rods which pass down through them.

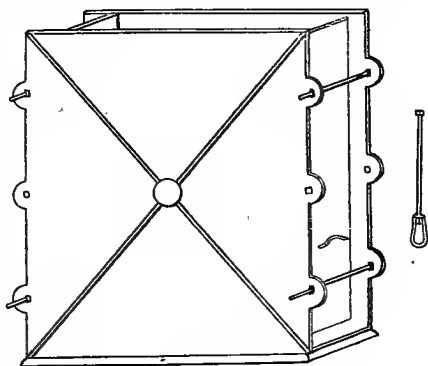


Fig. 2.

Iron Frames.—The engraving (Fig. 2) represents an

iron frame partly screwed up ; Fig. 3 is a single wooden

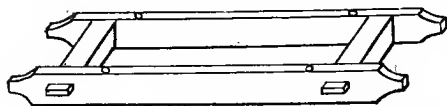


Fig. 3.

frame, and in Fig. 4 several wooden frames are shown connected by their pegs to each other.

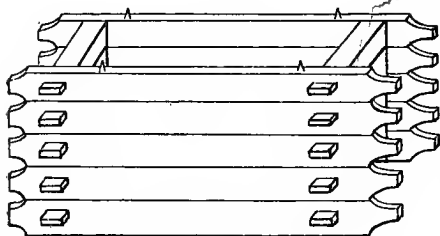


Fig. 4.

The interior width of soap frame corresponds to the length of a bar of soap, and the length of a frame is equal to the thickness of about twenty bars of soap.

Crutches.—

When it is desirable to add to true soap other substances, for the purpose of cheapening or modifying it for various special purposes, the additional matter is frequently introduced by being "crutched in," as it is termed. For this purpose certain tools called "crutches" are employed. These are made of wood or iron, or of iron with a wooden handle. Two forms of these are given in Figs. 5 and 6.

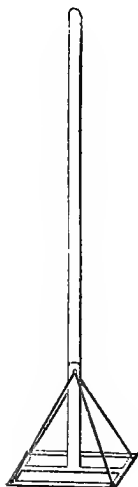


Fig. 5.

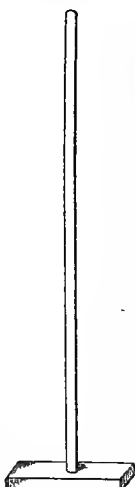


Fig. 6.

Steam Crutch.—A far more effective way of mixing other substances (as silicate of soda for example) with soap is by means of the steam crutch and crutching-pot, by aid of which a perfect incorporation of

the materials is effected, without manual labour, in a few minutes, and the soap thus treated is much more uniform than it is possible to become if hand-crutched in the frame. The arrangement for steam crutching may be thus briefly described :—

A wooden platform is erected about ten feet above the floor of the boiling room near the soap-pans; in this a small pan is set for containing the liquid materials to be added to the soap, and which receives the required charge of liquid for a frame of soap. By the side of this platform, and connected to a shaft above, is a vertical revolving spindle, furnished with several flat steel blades (Fig. 7) fixed alternately and in an angular direction. This revolving spindle or "steam crutch" is raised or lowered by means of a rope and pulley. When required for use, the crutching pot is wheeled up to and immediately beneath the crutching spindle, the wheels of the "pot" being placed in grooves or hollows in the floor. The pot having received a supply of soap, the quantity of which has been duly gauged by a notched stick, the steam crutch is lowered, and sinks into the soap, revolving with considerable rapidity.

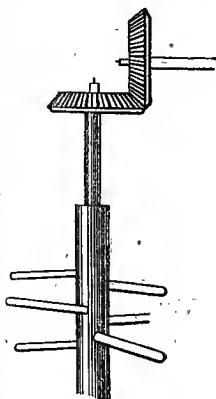


Fig. 7.

The contents of the little pan are now allowed to flow into the pot, and soon after the required quantity has been crutched in, the revolving shaft is stopped, and the crutch raised out of the pot, which is then wheeled away to make room for a second pot, and is then drawn up close to a frame, and its contents allowed to pour out by raising an iron gate situated near its base. Fig. 8 represents the crutching pot with its gate A raised by the lever B; and at Fig. 7 is a drawing of the steam crutch, in which its several blades are shown. The bevel wheels above indicate its connection with the usual shafting.

In small works, where steam is not extensively

employed, waste leys are pumped from the soap-pans by iron hand-pumps, which are lowered into the pans by means of a chain or rope.

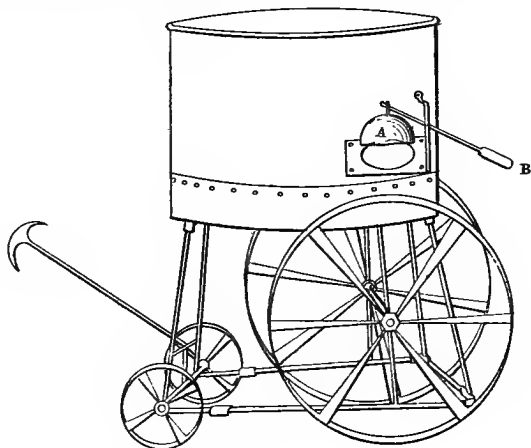


Fig. 8.

Various other Implements are employed in the soap-boiling department; these are the trowel (Fig. 10), the ladles (Figs. 11 and 12), the "swimmer" (Fig. 13), and various broad shovels and iron "shoots" (Fig. 9), the



Fig. 9.

latter being used for conveying leys and soap to and from the pans. Besides these, however, wheelbarrows and



Fig. 10.

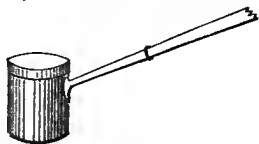


Fig. 11.

trolleys are used for conveying materials, such as casks of fatty matters, resin, and other goods.

One of the most important, and at the same time most disagreeable, operations connected with a soap-works is that of making the caustic leys. This is generally conducted in a building at a convenient distance from the boiling room, and in such a situation that the lime-waste resulting from

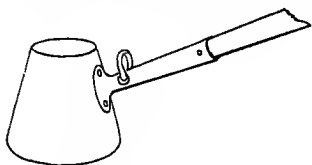


Fig. 12.

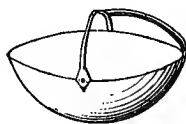


Fig. 13.

the operation can be readily removed to a part of the adjacent ground where it will be out of the way. The soda and slaked lime employed in the production of caustic soda are, with the necessary addition of water, boiled together by means of steam, and the resulting ley, after subsidence of the carbonate of lime, is pumped out or drawn off into tanks ready for use.

Barring Apparatus.—The ordinary apparatus employed for cutting soap into bars consists of a wooden machine running upon wheels (Fig. 14). A back of stout timber projects several feet above the grooved table *a*, upon which the slabs of soap are piled, and are kept in position by the upright back, *b*. Two men, provided with a length of brass

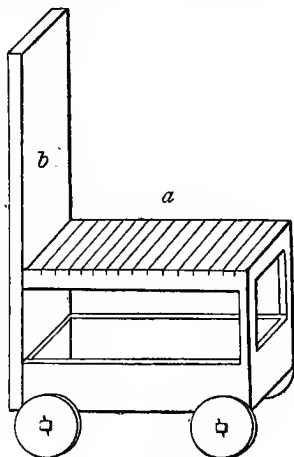


Fig. 14.

or steel wire looped at each end, take their stand at the machine, and first mark the width of the bars by means of the toothed gauging stick (Fig. 15), which, being drawn

evenly downwards, marks each slab as a guide for the cutting wire. Each man now takes one end of the wire,

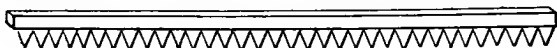


Fig. 15.

and passes a wooden handle through the loop. The wire is then placed in the notches made by the gauge, and is then steadily drawn downward until it sinks into the groove beneath. One of the men now removes his handle from the loop, and the other draws the wire through the groove and returns the end of the wire to his mate, the same operation being repeated until the entire number of slabs are cut. The bars of soap are then removed, and a fresh batch of slabs placed upon the machine. Bars of soap are usually about $14\frac{1}{2}$ inches long by $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches thick, and $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches in width.

In some factories cutting machines are used which will cut into bars a considerable number of slabs at one time. This machine consists of strong wooden framework with wrought-iron fittings, and a series of steel wires fixed at equal distances. Although this machine is capable of cutting a great number of bars by a single movement, the wires are very liable to break, and this frequently causes delay while the broken wires are being replaced. The machine, however, is a very time-saving one when in good order.

CHAPTER III.

MATERIALS USED IN SOAP-MAKING.

The Fats and Oils.—Olive-oil.—Tallow.—Lard.—Palm-oil—Cocoa-nut Oil.—Castor-oil.—Bone-grease.—Horse-grease.—Kitchen-stuff.—Oleine or Tallow Oil.—Fish-oils.—Resin.—Recovered Grease.—The Alkalies.—Caustic Soda.—Potash.—Silicate of Soda.—China Clay.—Sulphate of Soda.

The Fats and Oils.—From the period when the principles of saponification began to be understood by soap-makers, the employment of other than the ordinary soap materials commanded attention; and, aided by the investigations of chemists, the manufacturers gradually added to their list of fatty, or saponifiable, matters, until, at the present time, any material that will form soap is worked up in some way or other.

Olive-oil, as we have shown, formed the basis of continental soaps prior to the art being introduced into England. This oil is expressed from the fruit of the olive-tree, and comes into the market in three different conditions: the finest, or *virgin salad-oil*; an inferior kind obtained by greater pressure of the berries with the aid of boiling water, and a third quality obtained by boiling the residuum with water. It is the latter variety which is more commonly employed in soap-making.

When olive-oil is lowered to the temperature of 38° Fahr. it begins to congeal, and at 20° it separates into two distinct substances, *elaine*, or *oleine*, which is fluid, and *margarine*, a solid pearly substance. Margarine is not a true chemical compound, however, but is a mixture of stearine and palmitine. The proportions are (about) 72 per cent. *elaine*, and 28 per cent. *margarine*. Olive-oil is frequently adulterated with poppy and other oils. These are distinguished by not congealing at the same temperature as olive-oil, and also by retaining

air, when shaken up, more readily than pure olive-oil. If 5 per cent. of any other oil be present, the consolidation is slower and less firm, but if 12 per cent. of foreign oil be mixed with it, this floats on the surface for several days. Oils of poppy, sesame, rapeseed, or cocoa-nut may be thus recognised when mixed with olive-oil.

Tallow is chiefly obtained from the fat of sheep and oxen, the tallow being first *rendered*, as it is technically called—that is, separated from the membranous matter with which it is associated in the form of suet. The rendering of tallow is accomplished in various ways: by first reducing the suet to small pieces, and then passing a current of steam through it by means of perforated piping, or by the method patented by the late Mr. Charles Watt, in 1836, which consists in adding to the fat, while in the steaming tub, dilute sulphuric acid, to which a little nitric acid is added, and a small quantity of bichromate of potash. When the lumps of fat are nearly dissolved, about one pound of nitric acid, diluted with one quart of water, is poured into the tub, followed, shortly after, by about two ounces of alcohol, the whole being briskly stirred in. When this process was first introduced, for the operations of the tallow-melter, it was found that candles made from the tallow, thus treated, required no *storing*, as it was termed. In those days candles were frequently stored for several months before being considered fit for lighting purposes. The object of the process was to destroy the tissues surrounding the fat, which steam alone did not accomplish.

London, or “town,” tallow is generally considered the best material of its kind, but Russian, South American, and, in later years, Australian tallows enter the market in large quantities.

Fats or greases of various kinds, other than tallow, are also largely employed in soap-making.

Lard, or the fat of hogs, is extensively used, especially by the French, in the manufacture of soaps. According to Ure it is composed of 62 parts of oleine and 38 parts of stearine in 100 parts, and its fusing point is 81° Fabr.

Palm-oil, which is stated to be used more extensively

by English soap-makers than any other fatty material, is obtained from the fruit of *Elais guineaensis*, and *E. melanococca*, species of palm-trees growing on the west coast of Africa. The oil as it comes into this country is of a deep orange-red colour, due to the mode of its extraction from the fruit—from which no doubt the colouring matter is derived, since the oil itself is nearly colourless. This valuable vegetable fatty matter, which it would be more correct to term butter than an oil, is composed of about 30 parts of a solid substance called *palmitine*, and 70 parts of a fluid, *elaine* or *oleine*. It is solid at ordinary temperatures, but fuses, or melts, at 117·5 Fahr. By exposure to the air it turns rancid and loses its characteristic red colour. The process of bleaching palm-oil by chromic acid will be fully described in a future chapter.

Cocoa-nut Oil is derived from the fruit of *Cocos nucifera*. Like palm-oil, it is solid at ordinary temperatures, and is a pure white, and of a buttery consistence. It is extensively used in soap-making—especially for the inferior kinds of soap, and will bear a large admixture of water, in combination with silicate of soda and other substances, and yet form a hard soap. All soaps made with even a small percentage of cocoa-nut oil impart an offensive smell to the skin after washing with it. This oil is very extensively used in the manufacture of artificial mottled soaps, but more especially in the north of England, where enormous quantities of it are consumed annually.

Castor-oil, from the seeds of *Ricinus communis* and *R. Europæa*, is also used as a soap material. It is obtained largely from the East and West Indies, and also from North America. Castor-oil is supposed to contain three fatty acids, namely, *ricin-oleic*, *margaritic*, and *elaiodic* acids. When treated with hyponitrous acid, a solid fatty mass is produced, which is called *palmine*. Although not soluble alone in alcohol it will, according to Dr. Pereira, dissolve in this spirit when mixed with other fixed oils. Castor-oil is capable of forming soap with caustic alkalies, but is always used in combination with other fatty matters for this purpose.

Among the other vegetable fixed oils used in soap-making may be mentioned the oils of hempseed, rapeseed, cotton-seed, poppy, linseed, sesamum, colza, beech-nut, etc.

Besides the ordinary fats and oils, certain fatty matters called *greases* are much used by soap-makers.

Bone-grease is supplied by bone-boilers, and forms a useful soap material for mottled soaps.

Horse-grease, although not an abundant article, is available as a soap material.

Kitchen-stuff, as prepared by the "stuff-melters," is a very useful material for mottled soaps, and is largely used by the London soap-makers for this purpose. Being the produce of kitchen waste it contains many different kinds of fatty matter, but after its separation from the more solid particles, as gristle, rind, bones, fibrin, etc., by pressure, it forms an uniform fatty mass of good consistency, and contains a considerable proportion of stearine, which renders it well suited to the manufacture of a curd soap such as the London mottled soap.

Oleine, or Tallow-oil, which has been separated from stearine by pressure, in order that the latter may be used alone for candle-making, is a useful material, in combination with stronger fats.

Fish-oils are chiefly used in the manufacture of soft, or potash soaps, in combination with tallow.

Resin, or Colophony, was first employed as a soap material in England. It is extensively used in the manufacture of yellow soaps, the pale, or yellow resin being preferred for this purpose. Yellow resin generally contains a little water, which does not exist in the darker varieties.

Recovered grease, or Yorkshire fat, is obtained from the suds and washing waters of the fulling mills. It is of a brown colour, of disagreeable odour, and of a sticky consistence. When melted, and a strong solution of *carbonate of soda* added to it, effervescence takes place, from the disengagement of carbonic acid, the grease consisting of several fatty acids, which act powerfully upon the carbonated alkali.* When neutralised, and mixed

* This grease often contains oils which cannot be saponified.

with other soaps, the recovered grease is useful in the manufacture of the cheaper kinds of Windsor and other scented soaps.

The Alkalies used in the saponification of the various fatty substances employed in soap manufacture are soda and potash, the former being used, in a caustic state, in the preparation of *hard soaps*, and the latter, also being causticised, is used for making *soft soaps*. The soda supplied to soap-makers is an impure carbonate of that alkali. As we have said, soap was formerly made from *barilla*, a crude carbonate of soda obtained by the calcination of certain plants which were found on the coasts of France, Spain, and other countries; it was also made from *kelp*, obtained by burning a great variety of seaweeds on the shores of Scotland, Ireland, Brittany and Normandy in France. When Leblanc, however, introduced his invaluable process for converting sea-salt, first into sulphate of soda by treating it with sulphuric acid, and afterwards into carbonate of soda by calcining with fine coal and chalk, the employment of barillas and kelps gradually, and eventually entirely, ceased. And now, after enjoying a long period of unbounded success, other improved processes are fast taking the place of Leblanc's process.

For a lengthened period, and indeed up to the present time, soap-makers were accustomed to purchase their alkali under the name of *soda ash*, which usually contains about 50 to 52 per cent. of soda, the exact percentage being determined by processes to be explained hereafter. Soda ash, besides other impurities, usually contains from 2 to 3 per cent. of common salt.

Caustic Soda is now supplied to soap-makers at a reasonable price, consequently they prefer purchasing this important article to making their own caustic soda, which involves not only considerable trouble and delay in its preparation, but also an accumulation of lime-waste, which is not always easy to get rid of in large cities and towns.

The author, in conjunction with Mr. J. Berger Spence, obtained a patent, in April, 1882, for making caustic soda

by the decomposition of common salt by electricity, and by this process it is expected that the cost of making this important article of commerce will be greatly reduced, even beyond the present extremely low prices.

Potash, previously rendered caustic by boiling with quicklime and water, is used in the manufacture of soft soaps. American potash is, however, chiefly used for this purpose.

Silicate of Soda, or Soluble Glass, as supplied to the trade, is in the form of a thick, viscid, translucent mass, which flows very slowly from the casks in which it is stored after the heads or bungs have been removed. It is prepared by boiling ground flints (silica) in a strong solution of caustic soda. When dissolved in hot water it forms a solution which unites with certain kinds of soap very readily, forming a cheapened compound readily marketable; and since the silicate of soda possesses considerable detergent properties, its admixture with genuine or pure soap gives an advantage to the consumer which few soap adulterants can boast. The introduction and method of preparation of this interesting article into soap is due to Mr. Sheridan, who obtained a patent for his invention as far back as 1838. Since that period, however, many other patents have been obtained for the manufacture and employment of silicate of soda, all more or less based upon Sheridan's invention. Silicate of soda (or soluble glass) is now commonly made by calcining together, in a reverberatory furnace, 9 parts of soda ash of 50 per cent. with 11 parts of clean sand or powdered quartz, for hard soaps; or equal parts of pearlash (previously dried) and sand for soft soaps, the latter mixture forming silicate of potash. After perfect combination of the alkali with the silicious matter, it is cast into moulds, and afterwards quenched with water. It is next ground in a mill, and then boiled in water containing alkali—potash or soda, as the case may be. The solution thus obtained is evaporated until it indicates 59 by Baumé's areometer, or hydrometer. In this condition it is ready for mixing with soaps, but the soluble glass is generally supplied to soap-makers in the form of a

thick, viscid mass, which they reduce with hot water to any required strength.

China clay, or Kaolin, is sometimes used as an adulterant in the manufacture of some of the cheaper soaps.

Sulphate of Soda, or Glauber's Salt, is also extensively used in combination with soaps of the cheaper kind, the mixture producing a soap of considerable hardness, while reducing its percentage of fatty material.

CHAPTER IV.

CAUSTIC LEYS.

The Ley Tanks.—Method of Preparing the Leys.

The Ley Tanks are large vessels made of wrought-iron plates riveted together; in some factories they are constructed of brickwork lined with cement. Dussauce recommends large tuns lined with sheet lead, with a perforated false bottom, which he believes would be the most durable apparatus for this purpose. A cock should be fitted near the bottom of each tun, and through it the clear ley, collecting in the lower part of the vessel between the diaphragm and the bottom, can be drawn off into vessels placed beneath. Near the vat should be a pump with its spout arranged for a supply of water.

The arrangement of ley tanks in a Marseilles soapworks is as follows:—

No. 1 is called the *fresh vat*, into which the fresh alkali and lime are introduced; No. 2 is termed the *avançaire*, it being one step in advance; No. 3 is the small *avançaire*, being two steps in advance, and therefore containing *weaker* liquor, and No. 4 is called the *water vat*, because it receives the water directly. Into No. 3 the moderately exhausted or spent leys are thrown. From No. 3. the ley is pumped into No. 2 to be strengthened, and in like manner from No. 2 to No. 1. Upon the lime paste in No. 4, which has been taken from No. 3, water is poured; the ley thus obtained is poured upon the lime paste of No. 3, which has been removed from No. 2. No. 3 is twice lixivated, and No. 2 once. The receiver under No. 1 has four compartments; into No. 1 the third ley, and into No. 4 the fourth ley, which is so weak as to be

used for lixiviation instead of water. The lime vat No. 4, when exhausted, is emptied out of the window near which it stands, in which case the water is poured upon the contents of No. 3, and the weakest ley upon No. 2. No. 1 is now *avançaire* to No. 4, because this has become in its turn the *fresh* vat, into which the fresh soda and quicklime are put. The ley discharged from No. 3 comes in this case upon No. 2, and after being run through it, is thrown upon No. 1.

In some large factories the ley tanks are placed in a building apart from the soapery, and from thence the ley is pumped into tanks situated near the soap-pans, a very cleanly and convenient arrangement.

Method of Preparing the Leys.—This operation is thus directed by Messrs. Charles Tennant and Co., the extensive alkali manufacturers of St. Rollox, Glasgow: “A layer of fresh burnt limé, say five measures of 112 lbs. each, is to be laid equally over the bottom of the vat, and a few gallons of water to be thrown upon the lime, until it begins to slake or fall. This layer is then to be covered immediately with 6 cwt. of soda ash, the next layer with four measures of lime slaked as before, the fourth layer with the same quantity of soda ash, the fifth layer with lime as before, and the last layer with the same quantity of alkali.

“After standing two hours, the vat is to be stanché by filling it with water or weak ley of a former vat; this is to be done gradually. After standing about fifteen or sixteen hours, the plug is to be gently loosened, so as to allow the ley to run off or trickle clear, and caustic after infiltration through the beds of lime. This is called the *first runnings*. As soon as the ley ceases to run, the plug is to be tightened, and the vat again filled with water, and after standing a sufficient time, to be run down as before. This is the *second runnings*, and worked together with the first runnings in the soap-pan is an excellent ley, and works freer and better than if used separately. After the vat is run dry, it is to be turned over into another vat, covered with water, and again run down. This ley is very weak,

and is seldom worked in the soap-pan, being used instead of water, to stanch or fill up the strong or first set vats. As soda ash is not all equally soluble, it is sometimes necessary to turn the contents of the vat over a second time in order to obtain all the free alkali; but experience and care are the only sure guides. The receivers for the ley are generally much smaller vats, but it is preferable to have them of the same size, it being at all times desirable to have a sufficient supply of strong caustic ley.

“Should the ley in the course of the process of boiling the soap ‘close,’ as it is termed, with the materials, and not separate, a small quantity of common salt thrown with care into the boiling soap will effect a separation; but this is always to be avoided if possible. The ley may be taken out of the vat with a pump or syphon. A third running may be taken from the first vat to stanch with.”

In order to ascertain whether the soda has been properly and fully causticised, a few drops of hydrochloric acid (muriatic acid) are added to a small quantity of the ley, and if effervescence takes place it is a sure indication that uncausticised carbonate of soda is present. In this case the ley must be returned to the lime again and again, if necessary, until it is perfectly caustic. Boiling the lime and soda ash is a method frequently, if not generally, adopted, and indeed there is no doubt that it is a surer method of rendering alkalies caustic than by a cold process.

A simple method of ascertaining if there be any carbonate of soda remaining in the ley is to pour a little of the ley into clear lime-water, when if the mixture assumes a milky appearance (from the formation of carbonate of lime) it is proof that uncausticised carbonate of soda is present.

In making caustic-soda by steam boiling, fifty pounds of fresh slaked lime are required for each one hundred pounds of soda, and about ten to twelve parts of water to each part of soda. It is usual to slake the lime with hot water, and when the soda and lime with the water have been put into the tank or vat, the steam is turned on and

the mixture allowed to boil for several hours. The agitation produced by the boiling greatly aids the rapidity of the causticising process by keeping the soda and lime in close contact with each other. When the boiling has been sufficient, which is ascertained from time to time by the tests before referred to, the steam is turned off, and the contents of the vat allowed to repose, so that the carbonate of lime which is formed may subside. The ley is then drawn off and the lime washed several times with fresh water, the last runnings being used instead of water in future operations.

Caustic potash, for employment in the manufacture of soft soaps, is prepared in the same way as caustic soda, except that eighty parts of lime to each hundred of potash must be used.

CHAPTER V.

MANUFACTURE OF HARD SOAPS.

Castile or Olive-oil Soap.—Pure Olive-oil Soap.—Marseilles Soap.—French marbled Soap.—Notes on Mottling.—French Formulæ for Soaps.—Composition of Pure Olive-oil Soap.—London mottled Soap.—White Curd Soap.

Castile or Olive-oil Soap is considered the type of all hard soaps, and when made from pure materials is white, emollient (from *emollier*, to soften), and is almost entirely free from odour. It is unquestionably the best known soap. The commercial article, which is also called *Marseilles soap*, from its manufacture in France having been first practised in that city, has a pleasing mottled or marbled appearance with red and grey veins permeating its substance throughout, and which are due to certain impurities in the alkali, or produced artificially by the introduction of a little sulphate of iron (green copperas) in the process of manufacture, which becomes decomposed and converted into red oxide (peroxide) of iron. As formerly made, this soap was exceedingly hard and brittle, but the introduction of other ingredients, as the oils of hempseed, linseed, and poppy, for example, render the soap less disagreeably hard, while at the same time reducing the cost of manufacture.

Pure Olive-oil Soap, or White Castile Soap, is used in pharmacy in the preparation of liniments, plasters and cerates, and also in pills. It is made from pure olive oil and caustic soda free from coloured impurities.

Marseilles Soap.—In the manufacture of Marseilles soap for commercial purposes, great care is exercised as to the strength of the leys, and also the proportions to be applied to a given quantity of olive oil. After a series of

careful experiments, made at Marseilles, it was found that the following were the proper proportions of caustic soda and oil for making this kind of soap. Each 100 lbs. of olive oil require fifty-four pounds of caustic soda ley of 36° Baumé for perfect saponification, and this amount of ley represents about 15.50 of solid caustic soda—the utmost amount that must be applied to each 100 lbs. of the oil used. Since this oil, however, varies in the proportion of solid matter (margarine) which it contains, the strength of the ley employed in the first operation of boiling must be regulated accordingly. For a thin oil (or one containing a low percentage of solid matter) the ley is reduced by water until a Baumé's hydrometer floating in it marks 10° to 11° (degrees). For an oil containing a much larger percentage of solid matter (as lard oil, lard, or other solid fat) the strength of ley should be about 8° or 9° B.

First operation.—The requisite quantity of ley (in the proportions above given) is to be first run into the pan, filling it to the extent of about one-third of its capacity. Heat is then applied by fire or steam, as the case may be, and when the liquor comes to a boil, 1,600 lbs. of oil are added at one time with constant stirring. In a very short time a thick mass of a pasty consistence is formed by the reaction of the hot caustic alkali upon the oil. If from miscalculation, or other circumstance, an excess of oil has been added, this excess will show itself upon the surface, when an additional quantity of ley must be at once applied. On the other hand, if, instead of forming into a thickish paste the mixture is very thin, this indicates an excess of ley, and more oil must be added by degrees. This addition will, of course, somewhat cool the mixture, but the temperature soon rises again, and the mass again boils with considerable frothing. The boiling must be kept up for eighteen or twenty hours.

During the boiling, considerable evaporation takes place, whereby the ley becomes stronger; it is therefore necessary, when the pasty condition becomes thick, to add weak ley from time to time, since the paste is not soluble in strong

ley. Previous to the addition of weak leys, however, the "spent," or exhausted, leys are pumped or drawn off. The addition of fresh leys is kept up until the whole of the fatty matter is *killed*, as it is termed (that is, neutralised), or whenever it is found that the ley has lost its causticity, which is ascertained by dipping the tip of the finger in the ley and applying it to the tongue. Every addition of fresh ley is accompanied by constant stirring. After four or five changes of ley, with continued boiling and stirring, the mass becomes of an uniform soapy consistence, and a small portion pressed between the fingers becomes immediately hard and flaky.

Frequently the alkali from which the leys are made contains common salt, sulphate of soda, and other impurities, which have the effect of retarding the process of saponification by keeping the alkali and fatty matters in a more or less separated state, whereas they require to be intimately associated to effect a perfect chemical union. When it is found, therefore, that the process is progressing slowly from this cause, it is customary to throw into the pan a quantity of soap scraps to aid the operation.

When the soap-pans are heated by fire, it is necessary to use every precaution to prevent the burning of the soap at the sides of the pan. Should this occur, however, the fire must be slackened, and a small quantity of strong ley added, with brisk stirring, which will partially separate the pasty mass from the ley, bringing the latter in contact with the metal of the pan, and thus prevent the burning of the saponifying matter.

Second operation.—The oil being now completely neutralised with alkali, the combination in its present state also contains a large quantity of water in the shape of exhausted or spent ley. To remove this, many substances may be employed, but common salt, which answers the purpose admirably, is from its cheapness generally employed. The process of separation, which is generally termed "cutting the pan," is effected by throwing into the pan a concentrated solution of common salt, or a few shovelfuls of the same, each portion being

allowed to dissolve before the next is added. For conveying the salt, the truck shown in Fig. 16 is a very convenient vehicle. When sufficient salt has been thrown in, the soap separates from the leys (which also hold glycerine in solution) and coagulates in flakes or granular clots. The soap-boiler, by freely using his shovel—by repeatedly dipping it into the boiling mass and observing its condition—can tell in a moment when enough salt has been added.

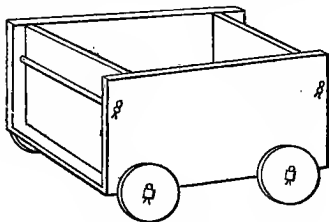


Fig. 16.

At this period the ley runs clear off the shovel or trowel, leaving the soap in separated lumps upon its surface. By continued boiling the clots assume a granular or grain-like appearance, in which condition the soap is said to be "boiled to a curd." If the boiling be continued too long after this stage, it will, by making the salted leys too concentrated, render the curd so stiff that the vapours arising from the boiling of the liquor beneath will with difficulty make their escape through the mass.

When the soap has assumed the form of grains or curds, it is known that all the superabundant water—that is, its *uncombined water*—is separated from it, and at this stage the fire is drawn or the steam turned off, as the case may be, and the pan is allowed to repose for a few hours to enable the leys to deposit. When sufficient time has been allowed for this, the leys are drawn off by means of the cock situated at the lower part of the pan.

Third operation.—This is termed *finishing the soap*, by which process it becomes cleansed from saline or other impurities, which are still loosely attached, or mechanically mixed, with it and, at the same time, any portions of the fatty ingredients which may not have been thoroughly saponified, undergo perfect conversion into soap. This important operation is effected by means of a ley of such strength that it cannot dissolve the made

soap. It may be here mentioned that although soap is soluble in very weak leys, it is absolutely insoluble in strong solutions of caustic alkali. All the spent leys having been drawn off the soap, it is now gently boiled with a ley of the strength marking 18° or 20° B., to which 8 or 10 per cent. of salt is added. The quantity of this saline ley must be just sufficient to coagulate or *close* the soap, and to prevent it from adhering to the sides of the pan. While the boiling gently proceeds the soap is constantly stirred. The ley is now allowed to subside, when it is drawn off as before and fresh ley added, until, after again boiling, the leys retain their causticity—when saponification is known to be complete. At this period the boiling becomes more violent and frothy, and the soap-boiler keeps the pan from boiling over by constantly using his shovel, with which he scoops up the soap and throws it over the boiling mass.

As soon as the soap yields an odour resembling violets, and is scaly when pressed between the fingers without adhering to them, the finishing process is complete. The time occupied in this operation is from eight to ten hours in winter, and from ten to fifteen hours in summer: the length of time, however, depends greatly upon the quantity of material operated upon. When the operation is complete the fire is withdrawn, and the soap is allowed to rest for a few hours, after which the ley is again drawn off. The finished soap is white and firm, and contains from 16 to 25 per cent. of water. When the leys are impure, containing salts of iron and sulphur, it assumes a dark shade owing to particles of metallic soap permeating the mass. When this is the case, it must be again treated with weak ley, and very gently heated, when the dark-coloured soap, which is called *niger* or *nigre*, being more dense than the fine soap, and not soluble in weak ley, subsides. To facilitate this the cover of the pan is lowered, and the soap again suffered to repose, when the white soap, which forms the upper stratum, may be ladled into the frames.

The fourth operation, which is termed *mottling*, or

marbling, is the result of certain reactions which occur between the impurities of the ley (chiefly iron, sulphur, and alumina) and the saponaceous matter. When these impurities exist in considerable quantity, they give a slate-coloured tint to the soap. By examination it has been found that the fatty acids of the soap exchange bases with the saline impurities, an insoluble dark-coloured *alumino-ferruginous soap* being formed, which is diffused throughout the mass, with, also, black sulphuret of iron. These being held in suspension by the thick soapy mass form bluish veins in the white ground, thus giving the soap a marbled appearance. By exposure to the air, however, the iron salts become oxidised, and acquire a reddish hue from the formation of peroxide of iron. When the alkali, from which the leys have been made, contains a large quantity of iron and sulphur impurities, the soap becomes mottled without any artificial means. This being seldom the case with the alkali manufactured at the present day (excepting the black ash) the desired effect is produced by adding to the soap, after it is finished or clarified, and without separating it from the *niger* or *nigre*, four ounces of green copperas (sulphate of iron) for each 100 lbs. of oil in the soap. The iron salt is first dissolved in weak ley, which is added to render the paste thinnish, and the mixture must be cooled gradually, so that the coloured soap may become thoroughly diffused through the mass. Too much ley must on no account be added, otherwise the darker and heavier soap will sink to the bottom. Again, the cooling of the soap must not be too rapid or the coloured veins will close too much, and thus spoil the "strike" of the soap.

The soap is allowed to remain in the pan to cool a little, after which it is ladled into the frames. In France ladles with perforated bottoms are employed, so that any ley that may remain mechanically mixed with the soap may run off. After each frame is filled the soap is well crutched to make it homogeneous, and, if it be desired to add water, the requisite quantity is well crutched in while the soap is still hot. The frames are sometimes

covered with sacks in cold weather, so that the soap may cool slowly, upon which much of the beauty of the "strike" or mottle depends.

It has been ascertained that three pounds of olive-oil will yield five pounds of marbled Marseilles soap, whereas the same amount of oil will only produce four pounds four ounces of white soap, which proves that the former retains more water in its composition than the latter.

French Marbled Soap.—Dussauce, in his admirable "Treatise on the Manufacture of Soap," gives an elaborate description of the manufacture of marbled soaps, as conducted in France, from which we give the following extracts:—

"Besides olive-oil, the earth-nut, sesame, linseed, cole-seed, and black garden poppy-oils, greases, tallows, etc., are also used in the fabrication of marbled soaps; but the soap resulting from these different combinations of oily and fatty matters, while being of good quality, cannot be compared to those obtained by the direct saponification of olive-oil. The latter are always denser, firmer, and finer.

"However, we may remark that the mixture of olive-oils with other oils containing less stearine, gives, if not the best, at least the finest kinds of marbled soap. They are also more unctuous, and their cut is softer and smoother, as they contain less stearate of soda than those prepared from olive-oil,—they are more deterative and more advantageous for use.

"The sodas employed for these soaps are of two kinds; one, called *soft soda*, is the most alkaline; the other, called *salted soda*, is composed of soft soda and common salt. Well-prepared soft soda ought to be free from common salt; it is employed to produce the *pasting* in the first operation. The salted sodas are a mixture of soft soda and salt. The proportions of salt are from 30 to 40 per cent. of the weight of soda. Their alkalimetric degree is from 18 to 22 per cent. of pure alkali.

"In certain circumstances salted soda can be substituted by common salt; nevertheless, it ought to be remarked

that an excess of salt is injurious to the marbling of the soap, and salted soda must be used whenever it is possible to obtain it.

“Soda ash is not so suitable for the fabrication of marbled soaps as crude soda. Being entirely deprived of colouring matter and of sulphurets, when it enters in too large a proportion into the preparation of the lyes, it lessens the beauty and intensity of the marbling.

“The fabrication of marbled soaps requires several distinct operations, which may be thus summed up:—
1. Preparation of the lyes. 2. Pasting, or saponification of the oils and fatty substances. 3. Separation of the saponified paste from the weak lyes it contains. 4. *Coction* (boiling). 5. Mottling or marbling.”

In preparing the ley for the first operation the following proportions of soda and lime are given:—

Crude soft soda (black ash) at 34° to 38°	2,250 lbs.
Recently calcined lime	450 „

The soda (if in hard lumps) is first broken or crushed, and the lime slaked by immersion in warm water. “With warm water,” says Dussauce, “the penetration of the liquid is more complete. After one or two minutes of immersion the lime is quickly taken out and spread on a hard, smooth, and dry floor; if the lime is of good quality it soon grows warm and falls into powder, this powder is then thoroughly mixed with the soda by means of large iron shovels. The mixture is conveyed to filters made of masonry or sheet iron, holding from 125 to 150 gallons, each filter being provided with a false bottom pierced with holes and supported by four little pieces of wood, which keep it about two inches from the bottom. A layer of straw is placed over the false bottom to prevent the mixture from passing through the perforations and to aid the filtration. A plug or cork is placed between the two bottoms of the vessel for the convenience of drawing off the ley. The mixture of soda and lime is now covered with water, when, after a while, it swells and becomes warm. After about twenty-four hours the ley is drawn

off, when its strength is usually from 22° to 25° B. Fresh water is then added, and, after many hours, is drawn off as before, the washing being continued so long as caustic alkali be present."

The preparation of salted ley is in all respects similar to the preceding, except as regards its formula, which is as follows:—

Crude soft-soda ash at 33° to 38°	3,375 lbs.
" salted soda at 18° to 20°	1,025 "
Fresh lime	900 "

The *pasting* operation is thus given:—Take

Olive-oil	1,125 lbs.
Earth-nut oil.....	900 "
Black garden poppy-oil	225 "
	2,250 "

The saponification is effected in a sheet-iron kettle holding about 1,000 gallons, into which from 125 to 150 gallons of "soft ley," at 10° or 12° B., are poured. Heat is applied, and, when boiling commences, the oils are added by degrees, with constant stirring. Soon after the oils have been added, and the boiling again started, a violent agitation takes place with considerable foaming. At this time the mixture swells up greatly, when the heat must be lowered, or the mass would inevitably boil over. After awhile the foaming ceases, and a perfectly homogeneous mass of a dull white colour is formed. The boiling is continued for four or five hours. By the ebullition the mixture of the materials becomes more and more intimate; it also acquires more consistency and strength by the evaporation of the water from the ley; then add 25 to 30 gallons of ley at 15° or 18° B., with stirring for about ten minutes. Boil a few hours, and, when the mixture has acquired a thicker consistency, add to it one pound of green vitriol (sulphate of iron), previously dissolved in a few quarts of boiling water. By this addition the paste, which was of a reddish white, assumes instantaneously a greenish colour, the intensity of which

depends upon the degree of sulphuration of the ley. To combine the sulphate of iron with the paste the mixture is well stirred for a few minutes; under the action of the soda, the iron is decomposed, forming an oxide of iron. The chemical union of this oxide with the sulphuret of sodium, which always exists in the leys of crude soda, produces the colouring principle of the marbling of the soaps.

In order to ensure an intimate combination of the fatty matters with the ley, and also to give a good consistency to the paste, from 25 to 30 gallons of soft ley at 25° B. are added gradually, with constant stirring, and the boiling continued for several hours. The pasting operation, as it is termed, generally occupies about fifteen hours, when a perfectly neutral soap is obtained.

The separation of the soap is thus conducted. In soap factories, to produce separation, they throw on the soapy mass, by small quantities at a time, limpid regenerated leys at 25° to 30° B. When these leys cannot be had, new salted leys, at 20° to 25°, can be used, or a solution of salt at 20° B. To obtain 25 gallons of salt solution at 20°, 14½ lbs. of salt are employed. When the saponification is complete, and the paste has the required consistence, it is watered with a sufficient quantity of old and salted ley at 25° to 30°. To render the action of the leys more thorough upon all the molecules of soap, a large board is placed over the kettle, on which a man, provided with a beater or crutch, stands to stir the mass continually, from bottom to top, in such a manner that the ley brought to the surface penetrates every portion of the soap. The paste now separates into clots or curds, and, if the ley runs off freely from the shovel or trowel, it is known that the separation is complete. The soap is then allowed to rest, when the ley slowly subsides. After a few hours the ley is drawn off, which consists of from 175 to 188 gallons of ley at 17° or 18° B. This ley, after being passed over an old residuum of soda exhausted by washing with water, is used in the operation of mottling.

The next operation is called *coction* (boiling), by which

the complete combination of the oils or fatty matters with the alkali is ensured. It is this operation, also, which gives hardness and consistency to the soap, increases its density, and deprives it of all disagreeable odours, besides rendering it more detergent.

The leys used in this operation are termed *salted leys*, being a mixture of soft (not caustic) soda and artificial *salted sodas*, causticised by lime, as before described; but before the application of this ley the soap is treated with 88 gallons of *cold soft ley* at 20° to 25° B., which is thoroughly well crutched in. This has the effect of separating the soap into flakes which float on the ley. After stirring for half an hour the cover is lowered to keep in the heat, and, in about four hours after, the ley is drawn off. Dussauce says: "Some manufacturers for the first service use salted lyes, but, in our judgment, soft leys are to be preferred. Indeed, there is already in the paste an excess of salt, due to the lyes employed for the separation, and, as too large a quantity of salt interferes with the useful action of new lyes on the molecules of soap, it is proper and rational to eliminate it from the paste as much as possible. The soft lyes contribute to this result. This advantage is not the only one, the lyes of coction, used in considerable quantities in the separation, have set free some fatty matters imperfectly combined; then the soft leys, while purifying the paste from the excess of salt it contains, determine the incorporation of the oily or fatty substances which had not been combined before, and could not be if salted lyes had been used."

The above observations are of considerable value, inasmuch as they guard the soap-maker against falling into a very common error—that of applying salt before saponification is *known* to be complete.

The first application of the salted ley is given after the ley of the last operation has been drawn off. From 100 to 115 gallons of salted ley, at 25° B., are put into the pan and heat applied, with stirring so soon as boiling commences. The boiling is to be continued until

the ley ceases to taste caustic, which is generally after seven or eight hours. A black foam or "fob" appears on the surface, which only ceases when the materials are completely saturated with alkali. The heat is now checked, the mass allowed to rest for three or four hours, after which the ley is drawn off. A second dose of 115 to 125 gallons of salted ley is now given, of a strength equal to from 25° to 30° B., and the boiling resumed and kept up for twelve to fifteen hours, with occasional stirring. About every hour, during the first eight or ten hours, about 5 gallons of ley, at 28° to 30°, are added to supply the place of the evaporated water and complete the saturation of the soap. It is usually towards the close of this boil that the operation is complete, the foam having disappeared, and the soap is now stiff, clean, and dry, and furrowed by deep channels. The ley, though coloured, is clear, and should be slightly caustic to the taste. If these conditions are not fulfilled the ley must be drawn off, after repose for two hours, and 75 gallons of salted ley at 28° or 30° B. added, with further boiling for seven or eight hours.

Mottling.—The next and last operation is termed *mottling*. The soap having rested for an hour or two, the last ley is drawn off, and a pure ley, at 12° to 15° B., is sprinkled over the surface of the soap with continual stirring, which thus becomes of a somewhat softer consistence. A weaker, pure ley, at 8° to 10° B., is then added and well stirred in, when the soap, which up to this time was in hard, granular, and curd-like lumps, becomes softer, the grains of soap being more plastic and viscid. The operation is now finished by boiling with leys at 5° or 6° B., which are gradually introduced, otherwise the weaker ley would spoil the adhesiveness of the soap. When the soap floats on the ley in large flakes of a greenish colour it is known that it is ready for the frames.

If the condition of the soap, with the above treatment, is defective, it arises from one of two causes. 1. The addition of the cold leys has cooled the soap too much; or, 2, the soap contains an excess of saline matters. In

the first case the soap must be heated gently, and when the ley is sufficiently warm, stir well until the proper consistence is obtained. In the second case, run off the leys, and add fresh pure ley at 10° to 12° B., with gentle boiling and stirring.

Before putting the marbled soap into frames, it is usual to first place a little warm ley at the bottom of each frame, to prevent the soap from adhering to it; sometimes, also, a piece of canvas is laid over the bottom of the frame with the same object. When properly boiled, the soap is in the form of hard and separate grains, the entire mass having a bluish-black colour, the intensity of which depends upon the quantity of metallic soaps present in the mass, and which are due to the salts of alumina and iron contained in the ley. These metallic soaps, during the cooling of the mass, separate from the white soap (which forms the ground or base) in irregular veins of varied colour, and thus a marbled appearance is obtained, the beauty of which depends greatly upon the skilful manipulation of the "mottler," or workman who superintends this part of the operation. It is an important point to run the soap into the frames when the proper condition for good mottling has been attained.

Notes on Mottling.—The strongest ley is first introduced, then the medium, and lastly the weakest.

The principal points to be observed in mottling are: 1. The introduction of weak leys into the paste; 2. The application of gentle heat to keep the mass in a fluid state; and, 3. Continual stirring.

The precautions to be observed are: 1. Not to add more leys than are necessary, so that the heavier metallic soaps (which are the colouring principles of the mottling) may be thoroughly disseminated through the mass of white soap, and ultimately produce the marbled veins which are characteristic of the soap. 2. The temperature of the soap must not be too high. 3. If too much weak ley has been applied, this, by thinning the mixture, will cause the heavier metallic soaps to sink into the leys, and the soap will be white instead of being marbled. 4. If the

leys be too strong, the metallic soaps will not separate properly, and the entire mass will contain less than its full proportion of water, thereby entailing a loss to the manufacturer.

All circumstances being favourable, the following characteristics will present themselves: the flakes of soap are separated from each other, and float on the ley; they are soft and bulky, of a fine green colour, and of a viscid consistence. When ready for the frames, the grains are "pliant and elastic, and have a tremulous and gelatinous appearance." The soap must not be put into the frames until it has cooled down a little, the proper temperature being between 158° and 166°.

French Formulæ for Soaps.—The following formulæ represent some of the fatty combinations used in different localities in France in the manufacture of soap:—

I.

Olive-oil	675 lbs.
Earth-nut oil	675 „
Lard	900 „
	<hr/>
	2,250 „

This produces a white, odourless soap.

II.

Bleached palm-oil.....	1,575 lbs.
Oil of sesame	450 „
White tallow.....	225 „
	<hr/>
	2,250 „

Produces a very hard soap, of good quality, but not so white as the above. It turns slightly yellow by keeping.

III.

Olive-oil	450 lbs.
White tallow	1,350 „
Earth-nut oil.....	450 „
	<hr/>
	2,250 „

This is considered to form a very good soap, and superior

to that of Marseilles, but "unfortunately it has a faint smell of tallow, which restricts its use in domestic economy." (!)

IV.

Olive-oil	675 lbs.
Cocoa-nut oil.....	225 "
Lard	675 "
Tallow	675 "
	<hr/>
	2,250 "

This formula makes a good white soap, but the presence of cocoa-nut oil gives the soap a disagreeable odour, although it improves its lathering properties.

The Composition of Pure Olive-oil Soap, according to Ure's analysis, is:—

Foreign.

Soda	9.0
Fatty acids (oleic and margaric).....	76.5
Water and colouring matter	14.5
	<hr/>
	100.0

English imitation.

Soda	10.5
Fatty matters	75.2
Water, with a little colouring matter	14.3
	<hr/>
	100.0

The ordinary commercial Marseilles soap contains from 62 to 65 per cent. of fatty acids.

London Mottled Soap is generally made from melted kitchen stuff, bone grease, cheap tallow, and any inferior fatty matter that will prove serviceable. The leys are made from crude soda ash, termed *black ash*, the impurities in which give the mottled or marbled "strike," for which this variety of soap is famed. The "goods," as the fatty materials are called, are first put into the pan, when the first dose of ley, at sp. gr. 1.050, is run in, after which the fire is made up beneath the pan, and the materials brought to a steady boil. To assist the combination of the fatty substances with the ley, a workman constantly

stirs the ingredients with a long iron rake. After a while the fatty matters, which at first float on the surface of the ley, combine with it, forming a thin creamy emulsion of a perfectly uniform appearance, and from which no liquid separates on cooling. Should the mass not present these characteristics, the soap-boiler adds either water or some weaker leys than were at first employed, and the boiling is continued, with occasional stirring, until a perfect emulsion is obtained.

At this stage of the operation the compound ceases to taste alkaline—the tongue being the usual test employed by the soap-boiler—and it is thus known that the combination of the fatty matters with the caustic ley is complete. Stronger leys are now added repeatedly, the boiling being continued until the leys taste of free caustic alkali. When this is the case, more oily or fatty matters are added, as also, from time to time, stronger leys. Great care is taken, in this operation, that there is no excess of alkali in the mixture when the soap-pan has become sufficiently filled with the alkaline and fatty ingredients.

The mixture is next treated with common salt, which is thrown into the pan by shovelfuls at a time, each portion being allowed to dissolve in the ley before adding the next. When sufficient salt has been added, the saponified matters separate into grains of soap combined with a definite quantity of water, but as yet not containing its full percentage of alkali. The leys, which are called “spent leys,” consist of salt and glycerine in solution, and should be quite free from alkali.

The fire being withdrawn (or steam turned off), the imperfect soap is allowed to rest for a few hours, so that the ley may subside, and this is then drawn or pumped off.

The second operation consists in adding weak ley, with which the soap is again boiled, until the soap (at first granular) becomes homogeneous, or “closed,” as the soap-maker terms it. If the full quantity of fatty matters had not been introduced in the first operation, the soap-boiler now completes the addition of them, with also the addition

of more strong ley, until, after long boiling, the compound has acquired a strong alkaline taste. Common salt is now again added to separate the soap as before from the ley, and the boiling continued for some hours in contact with the caustic ley, so as to ensure the perfect saponification of every atom of fatty material.

Soda which contains sulphurets (as the so-called *black-ash*) is preferred for making mottled soaps, for reasons which have been already explained. Mottling is commonly practised in some London soap-works by introducing into the nearly finished soap a certain quantity of strong crude soda ley through the rose spout of a watering-can. The dense sulphuretted liquor, in passing through the pasty mass and ley, gives it a marbled appearance. Sometimes a small quantity of a solution of Prussian blue is used for this purpose.

When crude sodas, however, are used in the manufacture of mottled soap, the mottling is effected, towards the close of the operation, by a mere mechanical mixture of the dark-coloured ley with the soap. It is effected in this way: the workman breaks the paste in all directions with his rake, after which he holds it perpendicularly till it reaches the ley, when he raises it vertically with a jerk, making it act like the piston of a pump, by doing which he lifts some of the ley and spreads it over the surface of the paste. In its subsequent descent through the numerous fissures and channels of the soap, on its way to the bottom of the pan, the dark-coloured ley impregnates the soapy particles in various forms and degrees, thereby producing veins or markings which, when the soap is afterwards cooled, give it the desired marble-like appearance. This operation has also the advantage of cooling the soap in some degree, which is necessary before it is put into the frames, or the "strike," or mottling, would not be perfect, owing to the superior density of the dark particles which form the coloured veins of the soap.

When mottled soap is ready for framing, it is in the form of a thick, gelatinous mass, interspersed with leys, and in this condition it is ladled out into large pails and

put into frames, which are preferably made of wood, since this material retains the heat longer than iron frames, and by the more gradual cooling a finer marbled appearance is obtained. When mottled soap is moulded in cast-iron frames, the ends of the bars are liable (from rapidity of cooling at the sides of the frames) to have a plain whitish appearance, instead of being marbled.

White Curd Soap.—The finest quality of this soap is made from pure tallow, *rendered*, as before stated, from the suet of oxen and sheep. English, or “town tallow,” as the London tallow melters call it, in contradistinction to the products imported from Russia and other foreign countries, was generally preferred until the introduction of American and Australian tallows, which, being of good quality, are equally serviceable in the manufacture of this soap. Besides tallow, however, other materials, as lard, bleached palm-oil, olive-oil, or mixtures of these in varying proportions, are used in making curd soap.

To produce one ton of curd soap, from 10 to 14 cwt. of tallow or olive-oil are required. The process of saponification is the same as for mottled soap, excepting that the removal of all colouring matter and impurities of the ley must be effected by boiling the soap repeatedly with fresh leys after the removal of each previous dose of ley, or by thinning the soap with a small quantity of ley with gentle boiling, and then covering the pan and allowing the soap to repose for several hours, to allow the leys to subside. By thus washing (as we may say) the soap with ley, all the dark-coloured impurities are removed, and subside with the leys, leaving the soap clean, and, when cold, white. When finished, the curd is ladled out of the pan and put into the frames, which should be covered with canvas, or clean empty sacks, so that the soap may retain its heat, and thereby enable it to close properly.

The following is the French system of making tallow curd or grained soap: to transform 1,000 lbs. of tallow into grain or curd soap, 400 lbs. of potash have to be taken. The tallow is placed in the kettle (pan), about 400 lbs. of ley of 10° B. added, and the fire kindled. In a short time

from the commencement of the boiling, the fire is kept well up, but afterwards it should be moderated. After the usual frothing, it should be ascertained whether the fat has combined with the ley. This is known by the yellow-brown mass, which, under gradual upheaving, continues quietly to boil. What adheres to the spatula, when dipped into the mass and withdrawn, has a gelatinous, greyish-white appearance, without separation of ley. When the ley and fat are not combined, the mixture moves in the kettle to and fro without rising upward, except now and then, in isolated spots, with a booming noise. When the combination is complete, there are added, at short intervals, and in four or five portions, about 1,000 lbs. of ley at 16° to 17° B. The boiling now becomes dense and languid, and the mass appears of a yellowish-brown, and runs off the spatula in cohesive, long, translucent strings, and the soap boils to a paste. If some of the soap be dropped on glass, and the sample, while still hot, does not appear perfectly clear, ley is still wanting. A small quantity of ley should now be added, until the soap, while hot, appears perfectly clear. When this period is reached, the "cutting of the pan" begins.

The salt has here a double purpose to fulfil. It must transform the potash into a soda soap, and also separate its glycerine, sulphurous liquor, ley, and impurities. The full quantity of salt required for this purpose is not applied at once, but a repeated "salting out" should be given. After each "salting out," the under ley is separated from the soap, and the latter brought in contact with water and salt. By boiling tallow and potash, when the materials are not very pure, the "salting out" is usually performed in three operations. The ley is now removed from the soap in the usual way. The salt is either thrown into the soap in the dry state, or in solution of about 20° B. When the mass turns white, and ebullition occurs all over the pan in patches, the soap rising with considerable vigour, it is known that sufficient salt has been added. The frothing now disappears. The boiling is continued for an hour longer, and then stopped

by extinguishing the fire, so as to allow any impurities still in the mass to settle.

When the ley has been removed from the pan, 700 lbs. or 800 lbs. of water, with 70 lbs. or 80 lbs. of salt dissolved in it, are now added, and the mass again brought to a boil. After boiling up, it should be examined to see that the "cutting of the pan" has been properly effected. The boiling is then continued for some time, after which the mass is allowed to repose as before, and the saline ley again drawn off. Although the second liquor and boiling have greatly hardened the soap, yet this is not sufficient; therefore a third boiling, with 50 lbs. to 60 lbs. of salt dissolved in 700 lbs. to 800 lbs. of water, is made, by which the hardness of the soap is perfected. As soon as it boils and froths up, the soap must be again examined to ascertain if the proportions of salt and ley have been sufficient. If enough salt has not been added, froth appears on the surface of the boiling soap, and the latter burns readily. In this case more salt must be added, until it boils up in regular lumps of soap. If too much salt be present, the soap appears upon the spatula [trowel] in a separated form, the ley running off, and little gutters formed. This fault is remedied by adding a few buckets of water. If a little portion of the soap be pressed by the thumb in the palm of the hand, it hardens immediately; and if, on rubbing it, the sample retains a cohesive character, it possesses the required firmness, and is solid; if, on the other hand, it crumbles, more water must be added, and if the sample spreads or smears, a fresh ley of salt of 15° B. must be added until the proper condition is reached.

The operation of clear boiling and fitting is next pursued, to perform which one-half of the kettle is covered with wooden planks, and a man, furnished with a stirrer or beater, beats down the mass, so that it does not run over. By this operation the soap particles are drawn more closely together into globular grains. These grains sink, and on the surface of the kettle appears a white flaky froth. To prevent the falling of the mass, great

heat is now needed. The fire is briskly kept up, and the entire kettle covered with planks and cloths. The soap now boils up with considerable frothing, and to prevent it from running over, one of the planks is removed, and the foam is beaten with a long iron rod until it subsides. The kettle is again closely covered, and the boiling resumed, the prevention of overflow being again regulated as before.

The violence of the ebullition gradually diminishes, but in its stead a whistling noise is perceived in the kettle. One of the planks is removed from time to time, and the soap examined; when, if large and perfectly translucent bubbles rise up, the soap is finished, and the fire is therefore extinguished. The wooden planks are next removed to allow the soap to cool, and a few buckets of soap ley are poured into the kettle. The soap is now ready to be put into the frames, and care is taken that as little ley as possible enters the frames.

Boiling with soda ley presents this advantage, that the soap may be finished in one water. The first ley is applied at the strength of 10° to 12° B. The whole of the fat is placed in the kettle, with one-fourth of the ley requisite for saponification, and the boiling carried on as usual. After boiling up, the mixture is examined to ascertain if the proper combination has taken place, in which case further addition of ley, at 16° to 18° B., is added. The addition of this ley is continued until a sample placed on a piece of glass appears perfectly clear. The cutting of the pan follows, which removes the glycerine formed, and the surplus water. In this case much less salt is required than when boiling with potash ley. For each 100 lbs. of fat 10 lbs. to 12 lbs. of salt are required. The salt may be applied in the dry state or in solution, as preferred. The remaining operations are conducted as before described.

Soda soaps made by this process have some advantages, principally because it is impossible to remove all the potash; besides which, they are generally very neutral and plastic.—*Dussauce*.

It was formerly the practice in England to make tallow soap with potash leys, as above described, and the soft soap thus produced was converted into hard soap by additions of salt in sufficient quantity to furnish the proper proportions of soda by the reaction of the potash with the neutral salt. The high price of potash, and a great reduction in the cost of soda, however, caused this system to be abandoned in this country.

CHAPTER VI.

MANUFACTURE OF HARD SOAPS—(continued).

Yellow or Resin Soaps.—Continental Method.—Dunn's Process.—
Meinicke's Process.

Yellow or Resin Soaps.—Although resin is freely soluble in alkaline leys, it is not capable of being converted into soap proper by itself. When mixed with fatty matters in various proportions, however, it forms a series of soaps possessing high detergent power, and exceedingly emollient and agreeable in use. A well-made resin soap is no doubt the most pleasant of all soaps for washing the skin. Possessing no "body" of itself, the smallest proportion of sound tallow which it requires to make a hard soap is an equal part. It is seldom, however, that so large a proportion of resin is used in soap. The peculiar odour of resin is greatly disguised by its combination with fatty matters, and it has been stated that rancid tallow disguises the odour of resin in soap more than any other description of fat or oil, except cocoa-nut oil, we might add, which gives an odour to soap that even the most powerful perfumes overcome but for a time, and when they have evaporated, the rank and frowsy smell of the cocoa-nut oil remains.

Since resin will not make a soap of itself, when treated with caustic leys, it is usually introduced into the soap-pans when the other goods, or fatty matters, have undergone the process of saponification. Indeed, if the resin were put into the pan with the first charge of materials, the caustic ley would seize it at once and dissolve it, and thus prevent the ley from performing its proper function—that of

saponifying the fatty materials. It is commonly the practice to first make the hard soap in the usual way, and when the last charge of leys has been given, and when, after the usual boiling, the ley ceases to be absorbed by the soap, the desired quantity of resin is added gradually, and it is an advantage to have it previously broken up into small pieces. The proportion of resin varies from one-third to one-fourth the weight of tallow, but of course weaker goods will take less.

While the resin is being shovelled in, the boiling must be kept up, with also the addition of caustic ley. The soap is examined from time to time by the soap-boiler, who freely uses his shovel when he considers that the combination of the resin with the soap is near completion. When a sample of the paste, after being allowed to cool, is firm and solid, and exhibits a good grain or "feather" when cut, the soap is finished. The heat being checked by turning off the steam, the soap is allowed to rest, after which the leys are drawn or pumped out, and the process of *purifying the paste* is next resorted to, whereby all impurities of the resin and other materials are deposited below the surface of the soap. For this purpose a quantity of ley at 8° B. is run into the pan, and the steam again turned on, the soap being well stirred for some time with the rake and the boiling kept up for awhile, after which the soap is again allowed to rest, and the ley again pumped out.

A second service of leys at 4° B. is now given, and the boiling and stirring renewed, after which the leys are again allowed to settle, and are then drawn off. A final service of very weak leys at 2° B. is now introduced, the stirring and boiling being resumed as before, when the operation is finished. After a long rest the leys subside, and a skin forms over the surface of the soap, which is skimmed off before running the soap into the frames, and put aside to be worked up with future batches.

In small works the soap is ladled out of the pans into large iron pails by means of a ladle having a very long wooden handle (Fig. 11). This ladle is of considerable

size, and in order to diminish its weight, when full of soap, it is raised by means of a rope running in a pulley by a second man, while the first holds the handle of the ladle, dips it into the soap, and guides it to the pail which is rested upon the edge of the pan, and is carried when full to the soap frames. To hasten the operation of filling the frames, several men, each carrying his own pail, are usually occupied when a "cleansing," as it is termed, is going on. In larger factories, where the application of steam is extensive, the finished soap is pumped out of the coppers into wrought-iron "pots" (Fig. 8) running on wheels, and which are also used for crutching in "liquor" of various kinds; these pots, being wheeled up to the frames, are emptied into them, or the soap is pumped into iron or wooden shoots, one end of which is slung on to the pump, while the other rests on the upper edge of the soap frame, and when the frame is full, the shoot is shifted to the next, and so on.

Cleansing.—When cleansing yellow soaps, great care is necessary to avoid removing, with the finer soap, the dark-coloured compound called *niger*, which forms a stratum between the leys and the pale soap. This dark brown soap derives its colour from the resin and impurities in the ley, and although it possesses all the characteristics of a good soap, is unsalable by itself as a commercial article, and should therefore be worked up with other lighter goods in the making of cheaper soaps.

Another formula for yellow soap is the following:—

Tallow	2,000 lbs.
Resin, about	600 „

These being put into the pan, from 150 to 175 gallons of soda ley at 10° to 20° B. are run in, and the steam turned on. When the materials are melted, the pan is brought to a boil, constant stirring being applied to prevent the resin from adhering to the bottom and sides of the pan. When the mass swells up excessively, the heat must be checked. The boiling is continued for only about two or three hours, owing to the rapidity with which the combina-

tion of the materials and the alkali is effected. The steam being now turned off, the mass is allowed to rest for about six hours, when the spent ley is drawn off and fresh ley is then added, and the boiling resumed and continued for about three hours. After repose for six hours, the ley is again drawn off, and fresh ley run into the pan. The various boilings with fresh leys are continued daily until the soap has acquired the proper consistence, which is ascertained by the soap-boiler pressing a sample previously cooled between his finger and thumb. If the soap divides into hard flakes, it is finished, or nearly so; but if greasy, sticky, and soft, it requires further boiling with fresh ley. If the soap sample is satisfactory, boil briskly for a short time, and then turn off the steam, and throw in a few pails of cold water. After about two hours, the ley is to be drawn off as before. This being done, six or eight pails of water are added and well stirred in, and the boiling briskly pursued. If from samples taken from the paste the ley runs off clear, more water is to be added, and the boiling continued. If it does not separate from the ley, an excess of water is present, and a small quantity—about half a pailful—of strong brine must be added.

Finishing.—One of the most important and delicate parts of the operation is that of *finishing* the soap. When the soap has been properly *fitted*, as above, it will cling to the shovel or trowel and have a gelatinous texture. This being the case, the soap is properly finished. Sometimes, in order to give the soap a bright yellow colour, a little raw (that is, unbleached) palm-oil is added. This oil, while imparting an agreeable odour to the soap, is believed to disguise in some degree the natural odour of the resin.

A quicker process for making yellow soaps than the former is performed in the apparatus known as Papin's digester. The following gives the proportion of goods and ley employed in this process:—

White tallow	800 lbs.
Palm-oil	200 "
Resin (powdered)	400 "
Caustic soda ley at 25° B.	175 gallons.

These materials are put into the Papin digester, and boiled for an hour under pressure at the temperature of 252° Fahr. At the end of this time the soap is finished, and is, after being allowed to cool down a little, run into the frames.

Continental Method.—The French method of making yellow or resin soap in many respects differs from our own system, but since it presents many interesting features we give the process described by Dussauce in his *Treatise*. It will be observed that by this method the resin is converted into a resinous soap, so called, before it is added to the hard soap with which it is to be combined.

First process.—Into a pan holding from 625 to 750 gallons introduce 1,000 lbs. of tallow, which is to be melted by the aid of heat. When melted, it is to be saponified with about 75 gallons of fresh caustic (soda) ley at 7° or 8° B. While running in the ley, the mixture is to be well stirred. All the ley being added, the heat is to be augmented, and the stirring continued for twenty-five or thirty minutes. A white emulsion is thus formed, the ley and tallow having perfectly combined, and a homogeneous paste is the result. An hour after the last ley has been added, the boiling becomes manifested by a tumultuous movement in the mass, and the formation of a very abundant white scum. The heat must now be moderated, and the paste stirred. If these precautions are not sufficient, a few pails of cold water or weak ley are thrown into the pan.

When the effervescence has ceased, the foaming diminishes, and soon disappears entirely. The paste is now homogeneous and white, or of a yellowish tint. Continue to boil gently; by boiling, the mixture becomes more intimate and perfect, and acquires more consistency by the evaporation of the ley. Continue the saponification with leys at 15° to 18° B., which are added in portions of 6 gallons at a time every fifteen minutes for one and a half hour. After the last addition of ley, continue to boil gently for a few hours without adding new doses of ley. By continuing the boiling, the paste is saturated slowly

and gradually with alkali; it becomes denser and firmer, and may then receive stronger leys without fear of the tallow separating from the already saponified mass. There would be no danger of separation if too strong leys were used when the paste is imperfectly saturated with alkali. To prevent this inconvenience, the mass is boiled for a few hours after the addition of the ley. The object of this boiling is to render the union of the molecules more intimate and complete.

The saponification is finished by the addition of 25 gallons of new ley at 20° to 25° B., which is added, 6 gallons at a time, every ten or fifteen minutes. When all the ley is added, the steam is turned off, and the mixture stirred for half an hour. By combining with the strong ley, the paste thickens and acquires a consistency proportionate to the quality of the tallow. The time of this operation varies from eight to ten hours.

Separation is effected with clear leys of coction * at 20° to 25° B. While the ley is being added gradually, the mass is kept constantly stirred. When the quantity of ley added has been sufficient to effect the separation of the soap, a spontaneous change takes place in the condition of the paste, which forms into small grains interspersed with ley. When the separation is complete, which is known by the ley freely separating from the soap, the operation is finished. The stirring is, however, kept up for half an hour or longer, so that the separation may be perfect throughout the mass. If "leys of coction" cannot be had, dissolve from 50 to 60 lbs. of salt in about 75 gallons of new ley at 15° to 18° B. The effect will be the same, but the leys will contain an excess of salt. The employment of the former is to be preferred whenever it is possible to obtain them; 75 gallons of such ley at 20° to 25° B., or the same quantity of new ley, after the addition of salt, are sufficient to

* "Leys of coction," or, as we should call them, "salted leys," are passed through the residuum of soda and lime left in the ley vats, which separates any fatty matter they contain, and renders them clear. The leys are passed repeatedly through filters which are richer in soda, and thus acquire additional strength.

effect the separation. After repose for five or six hours, the ley is drawn off.

Boiling.—The ley being drawn off, pour into the kettle 75 gallons of new caustic ley at 24° or 25° B. and apply heat. When the boiling begins, considerable foaming appears upon the surface of the soap, which disperses only when the soap is entirely boiled. If after five or six hours' continuous boiling the ley is still caustic, it must be kept up until all the foam disappears. If, on the other hand, the ley has lost all its causticity, 75 gallons of new ley at 30° B. are to be added, and the boil kept up for four or five hours longer.

The operation being finished, the soap is in the form of very hard white grains, which, when pressed between the fingers, are reduced to scales. The steam is now to be turned off, and the mass allowed to rest for four or five hours, after which the ley is drawn off, the quantity of which will be about 50 or 60 gallons, and of a strength equal to 27° or 28° B.

Fitting is effected by running into the pan 58 gallons of water, and heating to the boiling-point, with constant stirring. When the grains of soap are well melted, and have the appearance of flat particles separated from the ley, the operation is finished. It is known that the soap is separated from the ley when by taking it up with the shovel the ley runs off in a colourless stream. The steam is now turned off, or the fire drawn, and the pan is well covered, after which the whole is allowed to rest for seven or eight hours. At the end of this period the pan is uncovered, and the ley drawn off. The soap is then ready to receive its admixture of resinous soap, which is prepared as follows:—

Preparation of Resin Soap.—Put into a pan, capable of holding about 375 gallons, 75 gallons of fresh soda ley at 30° B. Apply gentle heat, and when the ley begins to boil throw in, every five or six minutes (about 15 to 20 lbs. at a time), 1,200 lbs. of resin, previously reduced to a fine powder and passed through a coarse sieve. The mixture must be well stirred during the whole time to

prevent the resin from "clogging" and adhering to the sides of the pan. It is important to moderate the heat, as the resin soap has a great tendency to expand, and an excess of heat would cause it to boil over. The heat, however, must be kept up to near the boiling-point, otherwise the mass will become thick and of a very dark colour. When kept at near the boiling-point it is always perfectly clear, and its colour of a reddish-yellow.

If during the boiling the resin soap rises and threatens to overflow, the heat must be checked, and a few pails of cold water thrown into the pan, which at once has the desired effect. It is absolutely necessary to stir the mass continually, otherwise the resin will agglomerate in masses and thus prevent the ley from acting freely upon it. The saponification of 1,200 lbs. of resin occupies about two hours, and the resulting compound is perfectly fluid, and free from solid particles. The soap being now ready, it is introduced into the tallow soap, and thoroughly incorporated with it by constant stirring. Before doing so, however, it is necessary to pass the resin soap through a coarse sieve, so as to free it from pieces of straw, wood, and other like impurities with which it is frequently contaminated.

It is considered a bad plan to keep powdered resin in barrels, especially in a warm situation, since it is liable to agglutinate and form a more or less compact mass. It is better to have the resin reduced to a powder only a short time before using it.

After being well mixed and run into frames it is sometimes the practice to "crutch" each frame until a pellicle (or skin) forms on the surface, after which the soap is left to cool. Soap thus made is said to be firm and slightly alkaline, producing a good lather even in sea-water. The produce, from the proportions of materials given, should be 2,250 lbs. of good soap. The colour, however, is of a very dark-brown yellow, and, by modifying the process, a lighter-coloured soap is obtained, but the produce is less. The second process is as follows:—

Put into the pan 250 gallons of soda ley at 8° or 10° B.

Apply heat as usual, and, when the ley is warm, add 1,000 lbs. of white tallow. Boil gently for five or six hours, with occasional stirring. When perfect combination is effected, and a homogeneous paste formed, add 50 gallons of ley at 15° B., and boil to secure the thickening of the paste. Now finish the saponification with 30 or 40 gallons of ley at 20° B., and stir well for half an hour. Turn off the steam and separate the soap with leys of coction (old leys) at 20° to 25° B. in the same way as before.

After a few hours' rest draw off the ley and continue the boiling with 175 to 200 gallons of soda ley at 25° B. If, after boiling for eight or ten hours, the ley is still caustic, and the soap forms thin hard scales when pressed between the fingers, from 600 to 800 lbs. of yellow resin must be added, which gives the soap a fine yellow colour, and the grain of the soap is more homogeneous. The boiling must be continued, and 75 to 100 gallons of ley at 25° to 28° added, which will complete the saponification of the resin. After four or five hours' boiling the ley should still be caustic, when it is known that the soap is finished. A small sample, dropped upon a cold surface, should set hard and firm in a few minutes. After the usual repose the ley is run off.

Now run into the pan from 100 to 125 gallons of ley at 4°, and again boil, with constant stirring, until the mixture becomes liquefied. When all the grains are melted, forming a nearly homogeneous paste, from which the ley, however, separates, the operation is finished; if the ley does not separate, an addition of clear old leys must be made to aid the separation. The steam is now to be turned off and the lid of the pan lowered upon it. After a repose of twenty-four hours the leys, together with all impurities, will have subsided, leaving the pure, finished soap above, which may then be cleansed—that is, put into the frames—in the usual way. When all the soap is in the frames it is to be stirred until cool, and if it be desired to give the soap a slight perfume, an ounce of anise oil for every 100 lbs. of soap may be crutched in. To impart to

the soap an agreeable odour, sometimes 15 per cent. of bleached palm-oil is combined with the tallow, and the whole saponified together. This improves the soap by making it lighter in colour.

Dunn's Process.—This is recommended by the inventor to be performed by steam heat, thus conducted:—Into each of the ordinary soap-pans a circular coil of 1½-inch piping, perforated with holes, is fixed in the well of the pan, just far enough from the bottom to allow the free movement of the stirrer beneath it when it becomes necessary to stir the contents below. The circular coil of pipe is supplied with atmospheric air from a cylinder blast or other suitable forcing apparatus, the circular coil being connected with such forcing apparatus by means of a pipe attached thereto, and rising up to the top of the pan, where it is furnished with a stop-cock and union-joint for the purpose of connecting the parts of the pipe within and without the soap-pan. For a clean yellow soap, put into the pan 90 gallons of leys of the specific gravity 1.14 made from strong soda ash. The fire being kindled, the pan is charged, in the usual way, with, say, 2,050 lbs. of grease, and as soon as the ley is hot and on the boil, or nearly so, the blast is set in action, while a good brisk fire is kept up, so as to bring the materials as near boiling as possible. When the leys are exhausted more ley is gradually added until the grease, oil, or fatty matter is "killed." Then add 550 lbs. of fresh resin, a pailful at a time, with more ley occasionally, until 300 gallons of the above strength have been used, keeping the blast in action the whole time if the fires draw well, but if not, it is advisable to stop the blast for a short time, before adding the resin, to allow the contents of the pan to approach ebullition. When the whole of the resin is melted and completely mixed with the soapy mass, and the strength of the leys taken up, stop the blast, and give a brisk boiling to the contents of the pan, and then let it rest, so that the spent leys may separate and settle. The leys being now drawn off, the soap is then brought to strength on fresh leys as in the ordinary process of soap-boiling.

During the operation of the blast the soap must be kept in what is technically termed an "open or grained state," and for this purpose salt or brine is to be added when necessary. Experience proves that it is better not to make a change of ley during the operation of the blast where the ley of the strength before mentioned is used, but if a weaker ley is employed, one or more changes may be made, as is well understood. It is found desirable that the soap should be kept at what is called "a weak state" during the movement of the streams of air through the materials, otherwise the soap is apt to swell up from the air hanging in the grain, and this is found troublesome to get rid of, requiring long boiling. If dark-coloured materials are used, it is well to keep the blast in operation three or four hours after the resin is melted, provided the soapy mass is kept weak and open-grained. When a charge is to be worked upon the nigre, such nigre should be grained, and the spent ley pumped or drawn off as usual, and the fresh charge added in the manner before mentioned, using less ley in proportion to the quantity and strength of the nigre, taking care not to turn on the blast until there is sufficient grease present to make the nigre weak.

Meinicke's Process requires that the soap-pan should be furnished with a still-head and cooling-worm, since the resin is added in the form of white turpentine, which, during the boiling, gives off its volatile oil as a distillate, which is condensed and saved as a by-product, and thus decreases the cost of the soap. 1,000 lbs. of white turpentine are melted in the pan by steam heat with 800 lbs. of tallow or inferior fat, and when the mixture reaches 108° Fahr. it must gradually receive, with constant stirring, 800 lbs. of caustic soda ley containing 30 per cent. of dry soda. The union of the materials is very prompt at the above temperature, the acids of the resin and grease being completely neutralised and converted into liquid melted soap. The essential oil of turpentine is set free at the same time, and in order to promote its

vaporisation salt brine is added.* The head being carefully luted upon the pan and adjusted to the worm, and the mixture brought to a boil, the steam and vapour of the spirit become united and pass over into the worm, and are condensed. When all the essential oil is distilled over, the remaining soap is finished in the usual way.

Practice shows that the greatest excellence in resin soap is not obtained by adding the resin directly to the oil or paste. The best plan is to make the grease and resin soaps separately and then to mix them in proper proportions. The resin soap is first prepared by stirring 80 lbs. of powdered resin, a little at a time, into 100 lbs. of soda ley at 25° B., and boiling into a perfect solution. The acid properties of resin render the combination easy and prompt, even when the ley is made from a carbonated alkali. The resino-alkaline solution is then to be well stirred into the finished paste, made from tallow, while it is still in the pan; but its temperature should not be above 135° to 140° Fahr., otherwise perfect homogeneity of the mixture cannot be obtained. In this way 15 per cent. of resin may be introduced without materially darkening the colour of the tallow soap. Moreover, the quality of the product is good. Sometimes several per cent. of starch or bran are used to assist the combination of the two soaps. When the soap materials are worked by fire instead of steam the boiling should be continued gently until the paste is uniform throughout, and then the salt is to be added.

Yellow, or resin soap, may be prepared from curd soap by adding to it about 25 per cent. of resin, and then adding from 2 to 4 per cent. of carbonate of soda, and 1 or more per cent. of alum or sulphate of alumina, the whole being boiled with water until a perfect combination takes place. To prevent the resin from becoming precipitated, about 2 per cent. of dilute sulphuric acid (1 part acid to 9 parts water) are stirred into the mixture.

* It is well known that the addition of salt to water enables that liquid to attain a higher temperature than 212° F., the boiling-point of water.

According to Richardson and Watt it is better to saponify the resin and tallow separately, and to mix the two soaps in the pan, and then to boil until a perfect union takes place. Salt is then added, and the soap finished in the ordinary way.

The usual proportions of palm-oil and resin are $3\frac{1}{2}$ parts of the former to 1 part of the latter.

CHAPTER VII.

MANUFACTURE OF HARD SOAPS—(continued).

Treatment of the "Nigers."—Anderson's Process.—Cocoa-nut Oil Soaps.
Sturtevant's Process.—French Cocoa-nut Oil Soaps.

Treatment of Nigers.—In the manufacture of yellow or resin soaps, the materials, or "goods," are boiled over successive portions of caustic soda ley, of various degrees of strength, or density, as before explained, until the last leys still retain their causticity after continued boiling with the fatty matters. After a few hours' repose the leys are drawn off, and the process of "fitting" commenced. To accomplish this, the paste is brought into a thin condition, by adding either very weak leys or water, and the boiling resumed, until the mass assumes the form of an emulsion. The heat is then checked, and the soap allowed to rest for two or three days, when a dark-coloured substance subsides, which is called *niger* or *nigre*. The finished soap is then "cleansed" by pumping it off from the niger into the frames, great care being taken that none of the dark-coloured material is allowed to be drawn off with it.

The niger is usually either worked up in subsequent boils of soap or converted into an inferior quality of yellow soap, according to the requirements of the soap-maker. The utilisation of the niger, however, has frequently proved a source of trouble to the soap-maker, especially when employing large quantities of dark-coloured resin. Mr. Anderson, a well-known London soap-maker, turned his attention to this subject many years ago, and subsequently obtained a patent, from which we extract the following :—

Anderson's Process.—"I find that when curd soap is boiled to strength and subjected to a fitting process, somewhat similar to the fitting process used in making yellow soap, there separates from it a peculiar substance analogous to the niger of yellow soap, and that by removing this niger and boiling the remainder of the goods into curd soap, I obtain a curd soap of better quality than the original charge of goods would yield without this operation. I also find the niger, which I remove, eminently adapted for making mottled soap, to which purpose I apply it accordingly.

"In carrying out my process, I proceed in all respects in the manner practised commonly by soap-makers up to a certain point; that is, I place in the copper the ordinary materials for making curd soap, with the ordinary leys, and boil them together until the goods are to 'strength,' and 'ribbon out' well on the finger; but at this stage, instead of boiling out the head and finishing as heretofore practised, I commence the performance of my process. I pump out the strong ley, on which the goods have been boiled, and treat the goods with successive portions of weak ley or water, and boil them together until they assume the appearance of a fitting yellow copper. This condition being arrived at, I stop the operation, and allow time for the niger to deposit, which may require from twenty-four to thirty-six hours. I now proceed to separate the niger, which I either pump out from under the purified goods to an adjacent copper, or I remove the purified goods from above the niger to an adjacent copper, as I find most convenient; but in either case, the goods being thus deprived of the niger, I add to them the proper finishing ley for curd soap, and boil to a suitable curd, or until the soap is found to be in a condition for cleansing into the frames.

"When I operate upon a charge of very impure materials, or when from any circumstance I consider it an advantage, I repeat the purifying or fitting process one or more times, in which case, after separating the niger, as before, I add to the residual partially purified

goods a ley of moderate strength only (instead of the finishing ley for curd soap) and boil, taking care that no 'head' is formed. I then pump out this ley, and again treat the goods with weak ley or water until sufficiently diluted, so as to perform the fitting process, after which I allow time for subsidence, separate the niger, add the finishing ley, and boil to a curd as before."

He next describes his method of treating the niger, and the way in which he converts it into mottled soap. After separating the purified soap from the niger, as before, he adds to the latter the ordinary ley used for finishing mottled soap, and boils until the soap is fit for cleansing, or framing. The quantity of niger obtained from one boil, however, is not sufficient to make a boil by itself; therefore Mr. Anderson takes the niger resulting from four, six, or more boils of soap, and finishes them in one operation, as above. Sometimes he adds to the nigers a certain quantity of tallow, fat, bone grease, melted "stuff," or other suitable materials, and then proceeds to finish as with an ordinary mottled soap.

Cocoa-nut Oil Soaps.—One of the most important additions to the list of fatty matters suitable for soap-making was the vegetable substance called *cocoa-nut oil* or *cocoa butter*, which, from its extreme whiteness and capability of forming a hard soap, soon became an acceptable substitute in some degree for the more costly tallow. Soap made from this oil, or vegetable butter, is capable of taking up a larger percentage of water—and still form a hard soap—than any other known fatty material. The soap made from it, moreover, is more soluble in saline or "hard" waters—even sea-water—and for this reason it has long been made into a soap called *Marine Soap*, for use on board ship.

Cocoa-nut oil, however, when saponified, has the great disadvantage of imparting an exceedingly disagreeable odour to the skin and even to articles cleansed by its agency; and even when but a small percentage of this substance is blended with other soap materials, its peculiarly offensive odour will rest upon the surface of the skin

for many hours after washing with it. Soap made from this oil, therefore, should never be introduced into toilet or fancy soaps, even in small quantity, except for the very low-priced qualities.

Cocoa-nut oil does not readily saponify with caustic soda leys, when by itself, but when added to tallow, or palm-oil, it does so without difficulty. When saponified by itself it forms a soap of almost unusable hardness, and for this reason, besides its objectionable odour, it is always associated with other fatty materials when employed in the manufacture of soap.

Sturtevant's Process.—One of the earliest processes for making soap with cocoa-nut oil as an ingredient was patented by Sturtevant, in 1841. It consists in first steaming the oil in a wooden vat, and adding to it 6 lbs. of sulphuric and 12 lbs. of hydrochloric acid to each ton of oil, to remove as far as practicable its objectionable odour. After allowing the oil to rest for a while, it is drawn off, and is then ready for the soap-pan.

To make a White Cocoa-oil Soap.—The materials are taken in the following proportions: 2,072 lbs. of cocoa-nut oil, either as it is imported or refined as above; 168 lbs. of olive or other sweet oil, or tallow; 325 gallons of soda ley at 24° B., and 60 gallons of potash ley at 20° B. The cocoa-nut oil, tallow, or oil, as the case may be, are first put into the pan, and heat applied. About 10 gallons of the soda ley is then added, and when the whole materials are united, the same quantity of soda ley is added from time to time, with continued boiling, care being taken that each portion of ley is well combined with the fatty matters before the next is applied. As soon as the whole of the soda ley has been used, the boiling is kept up for about half an hour. The potash ley is then added, gradually, as before, and when the whole quantity has been used, the boiling is kept up for about fifteen minutes, after which about 84 lbs. of common salt are sprinkled slowly over the mass, this operation occupying about a quarter of an hour. The boiling is then continued for about half an hour, after

which the steam is turned off, or the fire drawn, as the case may be.

When the manufacture of the soap is complete, it has the consistence and tenacity, or "closeness" of melted glue. It is now allowed to cool down, and is afterwards cleansed or framed in the usual way. The potash ley is employed with the soda ley only for the finer qualities of soap.

To make Yellow Soap with Cocoa-oil, by the above process, these proportions are given: 1,072 lbs. of cocoa-nut oil; 112 lbs. of raw palm-oil; 336 lbs. of bleached palm-oil; 448 lbs. of tallow; 224 lbs. of resin; 112 lbs. of common salt, and 450 gallons of soda ley at 23° B. All the fatty matters and the resin are first put into the copper, heat applied as usual, and the whole operation conducted in the same way as already described.

There have been numerous modifications of Sturtevant's process for manufacturing soaps with cocoa-nut oil as an ingredient; and, indeed, this useful vegetable product is very extensively used by most soap-makers both at home and abroad, but more especially in this country, where it is employed in enormous quantities. As we have said, however, cocoa-nut oil, unless blended with some other fatty material, does not make a good soap. Tallow or palm-oil, therefore, are employed, in variable proportions, in combination with it, in the manufacture of certain soaps, and it is also the practice to use potash as well as soda leys in making soaps containing cocoa-nut oil. Soap made from this oil being soluble in weak leys and saline solutions, requires a much larger proportion of salt in the process of *separation*.

The proportions of tallow or palm-oil which may be successfully employed with cocoa-nut oil for a genuine—that is, not a reduced, or "liquored" soap—should be 60 parts cocoa-nut oil and 40 parts tallow; or equal parts palm and cocoa-nut oils. For the latter combination, an equal volume of caustic soda ley at 27° B. and a third of a volume of caustic potash ley at 10° B. are used with the boiling until perfect combination takes place. A small

quantity of very weak ley is then added, the temperature of the mass not being allowed to exceed from 180° to 190° Fahr. The boiling should be continued for about two hours, at the end of which time the ley will have become exhausted. A little weak ley is then added, and salt thrown in, with stirring, until a sample, allowed to cool, appears clean, dry, and free from greasiness. If it does not possess these characteristics, and there is no evidence of causticity, a further dose of ley must be added, and if necessary more salt.

If too much heat be applied, the soap will become too thin, causing a separation of the tallow or palm-oil from the cocoa soap, and the same objectionable result will be obtained if there be an excess of salt or ley. In the latter case, the steam is turned off, and a little fresh cocoa-nut oil must be added, with constant stirring, until the proper condition is obtained. The heat is to be kept up for five or six hours, with frequent stirring, so that a perfect and uniform combination may take place. When the operation is finished, the soap is allowed to rest until the following day, when the pan is to be again heated, whereby the union of the alkali and fatty matters becomes more perfect, and the soap turns out harder and better than if framed at once on the completion of the boiling. It is also considered advisable to allow the soap to cool in the pan until it indicates a temperature of 155° Fahr. before removing it to the frames, and to well crutch it, when in the frames, until it begins to stiffen, whereby a more homogeneous condition of the soap is secured. The crutching, however, must not be applied when the soap has cooled down to 130° Fahr., or it will separate from the ley.

If, after allowing the soap to repose in the pan during the night, it should be wanting in strength, a little more ley must be added, until it tastes slightly caustic. Should this not be effectual, warm strong brine must be gradually added, and well stirred in until the desired result is obtained.

Soap containing a large percentage of cocoa-nut oil is

capable of holding in its constitution a very considerable quantity of water, and yet form a hard soap; indeed, in some soaps we have seen, water has been not only the chief ingredient, but *almost* the only one!

French Cocoa-nut Oil Soaps.—In France they make white and tinted soaps from cocoa-nut oil; and since their method of manufacture somewhat differs from that adopted in this country, the following process, given by Dussauce, will be read with interest.

“*White and Rose Soaps.*—For these soaps the oil must be very white and concrete; that of Cochin is the best and the most highly esteemed. Suppose that a soap is to be prepared yielding 500 to 600 per cent., introduce 200lbs. of oil into a sheet-iron kettle (pan) of a capacity of from 375 to 400 gallons. Melt the oil by a gentle heat, and as soon as melted pour in it 50 gallons of new ley of soda ash at 15° , and boil the mixture, adding from time to time small portions of ley at 18° to 20° , until the paste has acquired a caustic taste. When in this state it is a sign that it is entirely saturated. The first operation lasts four hours.

“To harden the soap and make it produce the quantity named above, add to it salt water (brine) at 18° to 20° in the proportion of 5 gallons every fifteen minutes, and at the same time continuing the ebullition. It is in this second stage of the operation that the degree of coction (boiling) of the soap must be ascertained, and for this purpose a certain quantity is taken from time to time and allowed to cool on a dish. When the sample becomes solid by cooling, the operation is finished. Generally the quantity of salt-water used is about the same as that of the ley, and at about the same degree. For the above proportions the operation lasts about seven or eight hours, during which the mixture is constantly kept in a state of ebullition. When the operation is finished the steam is turned off, and the soap, before being run into the frames, is suffered to cool and rest for twelve or fifteen hours.

“If the soap is to be rose, it is coloured as soon as run into the frames, and while yet fluid, with 4 lbs. or 6 lbs. of

vermilion, which is well distributed in the mass by stirring. To have an uniform colour it is important that the paste should be very fluid, for if too cold, a part would remain white."

We shall have again to refer to the subject of coconut oil soaps when treating of reduced or cheapened soaps, which form an important branch of the soap-making industry, especially in the northern parts of England.

CHAPTER VIII.

MAKING SOAP BY THE COLD PROCESS.

Hawes's System.—Making small Quantities of Soap.—To prepare a White Soap.—Lard Soap by the Cold Process.

It had long been the desire of soap-makers to possess some process of saponification less tedious and costly than the ordinary systems of soap-boiling. It was well known that caustic alkalies would convert into saponaceous matter fats and oils, without the application of heat, and it was also well known that during the process of saponification by the ordinary system of boiling over caustic leys, a considerable amount of glycerine was set free, and which, being a substance soluble in water, passed away with the spent or waste leys, causing a direct and positive loss in the manufacture.

Hawes's System.—One of the most ingenious practical attempts to modify the ordinary system of soap-making was that devised by Mr. William Hawes, a gentleman who had long been connected with the soap trade, and was indeed a member of one of the largest and most enterprising firms in London. The process is well known as the COLD PROCESS, and is thus described by the inventor:—“I take any given quantity of tallow, say $2\frac{1}{2}$ tons, and having melted it, keeping the temperature as low as possible, I mix it with the quantity of alkaline ley which is required to completely saturate the tallow and convert it into soap; and such mixing I perform by mechanical means, and the apparatus or machinery I employ is hereafter described. I use the ordinary ley of soap-boilers, preferring that made from the strongest and purest alkali.

“The saponification of the tallow, or other fatty matter,

may be ascertained by the absorption or combination of the tallow or fatty matter with the ley, care having been taken, in the first instance, to use a sufficient quantity thereof, or about 20 gallons of ley of 17° B. to every 100 lbs. of tallow. It is necessary to state that the proportion of alkali varies with the different fats and oils. The combination of the fatty matter and ley may be effected in an ordinary boiling caldron, with the addition of a machine to produce an intimate admixture, and the minute division of the tallow. The whole apparatus is

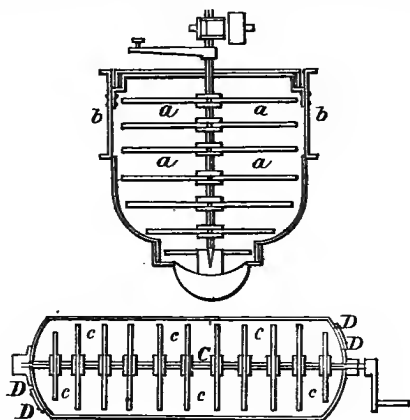


Fig. 17.

represented in the drawings in Fig. 17. It consists of an upright shaft, from which arms, *a a a*, radiate to the sides of the caldron *b b*. This shaft, either permanently or temporarily fixed in the copper, may be of wood or iron. The mode of fixing the apparatus and the materials used first will depend upon the nature of the caldron and the convenience of the manufacturer. An oscillating motion, or a rotary motion, may be given to the shaft and connected arms by any of the ordinary methods of communicating mechanical power; or a cylinder may be employed with a shaft *c*, passing through it horizontally, and from

which arms, *c c c c*, may radiate, when a rotary motion will thoroughly incorporate the fatty matter and the ley.

“The size of the cylinder, for about $2\frac{1}{2}$ tons of tallow, will be about 6 feet in diameter and 12 feet in length. It must be provided with convenient doors, *D D*, for charging and emptying. Motion being communicated to the machine, and the caldron having been previously charged with the tallow, the ley is to be gradually added thereto, and in a short time every particle of the fatty matter will be brought into intimate contact with the alkaline ley, and by such means saponification will take place. The stirring is continued for about three hours, or until the tallow appears completely saponified, as is indicated by the mass thickening, after which it is allowed to stand from one to four days, according to the quantity of the paste.

“Should a cylinder be used, then immediately upon its being charged with tallow, at a temperature just high enough to keep it fluid, the ley is run in, and motion communicated to the shaft, and continued from 3 to 4 hours, or less time, if the mass becomes thick sooner. As the benefit of this process arises mainly from the saponification of the ordinary materials in a comparatively cold state, it is desirable, as soon as the mass thickens, and the ley is absorbed, that the cylinder should be emptied, and the contents turned into an ordinary caldron, preparatory to being finished and converted into yellow soap, by the addition of resin; or into mottled soap or white soap, by the operation of finishing leys, as at present practised by soap-boilers generally. By this transfer from the cylinder to the ordinary caldron, time is allowed for the combination of the tallow and alkali to become perfect.”

The adoption of the cold process in this country has not, we believe, extended much beyond the limits of very small operations, such as toilet-soap making, for example. Indeed, the difficulty of obtaining leys sufficiently concentrated, without evaporation, would, to some extent, stand in the way of its extended application. At the present time, however, when soap-makers are supplied with caustic soda in a solid state, which renders it

unnecessary for them to make their leys in the ordinary way, it may be advisable, perhaps, that they should once more take the cold process into consideration. Although soaps made by this process retain more alkali than those made by the ordinary methods of boiling, and would, therefore, be less suitable for toilet purposes, it is certain that good household, or laundry soaps, if carefully prepared, could be advantageously made by this system.

For making small quantities of Soap by the cold process, the ley should have a density of about 36° B. This may be obtained either by evaporating strong new caustic ley prepared in the ordinary way, or by dissolving commercial caustic soda in water until the required strength is reached.

To prepare a White Soap.—Put into a pan, capable of holding about 100 gallons, tallow, lard, or bleached palm-oil, 120 lbs.; cocoa-nut oil, 40 lbs.; apply gentle heat, with occasional stirring, until all the fatty matter is melted. When the liquid grease has attained the heat of about 120° Fahr., add, gradually, 80 lbs. of ley at 36° B., and stir well until a complete union of the fatty matters and alkali is effected. The temperature of the ingredients, at the time of adding the alkali, must not be higher than 122° Fahr., otherwise there will be a separation of the ley from the fatty materials. If the stirring has been diligently pursued, the saponification will be complete in about two hours, and the soap is then ready for the frame. If it is desired to perfume the soap, this should be done while it is in the pan, and before it has had time to cool. It is not a good plan, when making small quantities of soap, to add the perfume after the soap is in the frame, since it is then more difficult to effect a perfect incorporation of the respective materials.

When soap made by the cold process has been in the frame for about five hours, a considerable augmentation of its temperature takes place, owing to the chemical reaction of its constituents, whereby a more perfect combination is effected. In order to favour this reaction, the frame should be closely covered so soon as it has been filled with

the soap. The quantities of materials given should yield about 236 lbs. of soap of a pure white, and, owing to the proportion of cocoa-nut oil, it lathers very freely.

In making coloured soaps by the cold process, it is recommended to add the colouring matter to the fatty materials before the ley is poured in, by which it becomes more thoroughly mixed.

Lard Soap by the Cold Process is made by taking, say, 112 lbs. of lard, and melting as before, at a gentle heat; 28 lbs. of caustic soda ley, at 36° B., are then added gradually, with constant stirring, and when these are well incorporated, 28 lbs. more caustic ley of the same strength are added, and stirred in as before. The temperature of the paste must not be allowed to exceed 149° Fahr. When a sample of the soap is examined, it should feel somewhat unctuous when pressed between the fingers, but exhibit no greasiness. It is then ready for the frame, and after about two days will be sufficiently cold for cutting.

The same process has been applied to making soap from beef marrow, oil of sweet almonds, &c., for toilet purposes. Oleic acid, or red oil, has also been employed in the following way:—1,300 lbs. of caustic soda ley, at 18° B., are run into a pan, and boiled. Then 1,000 lbs. of oleic acid are added, gradually, with constant stirring. The oil, being a fatty acid, is quickly absorbed by the ley, with strong evidence of chemical action, and considerable foaming, which requires to be subdued by continually breaking the foam with a shovel, or other suitable implement. If the paste has a strong caustic taste after two or three hours' rest, more oil must be added, little by little; or, on the other hand, if it has no alkaline taste, additions of ley must be given, until the soap is slightly alkaline. After reposing for about twenty-four hours, the soap is put into frames in the usual way.

CHAPTER IX.

OLEIC ACID.—SOAP FROM RECOVERED GREASE.

Oleic Acid.—Soap from Recovered Grease.—Morfit's System of Soap-making.—Oleic Acid Soaps.—Kottula's Soaps.—Instantaneous Soap.

Oleic Acid.—In the manufacture of stearine for candles, ordinary tallow is boiled in wooden vats by high-pressure steam, with slaked lime, for several hours, by which a *lime soap* is formed. This is transferred to another vessel and treated with dilute sulphuric acid, which, combining with the lime, forms sulphate of lime, which deposits, while the fatty acids (*stearic* and *oleic*) rise to the surface. The mixture of fatty acids, thus formed, is next placed in vessels to cool, and is afterwards subjected to pressure, whereby the oleic acid separates and flows into vessels ready to receive it. At the extensive candle works of Price and Company the vegetable fats are decomposed into their constituents, fatty acids and glycerine, by the action of superheated steam alone, that is, without previous saponification. By another process, palm and cocoa-nut oils are decomposed by strong sulphuric acid at a temperature of about 350° Fahr., produced by superheated steam, and the resulting mass is afterwards distilled by the aid of steam heated to about 550° Fahr. This is called *sulphuric acid saponification*.

It will readily be seen, therefore, that as a by-product of the candle factory, oleic acid must be an abundant soap-making material, and so indeed it is: and, theoretically, it should be convertible into soap (oleate of soda) by means of a carbonated (not caustic) alkali. Taking advantage of this fact, Mr. Morfit, many years since, pursued a long

series of practical experiments with a view to developing a process by which commercial oleic acid, commonly known as *oleine*, *brown oil*, and *red oil*—resulting from the processes above referred to—could be converted into soap without the employment of caustic leys. The processes which he subsequently introduced included the manufacture of soaps from the fatty acids generally, including “recovered grease,” or “sud oil.”

Since the treatment of fatty acids with carbonated alkalis, instead of employing them in the caustic state, as in ordinary soap-making, involves the escape of carbonic acid, and a consequent swelling up of the materials when brought in contact, even without boiling, ample room must be left in the pan to allow for the great increase in bulk which occurs after repeated additions of alkali.

Soap from Recovered Grease.—Before giving a brief description of Mr. Morfit's process, it may be well to refer to a series of experiments conducted by the author some years ago, with the object of converting *recovered grease* into a marketable soap. The grease was first melted at a temperature sufficiently high to liquefy it, when small doses of a warm solution of soda crystals were added from time to time, with constant stirring, until effervescence no longer occurred on the addition of the soda solution. The fatty acids being now neutralised, the saponaceous mass was next treated with a solution of *chloride of soda*, with the object of lightening its colour. The powerful bleaching properties of this solution soon affected the colour of the soap, rendering it many degrees paler, but some portion of the colouring matter remained unacted upon by the bleaching liquor, which became evident when the chloride ceased to produce any further effect.

The soap was afterwards boiled over a strong salted ley, and the resulting paste mixed, in varying proportions, with other soaps; but although the chloride of soda had diminished the peculiar odour of the grease to some extent, it was found that only a small percentage of the fatty acid soap could be worked up with soaps of better quality, and even then a keen nose would recognise its presence. When

perfumed with nitro-benzol or cassia its odour was effectually disguised, and it could, therefore, be employed in moderate proportions in some kinds of fancy soaps. As a rule, soap-makers have a great dislike to recovered grease, or Wakefield fat, owing chiefly to its odour, but which, after all, is neither so disagreeable nor so lasting on the skin or linen washed with it as that imparted by cocoa-nut oil soaps.

Morfit's System of Soap-making.—This has for its object the conversion of the fatty acids of commerce into soap by means of carbonate of soda, instead of employing caustic leys, whereby the inventor produces soap containing definite proportions of fatty materials, soda, and water, these proportions being determined *before* the manufacture commences. The time occupied in making a batch of soap is stated to be two-and-a-half hours, and in two days after the soap is ready for cutting. Thus four boils may be made in one day in each pan, thereby rendering it unnecessary to keep large stocks of soap on hand.

Although soap made by this system can be "run," that is, cheapened by the addition of large quantities of water and other adulterations, "it does not, in its integrity, contemplate any such degradation. On the contrary, it is designed to furnish soap of the greatest possible excellence at the lowest possible cost, so that the manufacturer may have a creditable means of securing both profit and success against the dishonest competition of very much inferior soaps as made by the older methods."

The fat acids, being already deprived of their glycerine, do not suffer loss in the same way that neutral fats necessarily do in the process of saponification, consequently the whole of the material used, in combination with specific proportions of soda and water, are ultimately obtained in the form of soap.

Amongst the advantages which are claimed for the oleic soaps is the following: they "cleanse better in *cold* and *hard* waters than the highest grade of soap that can be made from neutral fats. Indeed, for most purposes, it is not necessary to use hot, or even warm water to bring out their best effects."

The raw materials employed in Morfit's system include thirty-one varieties of commercial fat acids, but he gives the preference to oleic acid prepared from cotton-seed oil.

In carrying out his process he employs superheated steam, at a pressure of from 50 to 60 lbs. The soap-pan is made of wrought iron, with steam-jacket, and revolving stirrer fixed in strong iron framework. The stirrer consists of a vertical wrought-iron spindle fitted with two wings, or sets of blades, moving in opposite directions, by which a more rapid and complete incorporation of the materials is effected. A simpler arrangement, however, is to fix a series of toothed blades to the sides of the pan, for breaking the paste as it is carried round the mass by a single wing. This is the least costly arrangement, and would be nearly, if not quite, as effectual.

When charging the pan, the proportions of raw materials are either weighed or measured accurately; but, before putting them into the pan, this is first thoroughly heated by letting steam, under high-pressure, enter its jacket. "The charge of red oil or fat acid, say 1,000 pounds, is then to be run into the pan through a sieve, and the heat of the steam raised by superheating. The usual custom, in the absence of a superheater, is to raise the steam in the boiler to a pressure of five to five and a half atmospheres; but this latter should be the extreme. When the introduction of the superheater is employed, its tubes must be kept at a violet or bright violet redness. Care should be observed also to stir well for three to five minutes after drawing up the thermometer, and just previous to adding the alkali liquor, in all those cases where solid fat or resin mixture forms part of the fat stock; otherwise the resulting soap paste will not be homogeneous or handsome." The alkali is not introduced into the pan until the materials have acquired the temperature of 320° Fahr., the highest point it must be allowed to reach.

The alkali liquor for the above quantity of fat acid is prepared by dissolving in boiling water 190 lbs. of soda ash of 52°. The quantity of water must be in the pro-

portion to form soda crystals, namely—62·80 per cent., or, say, 1 gallon of water for every 5 lbs. of ash. This quantity of alkali forms a neutral soap; for stronger soaps, from 210 to 225 lbs. of ash are used. The solution of soda must mark 212° F. before being added to the hot material in the pan, and only from six to twelve minutes' time allowed to run in the whole of the liquor. The stirrer is then set in motion a minute or less after the alkali begins to flow, and is kept up, with the heating, until the process is complete. The brisk chemical action which is set up causes a great swelling of the mass, to allow for which a curb is fixed above the pan. Soon after the last portion of alkali has been run in, the mass begins to subside, and "changes from its spongy state into that of a clear, soft, homogeneous paste, which soon assumes a brilliant appearance. Later it becomes more consistent; and in an hour and fifteen to thirty minutes from the moment that the alkali commenced to fall into the oil, the paste is so stiff and dry that it 'cuts,' or peels from the walls of the pan and the blades of the stirrer." The paste is now sprinkled over with eight or ten gallons of boiling water, the stirring and heating being continued, until the paste, at first quite soft, regains its stiffness. Soap thus made consists of in 100 parts: oleic acid, 65·00; soda, 6·7 to 7·50; water, 27·50.

Instead of employing a solution of soda ash, Mr. Morfit sometimes uses soda crystals, fused in their own water of crystallisation; and since this salt of soda has attained a remarkably low price, it would, doubtless, in this country at least, prove the most facile, as also the most economical, form of soda to apply to this system of saponification.

Oleic acid is extensively used by soap-makers in the ordinary processes of soap-making; but it is generally associated with a considerable portion of tallow or other fat containing stearine, by which a firmer and harder soap is obtained than with oleic acid alone. From 30 to 40 per cent. of tallow is a fair proportion.

To make soap from oleic acid and tallow, the proportions may be—oleic acid, 1,350 lbs.; tallow, 900 lbs.

The oleic acid is first run into the pan and heated, after which, about 100 gallons of old ley, at 22° to 25° B., are introduced. In a short time the oil assumes a spongy condition. If necessary, the operation may be hastened by adding a few gallons of fresh ley at about 28° B. The heat is to be kept up moderately for five or six hours, with occasional stirring, until the grains of soap formed become dissolved. As soon as this is effected, the whole is to be brought to a gentle boil until a thick foam appears on the surface; this foam must be kept under by continual agitation, and if there is a disposition of the mass to rise above the edge of the pan, from 12 to 15 gallons of ley at 20° or 25° B. may be dashed in. It is better, however, to check the heat at times, and to add the leys cautiously, rather than to be compelled to resort to the application of fresh leys to subdue the rising of the mass.

During the boiling, a perfect separation must take place, and the soap appear in the form of small grains. When this condition is arrived at the boiling is to be continued for about a couple of hours, the steam then turned off, and the soap allowed to stand for about eight or ten hours. At the end of this period the leys are drawn off, and the operation of saponifying the tallow commenced. This tallow is first put into the pan, when 75 gallons of fresh ley at 20° to 28° B. are run in, and the whole well stirred, to ensure perfect combination of the leys with the tallow. The mixture is then suffered to rest until the following day, when the steam is to be again turned on. After a while the grains formed during the saponification of the oil gradually disappear, and the tallow begins to assume the usual pasty condition. As soon as this is complete, which is determined by frequent examination of small samples taken from the mass during the boiling, the steam is turned off, and the process of *separation* commenced.

To separate the saponified materials, small quantities of old leys at 22° to 25° are added (about 3 or 4 gallons at a time), when considerable effervescence occurs. Similar doses of ley must be added from time to time, with continual stirring; but each portion of ley must be allowed

to have its full effect before introducing the next, otherwise the uprising of the mass will be so great as to render it liable to overflow. The additions of ley must be made until separation is effected, which may be ascertained by dipping the shovel into the mass in the usual way, when, if the soap appears in small grains, from which the ley runs freely, the operation is nearly finished; but to ensure its perfect completion, 40 or 50 gallons of the same ley are introduced, with brisk stirring for about half an hour.

The soap, which is now in the form of very small grains, is allowed to repose for eight or ten hours, when the ley is drawn off as usual, and the saponification of the soap completed by boiling with two fresh services of leys. In the first service about 90 gallons of fresh caustic ley at 24° or 25° are run into the pan, followed by gentle boiling for eight or ten hours. At the end of this time the leys will be free from causticity. During the boiling, however, to make up for the evaporation which takes place, 2 or 3 gallons of ley should be added about every hour or so.

After the leys of the last operation have been removed, a second service of strong caustic ley is given. This ley should be of 27° or 28° B. From 60 to 75 gallons of this ley are now run into the pan, steam turned on, and gentle boiling applied for four or five hours, during which the soap acquires more consistency, and by the evaporation of water from the ley the mass decreases in bulk. As in the former operation, repeated small doses of strong ley must be added from time to time, and the thick skin which forms on the surface of the soap should be driven into the mass by a stirrer. At the completion of the operation the leys should still be caustic to the taste after a boil of eight or ten hours. The granular soap, if properly finished, should, when pressed between the fingers, form hard and dry scales or flakes, and readily powder when rubbed in the palm of the hand. The steam is now turned off, the cover of the pan lowered upon it, and the soap allowed to repose until the following day, when the ley is drawn off.

Fitting the Soap.—This is accomplished by running into the pan from 100 to 125 gallons of the ley used in the separation, marking 6° or 7° B. The pan is again heated, and when the soap begins to boil, the grains expand, and become more viscid and elastic. The boiling is allowed to proceed gently, and occasionally a few pails of water are spread over the surface of the mass. After four or five hours' boiling the soap assumes a more homogeneous condition, having lost its granular form, and is in clots or lumps, interspersed with ley. The strength of the ley is now tested, which is done by drawing off a little of the ley, and placing it aside to cool. If the ley marks from 16° to 18° B., the operation is complete. If below the former mark, the boiling must be continued until the ley indicates the above density, otherwise the soap will be too soft. On the other hand, if the ley has a density of more than 18° or 12° B., the soap will be too hard. In the latter case, water must be added to reduce the strength of the ley.

The soap being now finished, the pan is covered up, so as to retain the heat as long as possible, by which the leys, together with all impurities, gradually and effectually subside, leaving the purified soap above. The soap is allowed to rest in the pan for at least twelve hours, when the lid is raised, and the scum carefully removed from the surface. It is then ready for cleansing, in the usual way. To insure an uniform condition of the soap, it is crutched in the frames until it has become cool and stiff.

Sometimes, in making soaps with oleic acid as an ingredient, the tallow, or other fatty matters are saponified separately, and afterwards mixed with the oleic soap by crutching in the frames, and if it is desired to give a slight perfume to the soap to disguise the characteristic odour of the oleic acid, a small quantity of nitro-benzol may be crutched in with the soap, which communicates to it the odour of oil of bitter almonds.

A very convenient steam-jacket pan for making soap by the above process, or, indeed, for other systems of saponification, is that designed by Mr. Morfit (Fig. 18). A is the

interior of a cast-iron pan set in brickwork; B a cast-iron jacket into which the pan fits closely, and is rendered steam-tight by proper luting. D D is the steam supply-

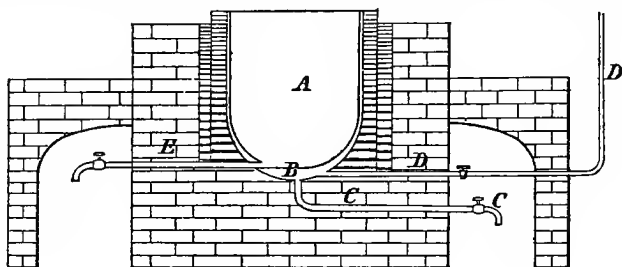


Fig. 18.

pipe. c is an exit-pipe for condensed steam. At E is a discharge-pipe for emptying the pan.

“Red oil” is a very useful fatty material for soap-making. Formerly, stearine was obtained only from tallow, but the vegetable *butters*, or oils—palm and cocoa-nut—are now extensively employed in its manufacture. When stearine is made by *sulphuric acid saponification* and subsequent distillation, the oleic acid is of a brown colour, and is known, commercially, as “brown oil.” It has a strong empyreumatic odour, which may be partially removed by passing a current of superheated steam through it, and its colour may be considerably improved by treating it with a small quantity of solution of bichromate of potash and muriatic acid, as in bleaching palm-oil.

These fatty matters do not require caustic alkali for their conversion into soap, since they have already been converted into fat acids, by the various processes employed in the manufacture of stearine for candle-making. It is usual, therefore, to treat these oils with *carbonated alkali*, as before shown. There are, however, several methods of neutralising these fat acids with carbonate of soda, from which the manufacturer may select that which has his preference. It is necessary that the soap-pan should be capacious, or that only a moderate charge of oil should be

operated upon at a time, since a profuse effervescence takes place immediately after the alkali and fat acids come in contact, whereby the volume of the materials is greatly increased. Again, the alkali must be introduced (with brisk stirring) very gradually, until the full proportion has been given.

Oleic Acid Soaps.—In making these soaps it is the practice to estimate the exact quantity of soda that will be required to render a given weight of oleic acid *neutral*, although a slight excess, and for some soaps a larger excess, should be given. Sometimes, as in Morfit's system, soda ash is dissolved in the proper equivalent of water to form soda crystals, or soda crystals are melted in their own water of crystallisation in a jacket-pan, by steam heat. Barilla, kelp, bicarbonate of soda have also been used to neutralise oleic acid, but there can be no doubt that the ordinary soda crystals of commerce, in their fused or melted state, are, from their comparative purity and convenience, to be preferred to all other varieties of carbonate of soda.

The desired quantity of oleic acid being run into the pan (which should be a jacketed pan heated by steam), a moderate heat is applied, and the fused crystals allowed to flow in gradually, with brisk stirring—which is more effectually performed by the steam twirl of Morfit. The heat and stirring must be kept up until the effervescence ceases, and the mass assumes the condition of a homogeneous paste. If a soap of greater firmness is required, *dried* or effloresced soda may be used in place of a portion of the fused crystals. The dried sal-soda is produced by passing currents of hot air through the crystals until they fall into a powder. Or finely-powdered and sifted soda ash may be used for inferior oleic soaps, instead of the dried soda crystals. In using the dry carbonate of soda, however, it must be added after the fatty acid has been brought to a paste with the portion of fused crystals employed.

If resin is to be introduced, the requisite proportion is to be thrown into the previously heated fat acid, and the stirring continued until the whole of the resin has melted, after which the fused sal-soda is to be run in as described.

When the soap has acquired its proper consistence, it is to be shovelled into the frames in the usual way, or may be blended with various proportions of other soaps.

Kottula's Soaps.—A departure from the ordinary system of soap-making was introduced by Dr. Kottula about twenty-five years ago, and at the time attracted much attention. In conducting his process, Kottula adds to ordinary curd, mottled, yellow, or other soaps, made in the ordinary way, fatty matters, lime liquor, concentrated soda leys and alum, with the object of producing a cheaper neutral soap than he believes was hitherto produced. The fatty matters he employs are such as are commonly used by soap-makers. He first boils soda leys until they have acquired the strength of about 30° B., and then adds to them alum, in the proportion of about 3½ lbs. to each cwt. of ley. He then prepares a "lime liquor" by adding to any requisite quantity of water as much lime as it will absorb or take up, and to this lime solution he adds sal ammoniac in the proportion of about half a pound to each cwt. of the solution. Sometimes he omits the sal ammoniac.

The fatty matters, concentrated soda leys, and lime liquor are now added to the melted soap in such proportions that the fatty matters will become duly saponified, and that the soap produced may be of the required description. The whole are then boiled in the usual way. The proportions of fatty matter, concentrated leys, and lime liquor may be varied according to the character of soap required. The following proportions are, however, recommended:—Ordinary fitted soap, or curd soap, 10 tons; fatty matters, 4 tons; soda leys, prepared as above, 4½ tons; lime liquor, 6½ tons. To produce a mottled soap he adds a certain quantity of ultramarine, oxide of manganese, or other suitable pigment, previously mixed with water, and the whole are then boiled together for half an hour, when the soap is ready for cleansing in the usual way.

Instantaneous Soap.—By a modification of the above process Kottula produces what may be termed an *instantaneous soap*, by combining fatty matters with concentrated

soda leys and lime liquor as follows:—He first concentrates the leys, by evaporation as before, until they mark 28° B., when he purifies them by adding to each cwt. of ley from 4 to $4\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. of alum, the whole being boiled for half an hour. The mixture is then removed to another vessel, and a further portion of alum (about 2 to $2\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. to every cwt. of) added, with stirring until it is dissolved, after which the mixture is allowed to settle until it becomes clear.

The lime liquor is prepared as before, with the addition of $1\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{3}{4}$ lb. of sal ammoniac, the whole being boiled for half an hour. After resting until quite clear, ten tons of fatty matter, with or without resin, and nine tons of the leys as above prepared (or smaller quantities in the same proportions), are said to produce a "superior compact neutral soap," which may be coloured, mottled, or perfumed in the ordinary manner. The rationale of this process is not apparent. If sal ammoniac is boiled with lime-water, it is quickly decomposed. The addition of alum to soda leys effects merely the formation of sulphate of soda and of aluminate of soda, which, if needed, can be procured more cheaply (see page 229).

CHAPTER X.

CHEAPENED SOAPS.

Normandy's Process.—Silicated Soaps: Sheridan's Process.—Gossage's Processes.—Preparation of Silicate of Soda.—Preparation of Silicate of Potassa.—Mixing Silicate of Soda with Soaps.

PREVIOUS to the abolition of the excise duty on soap, the addition of any foreign substance to soap, with a view to cheapen it, was resisted by the Excise Board and its myrmidons with wondrous pertinacity; and since the excise officer was ever on the premises, like a man in possession, and regularly locked up each copper when the hour for closing the factory arrived, evasion of the law was not easily managed. At this period, any process, patented or otherwise, which involved the introduction into soap of any substance other than fats, oils, leys, and salt (on which latter substance there was also a high duty) was a criminal offence. During this period, the high prices of materials and the increasing demand for soaps rendered cheapening processes necessary for the public convenience; but, until the duty was subsequently abolished, improvements in this direction could not be taken advantage of by the more enterprising firms, who were both willing and desirous to adopt improvements of a satisfactory nature.

Dr. Normandy's Process, for cheapening soap by the addition of sulphate of soda, met with strong opposition from the excise authorities, and, instead of reaping the advantage of his ingenuity, he was subjected to constant irritation and official interference. Normandy's process, which has since been subjected to modifications, according

to the requirements of the manufacturer, is briefly as follows:—The soap being made in the ordinary way, and transferred to the cleansing copper, sulphate of soda, in the proportion of 20 lbs. for every 80 lbs. of soap, and 4 lbs. of carbonate of soda or of potash, or 2 lbs. of each, are thrown into the hot soap, and the whole well stirred until the mass is perfectly homogeneous, when the soap is ready for framing in the usual way.

The sulphate of soda, and carbonate of soda or potash, may be introduced in the liquid state (that is, fused in their water of crystallisation). Supposing the quantity of soap to be treated is 3 tons, the sulphate and carbonate of soda are to be put into the “pot,” or lower part of the cleansing-copper, in the proportion of 28 lbs. of the former and 4 lbs. of the latter for every 80 lbs. of soap, and then allowed to fuse into a liquid state. The soap is then to be run into the cleansing-copper with constant stirring, while the soap is being transferred, until the mixture is complete.

Sometimes it is desirable to dissolve the sulphate and carbonate of soda in water, in which case, 3 cwt. of water, 2 cwt. of sulphate of soda, and 1 cwt. of carbonate of potash (or $\frac{1}{2}$ cwt. of each of the two latter) are put into the cleansing-copper and dissolved by heat, as before; after which the soap is transferred from the boiling-copper, when 21 cwt. more of sulphate of soda and 3 cwt. of carbonate of soda or potash are to be added (or half this quantity), and the stirring continued as before until a perfectly homogeneous mass results.

It is now commonly the practice to melt the crystals of sulphate of soda (Glauber's Salt), or carbonate of soda in a steam-jacketed pan, and to ladle the liquid as required into the melted soap, after it has been put into the frames, when the union of the materials is completed by crutching in the ordinary way; or the liquid salts are introduced by means of the steam-crutch.

One of the most important advantages of the above process—which, as we have said, is subject to many modifications—is that the sulphate of soda, when mixed with

soap deficient in hardness, through poorness of the materials of which it is composed, crystallises throughout the mass, and thereby gives it an artificial hardness, which prevents it from washing away too freely in the hands of the laundress. Indeed, soap may be rendered so hard by employing large quantities of this salt, as to resist the strongest pressure of the thumb. When it is employed in excess, however, it is very liable to *effloresce* on the surface of the soap, rendering it not only unsightly but, to some extent, unsalable.

Silicated Soaps: Sheridan's Process.—Of all the numerous cheapening substances which have been introduced into pure soaps, the *silicate of soda*, or *soluble glass* may be deemed the most important, since it not only favours the introduction of a large percentage of water in certain kinds of soap, but it also possesses in itself a high detergent property. The merit of applying silicate of soda to soap is due to Mr. Sheridan, who obtained a patent for his process as far back as the year 1835, at which period, however, owing to the then existing excise laws, it could not receive that extensive adoption which has fallen to the lot of subsequent processes based upon his original and most ingenious invention.

Although the silicate of soda, or soluble glass, is now an extensively-manufactured article of commerce, and forms a necessary item in the long list of soap materials, it may be interesting if we give a brief outline of Sheridan's original process. He first formed a "detergent mixture," by boiling calcined quartz or flint (previously ground to an almost impalpable powder) or sand, with strong caustic soda, or caustic potash leys; the proportions being one part by measure of ground calcined flint or quartz to two parts of either caustic alkali, marking 28° B. These were boiled together for about eight hours, with continual stirring, until they became a "homogeneous mass, having the appearance of saponified matter" [a viscous condition]. When in this state it was ready to be mixed with soap, which was done by introducing the "detergent mixture," as Sheridan called

it, a pailful at a time, with constant stirring, until the desired quantity had been incorporated with the finished soap. The silicate solution must be as nearly as possible at the same temperature as the soap, and the mixture effected by the ordinary method of crutching.

Respecting the proportions of silicate of soda which may be added to soap, Sheridan says, "I find that in curd soap equal quantities, by weight, of each will answer best; in yellow soap about one-tenth more of the detergent mixture may be used." He, however, recommends small sample batches, in varying proportions of soap and silicate, to be made to guide the soap-boiler as to the relative quantities of each which may be blended judiciously to form the quality of soap he may wish to produce. He recommended mixing the soap and silicate of soda in a small pan capable of holding about half a ton, and from this it was transferred to an ordinary frame.

The same invention related to the manufacture of *soft soaps*, for which the silicate of potash, before referred to, was applied, and which will be considered under the head of Soft, or Potash Soaps.

Gossage's Processes.—Nearly twenty years after the publication of Sheridan's process, Mr. Gossage, of Widnes, obtained a patent, namely, in 1854, which bears a close resemblance to Sheridan's, except in the method of preparing the silicates of soda and potash. In the patent referred to Gossage says, "The object of my invention is to provide a soluble compound for mixing with true soap, which compound shall possess in itself chemically detergent properties, and be obtained at a low cost, thereby enabling me to produce a compound soap the cost of which is greatly reduced, but possessing valuable detergent properties, independently of the true soap contained in such compound. When silica is combined with soda or potash in such proportions that the alkaline matter present is about double the quantity usually contained in glass, a compound is obtained which is known to chemists as 'soluble glass,' and when a solution of this compound is prepared, by boiling it with water, and this solution

concentrated (by evaporation of water therefrom), a thick viscous compound is obtained, which is easily redissolved by the addition of water. This thick viscous compound contains alkali in a state of weak combination with silica, and is therefore analogous to true soap,* which contains alkali in a weak combination with fatty acids, and it is to this condition of alkali being weakly combined in both compounds, and therefore ready to enter into other combinations, that the detergent properties of true soap and the soluble compound of silica and alkali are attributable. When the thick viscous compound of silica and alkali (above mentioned) is added to true soaps, and intimately mixed therewith, a compound soap is obtained, at a low cost, possessing valuable detergent properties."

Preparation of Silicate of Soda.—Gossage prepares silicate of soda or silicate of potash by fusion, much in the same way as that adopted in the production of ordinary glass. He mixes together about equal parts of dry carbonate of soda and clean sand, to which is added one part by weight of ground coke or charcoal for each nine parts by weight of carbonate of soda. This mixture is melted in the same way as mixtures of sand and alkalis are in glass-making. The melted mass is afterwards poured into cold water, which renders it more friable. The product is then ground to a fine powder, and afterwards dissolved by boiling in three or four times its weight of water. During the boiling liquid caustic soda is sometimes added. After reposing for a few hours the clear liquor is drawn off and concentrated by evaporation until it assumes a viscid condition suitable for mixing with pure soap.

Preparation of Silicate of Potash.—In making silicate of potash, twelve parts of dry carbonate of potash, two parts of sand, and one part of coke or charcoal are mixed together, and the whole melted and treated as above. In place of sand, ground felspar may be used, in which case three parts of this mineral are substituted for two parts of sand, and only one-half the quantity of alkali is used. Sulphate of soda or sulphate of potash may be used instead

* Or, as Sheridan said, "Having the appearance of saponified matter."

of the carbonates of soda or potash in making the "soluble glass," in which case three parts of either sulphate are substituted for two parts of either carbonate, and four times the quantity of coke or charcoal above given.

Gossage subsequently found that silicated soaps could be advantageously produced from pure soaps containing a much larger proportion of resin than was usually employed in the manufacture of hard soaps, whereby a very economical and low-priced soap could be produced. In preparing a genuine soap he used not less than one part of resin for each two parts of tallow or oil, or a mixture of both; and when the soap had been fitted, and was ready for cleansing, he introduced the viscous solution of soluble glass in certain proportions, the specific gravity of which should be about 1.500 (water being 1000).

When manufacturing genuine soap, to be afterwards converted into silicated soap, in which a larger proportion of resin than six parts for each ten parts of tallow or oil, or a mixture of each, is used, he prefers to finish the soap as a "stiff curd," in which state the viscous solution of soluble glass is introduced. In mixing the soluble glass with soap, it is recommended that the first portion of the solution should be of the specific gravity of about 1.300, and the remaining portions at increasing specific gravities, until the whole quantity of the silicate solution averages the specific gravity of 1.500.

Mixing Silicate of Soda with Soaps.—For effectually mixing genuine soaps with silicate of soda, Mr. Gossage employs certain apparatus, the simpler form of which is represented in the drawing (Fig. 19). A circular tub, *A*, having the form of an inverted cone, is fitted with a series of blades projecting, *b b b*, inside the vessel. A vertical shaft, *B*, also furnished with a series of blades, *c c c*, is supported by a footstep, *d*, fixed at the bottom of the vessel, and by a journal, adapted to a metallic bridge-piece, *e*, which is fixed over the tub and secured by screw-bolts to its sides. A bevelled cog-wheel is adapted to the upright shaft, and a horizontal shaft, also provided with a bevelled cog-wheel, and supported by suitable bearings, is attached

to the tub, the two wheels being so placed that they will work in gear with each other. A driving pulley is attached to the horizontal shaft, which is set in motion in the usual way when the apparatus is required to be used. The

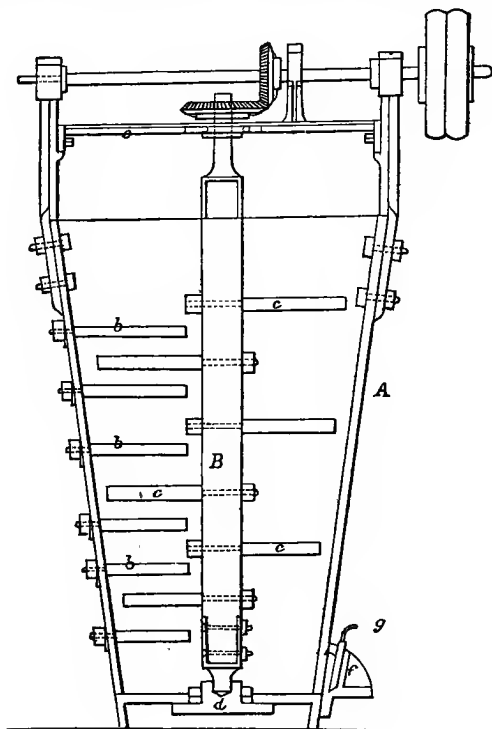


Fig. 19.

diameters of the pulleys and wheels are so regulated, that the upright shaft may make from sixty to eighty revolutions per minute. A spout, *f*, is attached to the lower part of the tub, with a stopper, *g*, through which the contents of the vessel are run off.

“When I am about to use my improved apparatus,”

says the patentee, "for the production of compound soap, by mixing genuine soap with viscous solution of soluble glass, I ascertain previously the highest temperature at which the mixture of such genuine soap, with the proportion of the viscous solution employed, will become too thick to admit of its flowing from such mixing apparatus. I then prefer to make a preparatory mixing, by means of paddles or crutches, of the genuine soap with the viscous solution employed, in such a tub or vessel as will contain about half a ton of soap, adding the soap and viscous solution at such a temperature as will yield a mixture having a mean temperature about ten degrees higher than the previously ascertained temperature before referred to."

The mixture is now introduced into the mixing apparatus, the shaft of which is then set in motion, and when the incorporation of the silicate and soap is complete, the sliding stopper is withdrawn, and the contents of the vessel allowed to flow out, and be conveyed to the frames. During the rotary crutching, or mixing of one batch, further quantities of the soap and silicate are allowed to undergo the preparatory process of mixing as before.

Another modification of the former processes consists in mixing the soluble glass, in a viscous state, with soap made by combining fatty matters with leys, containing such a proportion of alkali in solution as will be sufficient to perfect the conversion of the fatty or resinous matters into soap in one operation (as in Kottula's process), without necessitating the removal of exhausted leys, and adding a further quantity of ley to complete the saponification.

The following is another process, formerly patented by Mr. Gossage:—60 cwt. of palm-oil, or tallow, and 20 cwt. of resin are melted together, or either of the following formulæ may be used if preferred, namely, 30 cwt. palm-oil or tallow, and 30 cwt. of oleic or stearic acid; or 30 cwt. of palm-oil or tallow and 30 cwt. of cocoa-nut oil. 30 cwt. of any of the above mixtures of fatty or resinous matters, in a melted state, and at a temperature of about 150° Fahr., is added to a mixture consisting of 80 cwt. of solution of silicate of soda at a specific gravity

of 1·300°, and 20 cwt. of caustic soda ley of the specific gravity of 1·180°, the mixture being also at a temperature of 150° Fahr. The whole are mixed together by agitation.

Into an ordinary soap-copper is then put 30 cwt. of the same mixture of fatty, oily, or resinous matters, and 40 cwt. of caustic soda (sp. gr. 1·180) mixed with 20 cwt. of water, the whole being boiled together until saponification is complete. The former mixture of fatty matters, silicate of soda, and soda leys is then added to the above, and the whole again boiled together, when 3 cwt. of common salt are to be added. The boiling is to be continued until the mass is reduced to about ten tons, when it is to be cleansed as usual.

CHAPTER XI.

CHEAPENED SOAPS—(continued).

Dunn's Process.—Guppy's Process.—Thomas's Process.—Potato-flour in Soap.—China Clay.—Douglas's Improvements.—Fuller's Earth Soap.—Davis's Process.

IN making silicated soaps, the strength or density of the solution of soluble glass is regulated by soap-makers according to the quality of soap they desire to produce, and the nature of the "goods" employed in the manufacture—some materials forming a perfectly hard soap with a very large admixture of the silicate. It must be borne in mind, however, that whenever soluble glass is employed, and in however small a proportion, the insoluble base, *silica*, becomes separated in washing, leaving a deposit, more or less, upon the surface of the skin or linen cleansed by it. Moreover, although silicated soaps possess good detergent properties, they are not agreeable for toilet purposes, since they are very apt to impart an unpleasant roughness to the skin soon after using them.

Dunn's Process.—The object of this process is to combine silicates of soda or potash with soap, under pressure, whereby a more perfect union is stated to be effected, and the same method is said to be applicable to ordinary soaps. For yellow soap Mr. Dunn takes the materials in the usual proportions,—say, tallow 7, palm-oil 3, resin 3 parts, and caustic soda leys at 21° B. from 140 to 150 gallons. These are placed in a steam boiler (Fig. 20), which is furnished with a man-hole, safety-valve, and all other appendages of such an apparatus, with a thermometer dipping into a chamber of mercury. At A is a feed-pipe, and at B a

discharge-pipe, from which the finished soap passes to the receiving-pan at c. The fire being kindled, the boiler is heated until the pressure at the safety-valve is sufficient to enable the temperature in the boiler to rise gradually up to 310° Fahr., at which point it is allowed to remain for about an hour, when the contents of the boiler are discharged into the pan c, and the process is complete. Dunn prepares his silicate of soda or potash also under pressure, by placing in the boiler crushed flint or quartz and caustic soda or potash, in the proportion of 1 cwt. of silica to 100 gallons of ley at 21° B., and the whole is

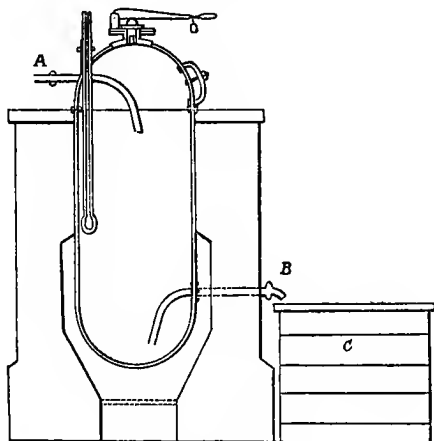


Fig. 20.

then heated as before, under a pressure, until the temperature of the boiler indicates 310° Fahr. The steam pressure should be equal to from 50 to 70 lbs. to the square inch, and after about three or four hours the silicate is to be discharged by the exit-pipe, and is then ready for mixing with soap in any required proportions.

Guppy's Process.—An improvement was made in the above process by Mr. Guppy, who employed stronger leys, which were injected from a reservoir into the boiler

gradually by means of a force-pump. Guppy's proportions of materials are—for every 24 lbs. of tallow, 10 pints of caustic soda ley at 17° B. are put into the boiler and heated to 300° F. Afterwards about 30 pints of ley at 25° B. to every 24 lbs. of tallow are then introduced by means of a force-pump, and the heat continued for two hours at from 300° to 310° Fahr., when the saponification is complete. Samples are taken from time to time by means of a small cock fixed for the purpose. This modification of the former process is said to be more economical and quicker in its results.

Thomas's Process.—In some of the processes we have described sulphate of soda, carbonate of soda, or both in combination, and silicate of soda or potash have been employed as cheapening materials for soap. By this process, however, silicate of soda or potash is used conjointly with sulphate or carbonate of soda or potash in combination with soap, by which a supposed advantage is gained over their separate use. The silicate and carbonate of either alkali may be either mixed before adding them to the soap, or they may be introduced separately, but the patentee usually introduces the sulphate or carbonate of soda in crystals, and then adds the silicate in solution at a specific gravity of about 1.600. The sulphates or carbonates may, however, be used in solution. It is preferable to use the soap as taken out of the pan at a temperature of from 170° to 200° Fahr., the proportions of soap and the salts being regulated according to the quality of soap to be produced. The following proportions are said to yield good results:—I. Soap, 15 cwt.; sulphate of soda crystals, 4 cwt.; silicate of soda (specific gravity 1.600), 1 cwt. II. Soap, 12 cwt.; sulphate of soda crystals, 6 cwt.; silicate of soda (specific gravity 1.500), 2 cwt.

To combine the soap with the salts, a closed vessel is employed, surrounded by a jacket, and the vessel is fitted with a steam-tight cover, with man-hole and lid for charging, and a vertical shaft working in a steam-tight stuffing box with arms attached, extending to within half an inch of the sides, and with vertical blades attached to

the arms. The soap is first introduced through the man-hole and the shaft set in motion when the salts are added, and the rotary motion continued until perfect combination is effected. If the mass becomes too stiff the temperature is raised by turning on the steam to the jacket, or into the vessel itself, and the soap when finished is drawn off or blown out, through a passage or cock, at the lower part of the vessel, and is conveyed to the frames in which it is crutched for a time, as is usual with soaps of this kind.

Potato-flour in Soap.—The ingenious inventor of silitated soaps (Mr. Sheridan) conceived the idea of blending with pure soap certain proportions of potato-flour, which he carried into effect in the following way:—Equal parts by weight of potato-flour and cold water are mixed thoroughly, so that no lumps may remain. To every $12\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. of the flour used 37 lbs. of a solution of alum, free from sediment, are added, and the whole well incorporated by stirring. To this mixture is added, in the same proportion as before, namely, for every $12\frac{1}{2}$ lbs. of potato-flour used, 40 lbs. of soda or potash leys at 22° B., and the whole mixed together into a homogeneous mass. For making hard soaps the soda leys are to be used.

The above mixture, which is called the “detergent mixture,” is now to be heated at a temperature of from 170° to 190° Fahr., but not higher, for from three to five hours, which is best done by steam in a jacket-pan. During the heating the mixture is to be constantly stirred, to prevent it from adhering to the sides of the pan. The mixture, being now ready, is to be added to melted soap, when it is in the proper condition for cleansing. This is best done by placing the soap in a half-ton pan, when the detergent mixture, while still hot, is to be added, a pailful at a time, and well crutched in, in the same way that curd soap is crutched. It is necessary that the detergent mixture and soap should be as nearly the same temperature as possible. The quantity of the detergent mixture which is to be added to the soap may vary from one-fifth to one-third by weight; but the soap-maker should determine this by making small samples with different

proportions of the detergent mixture and allowing them to cool. After well crutching the soap and detergent mixture, the compound soap is put into the ordinary frames.

China Clay (Kaolin) in Soap.—The introduction into soaps of solid ingredients which possess no detergent properties in themselves, cannot be commended, neither should this system of adulteration be encouraged by soap-makers, whose success in the manufacture of soap depends upon their reputation for honesty. If the public *will*, however (as they certainly do in the present age of adulteration), encourage cheap and worthless goods in preference to genuine articles, even the most scrupulous must yield to the demand.

Douglas's "improvements" in the manufacture of soap consists in combining any variety of clay with soap; the most approved substance, however, is *kaolin*, or China clay (a silicate of alumina), which abounds extensively in some districts in Cornwall. The clay is placed in a vessel, heated by steam or otherwise, and worked up into a paste with water, the clay being in the proportion of about 25 per cent. of the mass. Heat being applied, the mixture of clay and water is effected by constant stirring. To this is then added a saturated solution of salt in the proportion of about one-twentieth part of the whole. The proportion of the above mixture to be added to melted soap is regulated by the requirements of the manufacturer—the utmost extent being 50 per cent. of the clay. Persons of peculiar fancy use these argillaceous soaps for toilet purposes.

Fuller's Earth Soap.—Of all the solid matters which have been mechanically combined with soap, the mineral substance known as fuller's earth is undoubtedly the best. Moreover, being in itself a detergent, its combination with soap partakes less of the character of a mere adulterant than other argillaceous (or clayey) substances. Indeed, long before soap was known, this substance was employed as a cleansing medium.

It is nearly twenty years since the author introduced into the market a combination of soap and fuller's earth,

under the title of *Fuller's Earth Soap*; but although it met with considerable approbation as an agreeable toilet soap, it failed to command an extensive sale. The method of preparing it is given below, but it should be stated that the object was to introduce into the soap the utmost amount of the deterative earth that could be mechanically mixed with it, in order that the latter, and not the former, should be considered the active ingredient.

The fuller's earth should be of the best commercial quality, which occurs in large lumps, and first dried in an oven, at a moderate heat, the object being merely to expel the moisture with which it is associated, so that it will freely *slaken* when again moistened with water. It is a peculiarity in this, and other clays, that they are more friable, after being dried, and then moistened. When the fuller's earth is thoroughly baked, the lumps are placed on a flat slab, with a ledge round it, and are then sprinkled with water until they cease to absorb that liquid, which is ascertained when an excess of water ceases to be absorbed, or taken up by the dried earth. When the lumps have thus become saturated, the clay becomes very soft and pasty to the touch. It is now to be dried at a very gentle heat, until all the water is expelled, when it will assume the form of a fine, but not impalpable powder. In this condition it is easily reduced to a powder, but in case there may be any lumps present, it should be sifted through a fine gauze-wire sieve.

To mix the fuller's earth with soap (resin soap by preference), the latter should be put into a steam jacket-pan, and the earthy powder spread over the surface, a little at a time, with constant crutching, until the full quantity has been introduced. Bearing in mind, however, that the dried clay is highly absorbent, after a certain quantity has been worked in, the mass will become considerably stiffened, and thereby render the crutching both laborious and difficult, therefore, to make up for the water expelled from the soap by evaporation, a small quantity of hot water may be added, if necessary, and finally, any desired perfume added, if for a toilet soap. In this way

it is possible to introduce at least one-third of fuller's earth, or one part to two parts of soap, whereby a very useful compound is formed which, as a skin soap, is most agreeable, and is, when not perfumed, specially serviceable as a nursery soap.

Davis's Process.—Another method of blending fuller's earth and other substances with soap, is that proposed by Mr. Davis, in which pipe-clay, pearlash, or calcined soda, are introduced. When pearlash, or soda, is employed it is first calcined and then ground up with the fuller's earth and clay until intimately mixed, and in this condition they are to be incorporated with the soap. The proportions are—To every 126 lbs. of soap, in a melted state, take 50 lbs. of fuller's earth, slaked or dried, 56 lbs. of dried pipe-clay, and 112 lbs. of calcined soda or pearlash, all in powder, and sifted as finely as possible. Incorporate the whole by stirring or crutching, as quickly as possible before the pasty mass cools. If it is desirable to omit the fuller's earth in the above formula, the proportions are to be:—soap, 120 lbs.; dried pipe-clay, 112 lbs.; and calcined alkali, 96 lbs. This soap is said to be useful for general washing purposes at sea, and for washing white linen in salt water.

For soap to be used for washing white linen in fresh water, 112 lbs. of soap, 28 lbs. of dried pipe-clay, and 36 lbs. of calcined soda are used in the above process.

CHAPTER XII.

DISINFECTING SOAP.

Chloridised Sanitary Soap.—Bleaching Soap in the Pan.—Pearlash added to Combined Soap.—Lime Soap, by Lunge's Method.

Chloridised Sanitary Soap.—The object of the process, for which the author obtained a patent in 1865, was to impart to ordinary household and toilet soaps, disinfecting, deodorising, and bleaching properties, and at the same time to increase the deterative action of the soap. The material employed was *chloride of soda*, which was prepared by mixing chloride of lime* (bleaching powder) worked up into a thin paste with cold water, with a solution of carbonate of soda—either soda crystals or soda ash being used, according to convenience. The double decomposition which takes place when the two substances (chloride of lime and soda) are brought in contact, results in the formation of chloride of soda in solution, and carbonate of lime as an insoluble precipitate.

To make the Disinfecting Mixture.—Take of chloride of lime 28 lbs. and mix into a thin paste or "cream" with about 10 gallons of cold water, then dissolve 32 lbs. of soda crystals in 18 gallons of hot water. The solution of soda is to be placed in a clean tub or cask (a steamed oil cask will do), and a crutch placed in it for stirring. Two strips of wood are then laid across the upper rim of the vessel, upon which a fine wire-gauze sieve is to be rested. The chloride mixture is now to be ladled into the sieve, and as each ladleful is introduced the contents of the vessel are to be briskly stirred. The object of passing the chloride

* Otherwise chlorinated lime.

through a sieve is to keep back unmixed lumps, fragments of wood, and other impurities. When nearly all the chloride has been added, with constant stirring, the mass thickens and in a few moments after it becomes more fluid, when the decomposition is complete, and the mixture is ready for use.

The proportion of soap for one frame being put into the frame, the mixture is to be added a pailful at a time, and well crutched by one, or by preference two men, care being taken to clear the soap from the sides and ends of the frame, otherwise dark patches of the original soap will appear when the mass is cold.

The best kind of soap for converting into the "sanitary soap" is a stiff curd, from which the leys have been allowed to drain *as much as possible*, by several hours' repose in the soap-pan. It is also important that the soap should not be of a higher temperature than 130° to 150° F., otherwise separation may occur. This is, however, readily avoided by adopting the precaution suggested. After crutching, the soap is allowed to cool as usual, and is then cut into bars in the ordinary way.

When this soap is prepared from ordinary London grey mottled soap, the bleaching property of the chloride of soda will manifest itself by the superior colour of the soap, which, while preserving, to some extent, the mottle or "strike," will be considerably improved; and if the original soap has been made from rank and coarse goods, the chloride will have diminished their disagreeable odour in a great degree. Indeed, the chlorinated soap has an exceedingly agreeable odour as compared with ordinary mottled soaps. It will be observed that, in adding the above mixture to soap, the carbonate of lime resulting from the decomposition also enters the soap, and this might naturally appear objectionable. It is but right to mention therefore that when the mixture is properly prepared, and its incorporation with the true soap satisfactorily accomplished, the impalpable particles of carbonate of lime are not perceptible, neither do they present any inconvenience when the soap is used for laundry or other purposes, while,

on the other hand, its very superior cleansing and bleaching powers render it infinitely more economical to the user. It has been found in large laundries that women whose hands had suffered much from using mottled soap containing caustic ley in its interstices, were agreeably surprised to find their excoriated hands assume the normal condition after using the chloridised soap for a short time. Indeed it is a fact that this compound soap imparts a most agreeable smoothness to the skin, which, after using it, becomes remarkably soft and glossy.

Instead of employing carbonate of soda in preparing the chloride of soda, as before described, a solution of silicate of soda (glass liquor) may be used, for which suggestion the author was indebted to his friend Mr. John Cowan, of the Barnes Soap Works. In this case, the following proportions may be taken.

Chloride of lime worked up into a thin paste or cream, as before 20 lbs. ; silicate of soda, 20 lbs., dissolved in warm water until it marks about 18° Twaddell. These materials are to be mixed and used in the same manner as before, and the proportions of the chlorinated mixture may be regulated according to the nature of the soap, from four to six 60 lb. pailfuls being a fair proportion for a half-ton frame.

When the chloridised soap has been well prepared, linen and floor-boards washed with it become remarkably white with comparatively little labour, which facts have been demonstrated by repeated and extensive trials.

It should be mentioned that the chloride has the effect of considerably hardening soaps free from resin, and is specially available for soaps containing a large percentage of cocoa-nut oil ; and even after being heavily "run" or liquored with silicate solution, several 60 lb. pails of the chloride mixture may be added with advantage. Soap of this kind however should be crutched, as usual, until beginning to "set."

An important application of the chloride of soda is in bleaching soap made from the darkest nigers, which may be effected by introducing certain proportions of the

chloride, until the colour of the soap is evidently and sufficiently improved.

Bleaching Soap in the Pan.—When soap is made from dark-coloured goods, or from materials in which a certain quantity of dark-coloured fatty matter forms a part, a considerable improvement in the colour of the batch may be made by adding a moderate quantity of *solution of chloride of soda* after the first operation of saponification is complete. The chloride solution is prepared in the same way as described in the first formula, but twice, or even three times the quantity of water should be applied, in order to facilitate the deposit of the carbonate of lime. After the materials have been mixed with, say, 28 gallons of water for each 28 lbs. of chloride of lime and 32 lbs. of soda crystals used, about 56 gallons more cold water are added and the mixture well stirred, after which it is allowed to repose for a few hours, when the clear liquor (which has a slightly greenish tint) may be drawn off as required, and as much of it spread over the boiling contents of the pan by means of a ladle or swimmer as may be found necessary to bleach or decolour the saponified mass.

When all the liquor has been drawn off the residual carbonate of lime, a quantity of fresh water should be added with brisk stirring, in order to wash out, as far as practicable, the remaining chloride, and the weaker liquor thus obtained may be used in place of water in future batches, as in making ordinary leys. Although the process has been extensively adopted in various parts of the United Kingdom, with one or two honourable exceptions it has been used without licence.

Pearlash added to Combined Soap.—With a view to neutralise the spent leys (salts) contained in combined soaps—that is, curd and hydrated soaps combined, as in Blake and Maxwell's process, or other such combinations—Kottula introduces a certain quantity of pearlash, the proportion varying according to the excess of spent leys contained in such combined soap. About 1 cwt. of pearlash to 3 tons of soap is said to be sufficient, though a much larger proportion may be used for some soaps.

Lime Soap, by Lunge's Method.—A flat-bottomed pan is preferred for making this soap, into which is introduced any given quantity of fatty matter. To this is added double the quantity of water, and slaked lime equal to 12 per cent. of the weight of fatty matter. The whole is to be boiled and stirred (with an "agitator" by preference), when an insoluble hard lime soap and a solution of glycerine are produced, when the latter may be drawn off from the bottom of the pan. A certain quantity of water and commercial carbonate of soda (the latter being slightly in excess of the quantity of lime used) are next added, and the boiling and stirring continued, when the hard insoluble lime soap will be decomposed, and a "granulated" carbonate of lime will deposit, leaving a soluble soda soap floating in flakes on the surface of the liquid. If the soda employed does not contain sufficient salt, a sufficient quantity of sea salt is to be added to promote the separation.

"In this way," the inventor says, "it is possible to make a good soap from fatty matters with membranes, or impure oils, without previously extracting the pure fat or oil. When cocoa-nut or palm-oil is saponified by this process, the quantity of lime should be equal to about one-fifth of the weight of the fatty matter. The soap thus prepared is stated to be very soluble, even in salt water, and therefore a tolerably pure carbonated alkali should be used.

CHAPTER XIII.

SAPONIFICATION UNDER PRESSURE.

Bennett and Gibbs's Process.—Mr. Rogers's Process.—New Process of Saponification.—Gluten in Soap.

Bennett and Gibbs's Process.—There have been several attempts to produce saponification by other than the ordinary means, including the "cold process" of Mr. Hawes, before described, in which agitation of the materials performs the preliminary stage of the operation. Messrs. Bennett and Gibbs of New York obtained a patent in 1865 for a mechanical process which is said to possess the following advantages: 1. Rapidity of manufacture; 2. Improvement in quality; 3. Increased quantity; 4. Economy in labour; 5. Saving in fuel; 6. The use of cheaper materials; 7. Saponification of all the grease; 8. Saving of the glycerine, which enters into the soap. The following description of the process is given in Dussauce's *Treatise*.

"Their process consists in agitating the saponifiable materials with caustic or carbonated alkalies in solution in water in a closed vessel, while under heat and pressure, in such a manner as to cause a thorough mixing of the fats with the alkaline solution, and producing an instantaneous combination of the fatty acids with the base of the alkaline solution. We suppose a quantity of fatty matter enclosed in a vessel with a solution of carbonate of soda in water, and heat applied to produce a pressure of 220 to 280 lbs. per square inch, and a temperature of 350° to 400° F., a combination between the fatty acids and the soda of the solution will take place only at the upper surface of the solution when in contact with the under surface

of the grease, the heavy ley occupying the lower part of the vessel, and soap will only be produced where the fat and alkali unite.

“If we now agitate in such a manner as to stir together and thoroughly mix the contents of the vessel, the whole will be instantly converted into a homogeneous and even quality of soap. It is advisable to use no more water than is wanted in the soap.

“The inventors use a boiler or cylinder similar to a plain cylinder steam-boiler resting horizontally, and heated in any convenient manner. One or both heads of the cylinder is made so as to be conveniently removable, and is about the full size of the inner diameter of the

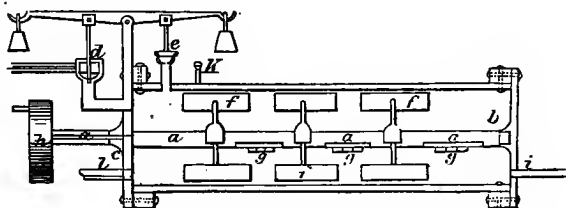


Fig. 21.

cylinder, so as to admit of the insertion of a revolving shaft, *a a a* (Fig. 21), which should be as long as the cylinder itself. The bearings of this shaft should be in the centre of the cylinder, and either or both ends worked through a stuffing-box *c* for the convenience of applying to the pulley *h* power to revolve the shaft. On the shaft are fastened arms *g g* with floats or stirrers *f f*, extending nearly to the sides of the cylinder; the arms, floats, or agitators on one side of the shaft when revolved carrying the fat down into the alkali, while the agitators on the other side carry the alkali up into the fat, thus, while under heat and pressure, thoroughly mixing the whole, and causing the conversion of the whole contents of the vessel instantly into a uniform, even, and good quality of soap.

“At the fire end of the cylinder are placed two safety valves, one *e* on the top of the cylinder, the other *d* on an outlet pipe inserted in the head of the cylinder. They also use a mercury bath *k* of about four inches in length of gas-pipe, and which is screwed into the boiler or cylinder in any convenient place for the insertion of the thermometer bulb. At the opposite end of the cylinder is an opening *i* for the insertion of a supply pipe; at the fire end is also an opening *l* for the insertion of a second outlet pipe, and which is intended to be used only when it is desired to draw off the whole contents of the vessel. When the machinery is first put in operation, it is necessary to allow some carbonic acid to escape by one of the safety valves, if carbonate of soda is used, in order to prevent undue pressure by the liberation of the carbonic acid when combination of the fatty acids with the alkali takes place. If any of the liquids be allowed to escape before the temperature reaches 325° to 375°, they should be returned to the cylinder.

“The safety valve on the outlet pipe *d* may be so loaded as to allow an escape of soap at a pressure of 250 to 270 lbs., and a quantity of ley and oil may be pumped in at the opposite end, the agitation being kept up, and thus a continual stream of soap is kept up as long as the feeding is continued. The product may then be prepared for market by cooling, moulding (framing) and cutting processes in ordinary use. By this process the soap is made in less than one hour from the time the ingredients are introduced into the boiler, but a uniform and thorough saponification is obtained at the instant that the heat and pressure arrive at the required degree, be the time long or short; if this degree is reached in five minutes, the soap is made.”

The proportions employed by the inventors are thus given: carbonate of soda (English) at 48°; water, 100 lbs.; lard, tallow, or oil, 100 lbs.; 27 lbs. of carbonate of soda will, it is said, make a neutral soap for soft water. The product obtained by the above

process is 200 lbs. of soap for every 100 lbs. of grease employed.

The process is stated to be applicable to making any kind of soap, including soft soap, which is prepared with the same rapidity as any other, without requiring the use of so much potash as in the ordinary processes.

Mr. G. W. Rogers's Process.—By another process, namely, that of Mr. G. W. Rogers of Lancaster, N. Y., soap is made under pressure at a *low temperature*, instead of the high temperature adopted in the above and similar systems, by which the inventor states there is a saving of time, inasmuch as the soap can be made in from fifteen to twenty-five minutes, with complete saponification. By this plan, moreover, the materials become *bleached*, thus enabling inferior goods to be employed in the manufacture. The materials are mixed in a tank heated by steam, and the mass thus prepared is run into an iron cylinder capable of holding one or more tons, and subjected to a pressure of about 400 lbs. to the square inch by means of a force-pump driven by steam. The mass is kept in this cylinder until saponification is complete, when it is run into frames. By this system any of the usual combinations of fatty matters may be employed, and the product is said to be both firm and translucent. It should be observed that in both processes given carbonate of soda is used instead of caustic soda, which also renders the employment of common salt unnecessary.

New Process of Saponification.—M. Berghart has patented a process by which animal or vegetable fats or oils are distilled into caustic or carbonated leys of soda or potash. The fatty matter is placed in a jacketed retort, heated by high-pressure steam, or in a retort otherwise heated to a temperature which will volatilise the oil or fat without charring it. When the oil or fat begins to volatilise, air or carbonic acid gas is blown into the retort, which carries over the fatty acids, which are condensed in proper receivers. Atmospheric air alone, or in combination with superheated steam, is preferred in carrying out this part of the process.

The current of air, or steam and air, is sometimes blown into the space above the liquid fatty matter in the retort, and when advisable it is blown direct into the melted fat. The current of air has the effect of carrying over the fatty acids in a more or less finely divided state, when they pass into a chamber, or series of chambers, which are fitted with partitions in such a way that the current, in passing through them, deposits the solid fatty acids in the ordinary way.

When the fatty matters, as a printer's grease, for instance, contain *alizarine* or other colouring matters, the fatty acids pass over from the retort, while the alizarine or other colouring matter remains in the retort, and is afterwards treated to separate any remaining fat from the colouring matter, which is thus recovered. It is therefore important, when alizarine or other colour is present, to avoid too high a temperature in the distillation.

In making soap by this process, the vapour of the fatty acids is passed direct into caustic or carbonate leys of soda or potash, the strength of which depends upon the nature of the fatty matter employed. If a slight excess of alkali is used, the ordinary process of "salting" is not required. The fatty acids are blown into the leys until the alkali is nearly or about neutralised. The ley is by preference contained in a closed tank, which communicates directly with the outlet pipe of the retort. If necessary, the fatty acids may be *washed* before being treated with ley, in which case the vapours are allowed to pass into a chamber containing water. The inventor prefers to employ hot air and superheated steam in combination to carry over the fatty acids into the ley, by which the soap becomes boiled during its formation, and thus time is saved in the operation. The air has an important effect in aiding the chemical reaction, apart from its use as a vehicle to carry over the fatty acids. The steam is used principally to prevent the charring of the matters, and in the making of the soap to assist in the boiling of the same. By the employment of the high temperature, the fatty

acids are separated from the glyceryl compounds without the aid of sulphuric acid or of saponification.

Gluten in Soap.—This process, patented by Lorberg, consists in making a solution of gluten in caustic alkali, which is afterwards to be mixed with soap to the extent of about ten per cent. It is said to impart increased emolliency to the soap. The solution of gluten is thus made:—In a solution of caustic alkali (soda or potassa) at about 28° B. as much bran, or gluten derived from any other source, is added as the alkali will take up after digesting for some hours, when a clear homogeneous mass is obtained. This is now strained through a fine sieve or coarse cloth, when it is ready to be added to the soap in the proportion given. It must be borne in mind that nitrogenous matters, such as gluten, are apt to undergo decomposition on treatment with caustic alkali.

CHAPTER XIV.

VARIOUS PROCESSES.

Kürten's Process.—Lumbarton's Process.—Mr. Symons's Disinfecting Soap.—Soaps made from Animal Refuse.—Bernadet's Process.—Villart's Process.—Crevel's Process.—Villacrose's Process.—Cutting Soap.

Kurten's Process.—In this process caustic potash is added to caustic soda in the manufacture of soaps. For making mottled soap, tallow, bone fat, or bleached palm-oil is boiled with ley and converted into a hard soap. The soap is then allowed to remain in the pan from three to six hours, so that the ley may settle. In the meantime a second pan is charged with cocoa-nut oil, and a ley composed of 3 parts caustic soda and 1 part potash added, and when the mass is turning into soap the former soap is added to it, and the two soaps boiled together until sufficiently hard, when the soap thus formed is to be put into frames as usual. It is said that soap thus made has a "beautifully mottled appearance," lathers freely, and has a smooth surface.

In making yellow soap by this process, 2 parts of tallow or palm-oil and 1 part of resin are melted together, and, when nearly cool, for every 100 lbs. of the mixture 90 lbs. of solution of soda and 40 lbs. of solution of caustic potash are added. The mass is then well stirred for five or ten minutes, when it becomes so thick that the ley cannot separate from it; it is then ladled into the frames, and in the course of a day will become solid. The soap is allowed to remain in the frames from three to six days. Now water, or a solution of potash, in the proportion of 10 lbs. to 20 lbs. for every 100 lbs. of soap, is put into the soap-pan, and, when boiling, the soap (previously cut into small pieces) is added to it and allowed to

dissolve, but without boiling. If it is not sufficiently hard when dissolved, brine is to be added until it becomes quite thick. The novelty of this process consists "in the use of caustic potash, and dissolving and warming up the soap a second time without boiling it."

Lumbarton's Process consists in saponifying fatty matters by boiling them with an alkaline mixture composed of carbonate of soda, quicklime, common salt, and alum, the ingredients being mixed in the following proportions:—Sub-carbonate of soda, 10 parts; quicklime, 10 parts; alum, 1 part; common salt, 1 part. These, being mixed with water, are added to the fatty matters, and the whole well boiled, when, it is said, they will become perfectly saponified. The soap produced by this process contains all the glycerine, and the product will be "a hard soap of very fine character; has no disagreeable smell, and can consequently be used for toilet or ordinary washing purposes."

Mr. Symons's Disinfecting Soap consists in adding to ordinary soaps the disinfecting and deodorising substance known as *thymol* or *thymic acid*, which is soluble in water, in solutions of alkalies, &c., forming compounds which are soluble in water. Its advantages over carbolic acid, creosote, &c., are that it has no unpleasant taste or odour, being very aromatic. Its solutions are "strongly antiseptic, and possess disinfecting properties in a higher degree than carbolic acid, and its weaker solutions do not act cauterisingly but coolingly."

Soaps made from Animal Refuse.—Although it is well known that caustic alkalies will saponify animal tissues, membranous matters, and indeed all parts of animals except the bone, this source of soap-making material has not been much explored in this country. On the Continent, however, some attention has been devoted to this subject, and many processes devised for utilizing slaughterers' offal and butchers' waste as soap material. Some of these processes are given in Dussauce's *Treatise*, from which we make a few extracts:—

"**Bernadet's Process.**—The intestines are deposited in

caustic ley to prevent decomposition until they are to be used. The ley is then heated until entire saponification takes place, which operation is easy, and a very slightly-coloured grey soap is obtained. If required to be whitened, a solution of chloride of soda (see page 112) is poured into the pan, after which common salt is added to produce separation.

“**Villart's Process** has for its object the conversion of animal matters in general into soap, but more especially the residuum of meat, scrapings of tallows (query, suets), intestines, &c. From these two kinds of soap are obtained, the first of a greenish-white colour, not very firm, and having a disagreeable odour; the second is similar to the above, but with the addition of resin and tallow, properly saponified and mixed with the ‘animal soap.’ The process is divided into four operations:—

“1. *Maceration.* The substances are placed in wooden tubs capable of holding about 300 or 400 lbs., when a ley composed as follows is poured over them:—Lime, 10 parts; soda ash, 12 parts; water, 100 parts. The lime is first slaked and the soda ash dissolved in water, and this is then poured on the lime, with stirring, and the mixture then poured over the animal substances, the whole being allowed to remain in this condition for some time, but with occasional stirring.

“2. *Washing.* When the saponification (by maceration) has been effected, the animal substances are washed in tubs, to remove the lime attached to them, after which they are exposed to the action of the air.

“3. *Solution.* After sufficient exposure to the air, the animal substances are placed in a pan, with a sufficient quantity of water, and for every pound of them add 12 gallons of ley at 4° prepared as follows:—Soda ash, 1 lb.; lime, 1 lb.; water, 6 lbs. This ley marks 15°, and has always succeeded; however, weaker or stronger leys may be used, that is from 20° to 30°, and gives a good result.

“The animal matters being completely dissolved, the solution is to be poured off from the lime, and the solu-

tion again boiled, adding, during the boiling, 25 gallons of the second ley for every 2 lbs. of substance, and continue to boil until, on cooling, it has the appearance of a firm paste.

"4. *Cocction.* The object of this operation is to give the soap a consistency which will render it salable as a commercial article, for which purpose tallow and resin are added in proportions varying from 2 to 100 per cent. in the second ley above given. Thus, for treating 500 lbs. of the soap first obtained, take: resin, 100 lbs.; tallow, 50 lbs.; liquor, No. 2, 200 lbs. These are to be boiled until perfectly saponified, when the former soap is to be added, little by little, to avoid too much swelling, and the boiling continued until the paste, on cooling, becomes hard, when it is run into frames, and may be cut in about two days after."

Crevel's Process.—Melt in boiling water the greases, meats, or other parts of animals, press, and keep the residuum; triturate and grind the residuum, macerate it in alkaline liquor for several days; put the macerated substance into a pan, and boil until perfect liquefaction takes place, when it must be allowed to cool. The mass is then to be heated again, and alkali added gradually, care being taken not to employ too strong a ley. When the mixture has acquired the proper alkaline strength the heat is slackened and the mass allowed to cool. From 10 to 15 per cent. of resin should be added to the above, and when saponification is completed the soap is framed as usual.

Villacrose's Process.—In this process animal substances are saponified as follows:—Take animal substances, 200 lbs.; caustic soda, 10 lbs.; melted tallow, 40 lbs. The pan is first to be heated, and, when warm, the soda is to be thrown in, the small quantity of water it contains being sufficient to dissolve it. Now, immediately introduce the animal substances and stir well. The heat must be gentle at first, and the temperature gradually raised to 167° F. During the melting the mass must be stirred until it thickens, then add the 40 lbs. of tallow (with a little water if necessary), which soon becomes saponified,

and the operation is complete, and the soap is framed as usual.

Cutting Soap.—When the soap is cold enough to be cut, the bolts are detached from the iron frame (Fig. 2), and the sides and ends are removed and placed aside. The sides and ends of the block of soap are first scraped all over with the scraper, Fig. 22; it is then marked at each corner by means of the gauging stick (Fig. 15). A workman then takes the cutting wire (Fig. 23), and throws the loop over the block of soap, when the wire is taken in hand by a second workman (see drawing, Fig. 24), who fits the wire into

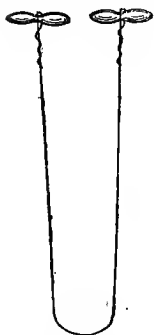


Fig. 23.

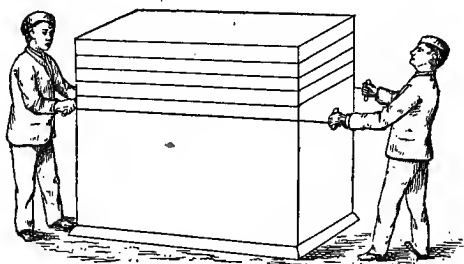


Fig. 24.

the two upper notches; the first man then pulls the wire by its two wooden handles steadily until the first slab is cut. This top slab is cast aside to be used up with other waste in future batches. When all the soap is cut, the slabs are removed one by one and placed on the barring machine (Fig. 14), to be afterwards cut into bars in the manner before described.

CHAPTER XV.

MANUFACTURE OF SOFT SOAPS.

Preparation of the Potash Ley.—The Fatty Materials employed.—Scotch Soft Soap.—London “Crown Soap.”—Resin in Soft Soaps.—Continental Methods.

ALTHOUGH the production of soft soaps is far less extensive than of those commonly known as hard soaps, still it is an important branch of the manufacture, since these soaps are employed in many useful arts, as for example in the dressing of woollen textile fabrics.

The alkali employed in the manufacture of soft soaps is potash, and it is a characteristic of all soaps made with this alkali that, instead of assuming a hard, solid consistence, as is the case with soaps made from soda, they are always soft, tenacious, and more or less transparent. Moreover, potash soaps always contain a large percentage of water, more in a state of mechanical mixture than in chemical combination; and while 3 parts of fatty matter will generally yield about 5 parts of soda soap, the same proportion of fatty matter, treated with caustic potash ley, will yield from 6 to 7 parts of potash soap.

Potash leys cannot be separated from the soap, as in the ordinary method of purifying soda soaps; therefore the leys employed wholly enter into the composition of the soap. Much care is therefore necessary to avoid introducing too great an excess of the alkali.

Preparation of the Potash Ley.—The pearlash of commerce, or American potash (caustic potash), are ordinarily used for this purpose, and the former is converted into *caustic* potash, by means of fresh lime, in the same way as in preparing soda leys. It is usually the practice to pre-

pare leys of two or three different degrees of strength, the weaker of which is employed in the first operation of *pasting*, or preliminary stage of saponification.

On the Continent potash leys are prepared as follows:— If the potash is in the form of hard lumps, these are first crushed on a hard stone by means of an iron “punner,” and if 300 or 400 gallons of ley are required, from 450 to 500 gallons of water are put into an iron-pan, and brought to a boil. The potash is then added, a little at a time, until the whole quantity is dissolved; but care is taken that each portion is dissolved before adding the next, and so on, and the solution of the alkali is accelerated by continual stirring. The boiling is kept up until the solution, while boiling, marks from 20° to 22° B.

To causticise the above solution of carbonate of potash, from 60 to 70 per cent. of fresh lime must be taken, the weight of lime being determined by that of the potash used. The lime must first be slaked with water, as usual, and the hydrate of lime thus formed is to be gradually added to the hot solution of potash; it is, however, considered preferable to make the lime into *milk of lime*, by mixing it with a moderate quantity of water. While the lime is being introduced, the mixture is to be kept well stirred, and the boiling should be continued for several hours, when the fire is withdrawn and the mixture allowed to rest, so that the carbonate of lime may gradually subside. This ley, which is called the *first*, or *strong ley*, should stand at from 20° to 25° B. The clear ley is next run off into an iron tank or cistern, which must be kept closed to prevent the absorption of carbonic acid from the air. When all the clear ley is drawn off, an equal quantity of water is poured on to the lime, and the pan well stirred for a short time, after which it is allowed to rest until the lime has again deposited, when the clear ley, called the *second ley* (marking from 12° to 16° B.) is to be drawn off into a separate tank. A third dose of water is then poured in, and the pan again stirred as before, and after about twelve hours' repose, a *third ley* is obtained at about 6° to 8° B. Further washings of the lime may then

be given, until the lime is perfectly freed from the alkali, and these latter washings may be used in lieu of water in subsequent operations, or instead of using pure water in dissolving fresh quantities of potash when preparing other batches of ley.

Some manufacturers employ variable proportions of soda with their potash leys, by which the soft soaps made with them acquire a firmer consistence than when caustic potash alone is used, besides which an advantage is gained by using a proportion of the cheaper alkali. When this is the case the soda may be dissolved with the potash in the first instance, the proportion of soda to that of potash being from 12 to 20 per cent.; but when a larger proportion than 15 per cent. of soda is used, the resulting soap will not be so transparent as ordinary soft soaps.

The Fatty Materials employed.—These are the animal and vegetable oils. Of the animal oils, those of the whale, seal, and cod are chiefly used; the vegetable oils are olive, hempseed, linseed, rapeseed, coleseed, colza, poppy, &c. Sometimes oleic acid, palm-oil, and small quantities of tallow are also employed in the manufacture, but the latter is only used to give the soap a granular or fig-like appearance.

In making Soft Soap, the selected oils are first put into the pan, and moderate heat applied until the oils have become thoroughly liquefied, when the *third ley*, marking from 6° to 8° B., is run in gradually, with continual stirring, until a perfect combination of the alkali and fatty matters is effected, which is determined by the mass assuming a perfectly homogeneous condition, there being no uncombined oil on the surface or ley at the bottom of the pan. The mixture is then gently brought to a boil, and this is kept up, with stirring, for several hours. As soon as the paste assumes a moderate degree of consistency, additions of the *second ley*, at about 12° to 15° B., are to be made gradually, that is a few gallons at a time every quarter of an hour or so, continuing to do this with constant boiling for a few hours, during which time the added alkali will become gradually absorbed.

During the boiling a considerable amount of fob or foam is formed, but this eventually subsides when the operation is getting near completion, and the mass becomes limpid and transparent. The soap is now to be treated with the *first* or strong ley, at 22° to 25° B., added, as before, in small quantities at a time at short intervals. By continued boiling, and consequent evaporation of the water from the leys, the soap acquires a greater degree of stiffness, and samples should be taken occasionally and examined by pressing between the finger and thumb, in the usual way adopted by soap-boilers; and when the proper consistence is nearly arrived at, small samples should be set aside to cool, in order that their actual condition may be ascertained. If the soap, when tried between the fingers, is stringy, the boiling must be continued, and if it does not possess a sufficiently alkaline taste, an addition of strong ley must be made, and the boiling kept up until the proper consistence is reached.

Some manufacturers introduce a portion only of the oils into the pan in the first instance, and when this quantity has attained a temperature about equal to that of boiling water, the weak ley is added gradually, after which fresh oil is introduced, then more weak ley, and so on, until the entire charge of fatty matter is introduced into the pan, and the boiling is gently kept up until the mass has acquired the proper pasty consistence of the first operation. The additions of stronger leys are then made, as before described, the soap being finished by adding the necessary quantity of the strongest ley.

Boiling.—In boiling soft soaps, great care is taken that the ebullition is very gentle at first, owing to the powerful action exerted by the chemical union of the alkali and fatty matter, during which a considerable frothing occurs. If this caution were not observed, the mass would speedily boil over. When examining samples of the soap, if saponification is complete a narrow opaque fringe appears round the outer edge of the sample, when the soap is said to be to *strength*; when this appearance is not present it

is said to want *strength*; or if the opaque fringe first appears and then vanishes, it is said to have *false strength*, and indicates that the saponification is incomplete.

Scotch Soft Soap.—A considerable quantity of soft soap is made in Scotland, and, according to Ure,* the following process is that generally adopted:—"273 gallons of whale or cod oil, and 4 cwt. of tallow, are put into the soap-pan, with 250 gallons of ley from American potash, of such alkaline strength that one gallon contains 6,600 grains of real potash. Heat being applied to the bottom pan, the mixture froths up very much as it approaches the boiling temperature, but is prevented from boiling over by being beaten down on the surface, within the iron curb or crib which surmounts the caldron. Should it soon subside into a doughy-looking paste, we may infer that the ley has been too strong. Its proper consistence is that of a thin glue. We should now introduce about 42 gallons of a stronger ley, equivalent to 8,700 grains of potash per gallon, and after a short interval an additional 42 gallons; and thus successively, till nearly 600 such gallons have been added in the whole. After suitable boiling, to saponify the fats, the proper quality of soap will be obtained, amounting in quantity to 100 firkins of 64 lbs. each from the above quantity of materials. It is generally supposed, and I believe it to be true, from my own numerous experiments upon the subject, that it is a more difficult and delicate operation to make a fine soft soap of glassy transparency, interspersed with the figged granulations of stearate of potash, than to make a hard soap of any kind."

There can be no doubt whatever that considerable judgment and caution must be exercised in the boiling of soft soaps, and in determining the exact time when the fire should be drawn or the steam turned off, as the case may be; and when this period has arrived, it is important that the further evaporation of water from the ley should be checked not only by turning off the steam, but, if convenient, by introducing into the soap-copper a sufficient

* "Dictionary of Arts, Manufactures, and Mines."

quantity of *cold soap* to reduce the temperature of the mass.

London "Crown Soap" of the best quality is made from tallow, lard, and olive-oil, and the caustic potash leys are generally employed in two different degrees of strength, the weakest from 8°, and the strongest from 25° to 30° B. The proportions of materials employed for 18 barrels of soap are: tallow and lard 52 lbs. each, and olive-oil 70 gallons. About 400 gallons of ley being prepared, a third of this quantity is first put into the pan, when the tallow and lard are added and the steam turned on; when the fats are melted the olive-oil is run in, and the boiling continued gently, after which the mass is allowed to rest for about two hours, when the steam is again turned on, and about 20 gallons more ley added, and the mass again brought to a boil. Additional quantities of ley are added from time to time until the frothing, at first excessive, begins to moderate, and eventually subsides, and the boiling is continued until samples taken from the pan exhibit the proper consistence. If the sample tried by the trowel is stringy, more ley must be added; but if it appears whitish and clotted, this shows an excess of ley, when a moderate quantity of oil must be added. Towards the end of the operation brisk boiling should be given, and finally moderated; and repeated samples should be taken until the soap is found to be perfected.

A second quality of Crown Soap is made from tallow 286 lbs., sperm-oil 80 gallons, and caustic potash ley 135 gallons. 94 gallons of the ley and the tallow are first put into the pan, and the steam turned on; and when the tallow is melted the oil is to be introduced, after which the steam is to be turned off and the contents of the pan allowed to rest for about two hours. At the end of this time the steam is again turned on, and 19 gallons of ley added, and the whole brought to a boil, the heat being continued until the soap appears to be about half made. 9 gallons of ley are then added, with renewed boiling, and finally the remaining 9 gallons of ley are introduced, and the boiling continued until the soap is complete.

Resin in Soft Soaps.—In making soft soaps resin is sometimes introduced to the extent of 5 or 10 per cent. of the weight of the fatty materials used. The resin is generally introduced into the pan in the form of a fine powder, in the earliest part of the operation, whereby it saponifies with the other ingredients or fatty matters.

Continental Methods.—The method adopted for introducing resin into this soap at Liege is, according to Dussauce, as follows:—"When the soap is nearly done, the quantity of resin required to be added is deposited in a large sheet-iron caldron, pierced with holes like a skimmer. This caldron is then immersed to three-quarters of its height in the boiling soap. In contact with the excess of ley contained in the soap the resin saponifies, and the resinous soap passes through the holes of the caldron and combines intimately with the mass of the soap in the kettle. This arrangement deserves to attract the attention of manufacturers. When the saponification is finished, and when, by a well-managed evaporation, the soap is well boiled, its natural colour is a brownish-yellow. If this colour is required the heat is stopped off, and, after resting a few hours, the soap is drawn off into barrels open at one end. If, on the contrary, the soap is to be green, this shade is given to it by adding a small quantity of indigo. To prepare this colour, macerate for a few hours indigo of good quality in boiling ley. After separating the ley, rub it in a mortar, and pass it through a fine sieve. To colour the soap, add a certain quantity of the paste to the soap, and incorporate by good stirring."

In Belgium and Holland soft soaps are made from vegetable oils, with, sometimes, the addition of oleic acid, tallow, or other animal fats. The following formula is given for a soft soap of good quality:—Linseed-oil, 600 lbs.; coleseed-oil, 800 lbs.; oleic acid, 200 lbs. These materials are first put into the pan and heated gently, and, when in a liquid state, 75 gallons of caustic potash ley at 6° to 8° B. are added gradually, with continual stirring. The pan is then brought to a boil, and

this is kept up for several hours. A stronger ley, marking from 12° to 15° B., is then introduced a little at a time, care being taken to avoid the boiling over of the pan when the chemical action is at its most vigorous point. As soon as the usual frothing subsides, the soap will become clear and of a glutinous consistence, when doses of from 10 to 12 gallons of ley, marking 22° to 25° B., must be added at moderate intervals, the boiling being continued until the saponification is complete. The boiling is then to be kept up until, by the usual sample tests, the soap is known to be finished.

Ordinary English and Scotch soft soaps, being made chiefly from fish oils, are of a brown colour, while the Continental soaps, which are mostly made from vegetable oils, are frequently of a green colour. *Savon vert* is the title given to these soaps, whether the green colour is derived from materials used in the manufacture, or from the artificial admixture of indigo, as before described.

CHAPTER XVI.

MANUFACTURE OF SOFT SOAPS—(continued).

Belgian Soap.—Russian Soft Soap.—Gentile's Process.—Jacobson's Process.—Soap for Silks and Printed Goods.—Fulling Soap.—M. Loch's Soft Soap.

Belgian Soap.—In Belgium, a half-hard soap is largely produced for the use of cloth manufacturers, and is employed in scouring woollen textile fabrics. This soap contains an excess of alkali (potash), an essential feature in soaps employed for this purpose. The caustic ley is used at three different degrees of strength, namely, 18°, 20°, and 30° Baumé, and these represent the *first*, *second*, and *third* leys used in the preparation of this soap. The fatty materials are divided into three groups, as follows:—

No. I.	No. II.	No. III.
Tallow.. .. 380 lbs.	Tallow.. .. 225 lbs.	Tallow 150 lbs.
Colza-oil .. 70 ,,	Tallow-oil .. 225 ,,	Bleached palm- oil 300 ,,
Cocoa-nut oil 150 ,,	Coccaa-nut oil 150 ,,	Coccaa-nut oil.. 150 ,,
<hr style="width: 50px; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> 600 ,,	<hr style="width: 50px; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> 600 ,,	<hr style="width: 50px; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> 600 ,,

The quantity of ley requisite for 600 lbs. of fatty materials, according to either formula, will be from 750 to 775 lbs. One third of this quantity must mark 18°, another third 24°, and the remainder 30° B. The two first-named fatty matters are put into the pan with the weakest ley, and these are boiled together, after which the second strength of ley is added gradually, followed by the strongest ley. The entire quantity of ley should be introduced within two hours, and the boiling is kept up until the paste separates from the ley when tried by the shovel

in the usual way. The soap is then allowed to repose, when the deposited ley is to be withdrawn, and the coconut oil in a melted state is then introduced, and a sufficient quantity of ley added to render the soap caustic. Boiling must be continued until the soap is sufficiently firm, and when this condition is reached the fire is withdrawn and the soap allowed to cool down, after which it is to be transferred to shallow frames. By the separation of the ley which takes place in the above process, the saline impurities contained in the potash are removed. About 12 cwt. of soap should result from the proportions given.

Russian Soft Soap.—In Russia a soft soap is made from a ley composed of three parts Russian or American potash, and one part pearlsh (a carbonate of potash), the solution or ley being brought to 10° B. One half of the ley is added to the oils or fatty matters in the pan, and while these are undergoing the process of boiling the remainder of the ley is allowed to flow slowly into the pan from a cistern situated above that vessel. After the necessary boiling, and when the soap has acquired the proper consistence, the fire is withdrawn and the soap left in the pan to cool.

Gentile's Process.—A process was suggested by M. Gentile for making soft soap with one-fifth part of soda mixed with the potash ley. By preference, crystals of soda are used; and it is important that the leys should be free from chloride of sodium or other saline impurities. The fatty materials recommended for this process are: red oil, 100 lbs.; tallow, 40 lbs.; hempseed-oil, 3,750 lbs.

Jacobson's Process.—The inventor prepares a very useful household soap by mixing oleic acid with soda or potash ley in the following proportions:—

Distilled oleine	2 gallons.
Ley	1 gallon.
Hot water	5 gallons.

While pouring the hot water into the pan (in which the oleine is first placed) constant stirring is kept up, and the ley then added gradually with continued agitation, until

the mass has assumed the appearance of a thick yellowish paste without granules. After twenty-four hours' rest, the soap is perfectly white and ready for use. The advantages claimed for this process are the rapidity and ease with which the soap is made and its extreme simplicity. The inventor says that adulteration is impossible, since other substances, if introduced, would interfere with the process of saponification. The economy of the process is also stated to be an important feature in this method of preparing a soft soap.

Soap for Silks and Printed Goods.—The late Professor Crace-Calvert, of Manchester, to whose indefatigable exertions in industrial chemistry manufacturers were indebted for much valuable information, suggested the following formula for soap to produce the highest brightening effect upon the various shades of colour:—

For Madder Purples.

Fatty matter	60·4
Soda	5·6
Water	34·0

100·0

For Madder Pinks.

Fatty matter	59·23
Soda.....	6·77
Water	34·00

100·00

For bleaching raw silk, white olive-oil soap is used on the Continent.

Oleic acid, saponified by potash ley, is a very suitable fatty material for making soft soap. The first potash ley should have a strength equal to about 20° B., and the soap may be finished with a stronger ley—from 25° to 28°.

Fulling Soap.—The soap used by cloth manufacturers for fulling or cleansing woollen cloth requires to be rather more alkaline than ordinary household soaps, but at the same time it must not contain such an excess of alkali as to affect injuriously the more delicate colours of the dyed wool. Some manufacturers employ a mixture of oleic acid

(brown oil) soap, and mottled soap, in the proportion of nine parts of the former to six parts of the latter.

M. Loch's Soft Soap.—In addition to the usual fatty matters the inventor introduces borax, binoxalate of potash (salt of sorrel), soapwort, pipeclay, sal ammoniac, and turpentine, whereby he professes to produce a cheap and economical soap, "particularly applicable for manufacturers of woollen goods, cotton-mills, bleaching and scouring works, &c." To make 220 lbs. of the soap, 9 lbs. of soapwort (*Saponaria officinalis*) are boiled in 22 gallons of water, which is then passed through a sieve. In 13 gallons of this decoction, while hot, are dissolved 62 lbs. of slaked lime, and in the remaining 9 gallons, also while hot, are dissolved 9 lbs. of borax, 26 lbs. of potash, and 2·2 lbs. of binoxalate of potash. This solution is then poured slowly into the first-named decoction, and the mixture is boiled until the ley is found to be sufficiently caustic. The whole is again passed through a sieve, and then boiled gently with 66 lbs. of fixed oils until thick bubbles rise, and the soap assumes the required flocculent condition; 13 lbs. of resin and 13 lbs. of Iceland moss (previously boiled down and passed through a sieve). This mixture is then allowed to boil slowly until thick bubbles rise and all the ingredients have thoroughly combined. It is then allowed to cool, and finally, at the time of packing for transport, 6·6 lbs. of sal ammoniac and 2·2 lbs. of pure turpentine are mixed up with 220 lbs. of the soap. The packing for transport is by preference effected in well-closed wooden cases, which are coated well inside and outside with silicate of soda, and a sheet of vegetable parchment should be placed over the soap before putting on the lid.

The use of sal ammoniac and of binoxalate of potash in this process is not easily intelligible. Again, Panama bark (*Quillaza saponaria*) is far preferable to soapwort, but it is generally used, not in combination with soap, but as a separate agent. It is largely used in getting up the finest quality of white worsted goods.

CHAPTER XVII.

MANUFACTURE OF TOILET OR FANCY SOAPS.

Apparatus for Re-melting the Soap.—Machine for Slicing the Soap.—
Re-melting the Soap.—Mixing Colouring Matters and Perfumes.—
Cutting the Soap.—Stamping the Soap.

ALTHOUGH the manufacture of toilet soaps occasionally forms part of the soap-makers' business, it is more generally carried on as a separate trade, or is attached to the business of the perfumer. In either of the latter cases, the soap from which the toilet soaps are produced is generally furnished by the larger soap-makers, and is re-melted, perfumed, and tinted by the fancy soap-maker.

Before explaining the system of manufacture, it will be necessary to direct attention to the apparatus employed and the methods of applying them, and in doing so, we may as well show how the manufacture can be conducted upon a moderate scale.

Apparatus for Re-melting the Soap.—The pans for this purpose may be made from wrought copper, fitted into an iron steam-tight jacket, the size being regulated according to the probable requirements of the manufacturer. These pans should be capable of containing from $2\frac{1}{2}$ cwt. to half a ton of melted soap. A simple form of apparatus, which the author has employed for this and other purposes, is shown in the woodcut (Fig. 25). It has the advantage of being cheap in construction and economical in use.

Several sound casks (rum puncheons answer admirably), having their heads removed, are to be well coopered, so as to be water-tight. Into each of these a galvanized-

iron copper or pan, A, is placed, and is supported by its flange upon the upper edge of the cask; but, in order to prevent the escape of steam, by which these pans are to be heated, the flange is to be well luted with cement. This may readily be done by first spreading, with a trowel a stiff paste of Portland cement inside the rim of the tub, and flush with its extreme edge. When this has set quite hard, a somewhat thinner paste of cement is spread upon the former layer, and the pan then carefully lowered into its place, when it will become imbedded in the

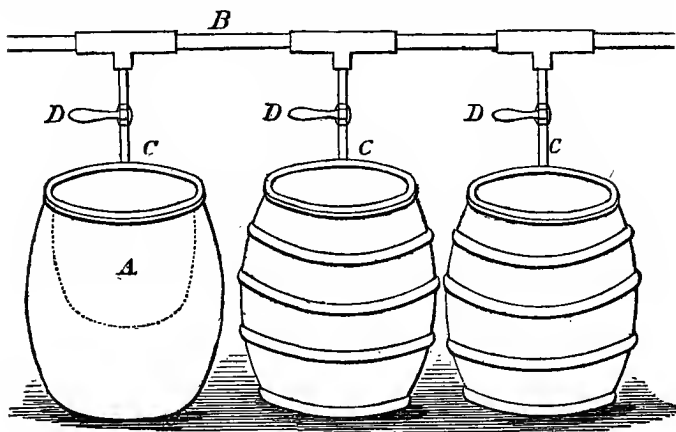


Fig. 25.

cement, which should then be trimmed neatly with the trowel. In a day or two the luting will be sufficiently hard to enable the vessels to be used. A wooden cover is provided for each pan.

The horizontal iron pipe, B, conducts the steam to the vertical pipes c c c, each of which is furnished with a shut-off cock, D D D, and the ends of these pipes are bent so as to allow them to enter the casks through holes drilled about half-way down, and which are carefully secured in their position by calking with tow, or by any other convenient means. To allow the escape of con-

condensed water, and as a vent for exhausted steam, a half-inch hole is drilled at the bottom of each cask, immediately above the iron hoop; and these must always be kept perfectly free, otherwise the pans would be liable to become lifted by the pressure of the steam. When required for use, the taps are first opened full, in order to allow any water which may have remained in the pipes to flow into the tubs, and from thence to escape through the perforations at the bottom. The taps should then be half turned, and the steam moderately turned on at first, to allow the condensed water to escape freely. After a while the taps may be turned nearly full on, when the steam will issue from the water-holes at the lower part of the casks. The pans, A, will hold about 2 cwt. of soap each.

A convenient form of steam-jacket pan is given in Fig. 26. The dotted lines at A show the position of the

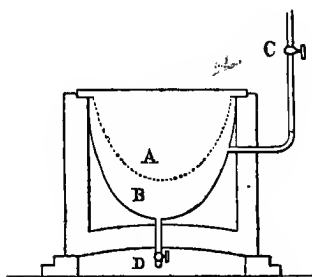


Fig. 26.

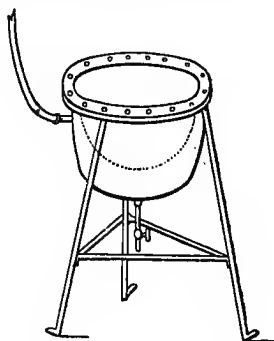


Fig. 27.

pan in the jacket B. The supply-pipe, c, is furnished with a stop-cock. D is an exit-pipe for the escape of condensed water and waste steam. For small experimental operations the copper jacket-pan represented in Fig. 27 is a very convenient vessel.

Machine for Slicing the Soap.—Previous to remelting the soap, which is in the form of bars about

14 inches long by $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches square, it is necessary to cut the soap into thin slices, by which the operation of melting is considerably hastened. There are many forms of apparatus for this purpose, one of the simplest being represented in Fig. 28. This consists of a wooden bench supported by strong framework, and furnished with a blade of steel fixed angularly in a slit cut diagonally out of the flat surface of the bench. The blade is adjusted so as to project a little distance above the board, and the arrangement is like that of an inverted carpenter's plane. Beneath the cutter or planing-machine is a broad and deep drawer for receiving the shavings of soap. When

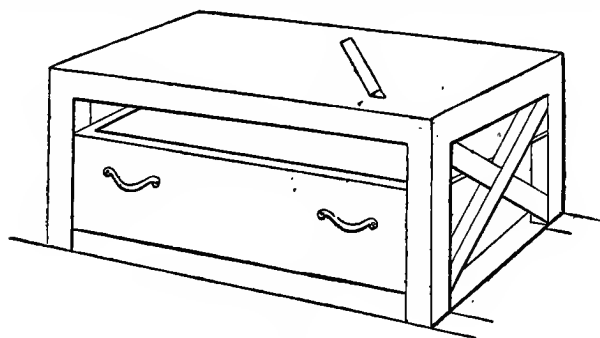


Fig. 28.

in use, a bar of soap is pushed lengthwise towards the blade and beyond it, when a thin slice is cut off and falls through the slit into the drawer beneath. By this simple contrivance, and by a quick workman, soap bars may be cut into thin shavings with sufficient rapidity to feed several such melting-pans as those described.

For more extensive operations, the machine shown in Fig. 29 is much used. This consists of a cutter, *a*, attached to the centre of which is an iron shaft, at one end of which is a handle, *c*, to set the machine in motion. The machine is fixed on a wooden frame, *d d*. At *e* is an inclined plane of wood, upon which the soap, *f*, is placed to

be cut into shavings. A wooden box, *g*, receives the shavings as they fall from the machine. The bar or slab of soap, being placed on the inclined plane, *e*, is allowed to touch the cutter; the handle being now turned, the first blade removes a shaving, and is immediately followed by the second blade, and so on until the entire bar is cut, when it is replaced by another, and so quick is the operation, that in an hour two cwt. of soap may be reduced to shavings by this useful machine.

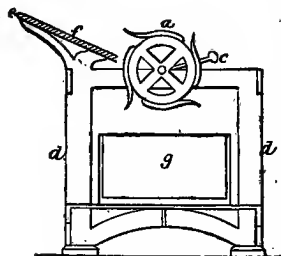


Fig. 29.

Re-melting the Soap.—The soap to be re-melted for conversion into toilet soap should be pure “unliquored” soap, and of recent manufacture, otherwise those surfaces which may have become hardened by long keeping will be troublesome to liquefy. The bars of soap are first reduced to thin slices by the planing-machine (Fig. 28), and a few of these are first placed round the interior of the pan and in contact with it, when the steam is to be turned on, and, after a short time, the soap will begin to melt where it is in contact with the pan. To prevent the soap from becoming dry on the unmelted surfaces, it is a good plan to sprinkle it with water. After putting in the first few slices of soap, the wooden covers should be placed over the pans, and these should not be raised until sufficient time has been allowed for the pans to become well heated. If now, on raising the lid, the soap appears to have fairly commenced to melt, a few more slices of soap may be introduced, and the pan again covered. After a short time fresh quantities of soap may be put into the pan gradually, and care must be taken to avoid adding an excess of the cold soap, otherwise it will, by chilling the melted soap, form a conglomerate mass which will not readily liquefy. If these precautions are observed there will be no difficulty in the re-melting. As fast as the soap melts it will sink to the bottom of the pan; and, in order

to assist the mingling of the melting soap with that which is already liquefied, gentle stirring may be applied, and fresh batches of sliced soap added gradually, until the pan is sufficiently full. The heat must be kept up, with occasional stirring with a small wooden crutch, until the mass is perfectly homogeneous and free from unmelted lumps.

Since toilet soaps are required to be somewhat firmer and harder than ordinary household soaps, a certain amount of evaporation of their combined water must be allowed to take place during the re-melting; but this must not be carried too far, otherwise the soap will be liable to crack during the subsequent pressing or stamping operations. Again, it will be necessary to evaporate a portion of the combined water to allow for the addition of the essential oils or perfumes which are to be blended with it.

When dry colouring matters, as vermilion, yellow-ochre, red-lead, and various metallic oxides have to be mixed with the melted soap, care must be taken not to allow the paste to become too stiff, otherwise, when these are incorporated with the mass, it may become unmanageable.

Mixing Colouring Matters and Perfumes.—The proportions of colouring matter and essential oils to be added to the melted soap being weighed and measured, may be worked up together with a spatula, and the mixture then poured into the soap and thoroughly incorporated by continual crutching or stirring. Or the colouring matter may be added, a little at a time, to a portion of the melted soap dipped out of the bulk by a small ladle (Fig. 30), and when this is well mixed it should be poured into the pan and stirred in, the remainder of the colour being introduced in the same way. By this method the colouring matters and essential oils may be very perfectly and uniformly blended with the soap paste. When perfumes are used without colouring matters, they



Fig. 30.

should be slowly poured into the pan, with stirring, until the requisite proportion has been added. The soap being perfumed and coloured, small samples should be taken to determine if it be of the proper consistence to set hard and firm without being brittle. It is now ready for the frames, which, for scented soaps, are much smaller than those employed for household soaps.

The condition of the soap when ready for the frames is that of a thick pasty mass, and must be transferred to the frames by means of the short-handled ladle (Fig. 30), or swimmer (Fig. 12); and when the frame is full the soap should be pressed or patted down, so as to prevent any hollows or cavities being formed through the irregular distribution of the soap in the frame. The soap should also be well covered with cloths, so that the cooling may be very gradual.

Cutting the Soap.—When the soap is sufficiently cold it is cut into slabs and bars proportionate to the size required for the tablets, which generally run eight, six, four, or two to the pound. The bars are next divided into cakes or blocks, the width of which is regulated according to the size and weight of the tablets.

Stamping the Soap.—As the tablets of toilet soaps are generally of an oblong form, with rounded corners, the cakes which have been cut from the bars require to be *trimmed* before they undergo the process of stamping. This is generally done as follows: A workman, taking a cake in his hand, passes each sharp edge of the cake over the blade of a planing-machine, such as is shown in Fig. 28, the blade of the machine being so adjusted as to remove only a small portion from the edges. The corners are next trimmed with a knife, and each cake is weighed from time to time during the trimming, until it approaches the required weight for the tablet.

The cakes thus prepared are next put aside to dry, or are placed in a drying-room, so that the surface may be free from stickiness before they are stamped. The cakes, after being trimmed and dried as described, are first moulded in a lever press (Fig. 31), which gives them the

desired form. A A is a strong wooden table, to which the press is firmly attached by bolts and screws; B is a cast-iron pillar, to which the lever c and the piston D (to which the upper half of the mould is connected) are attached; E is the lower half of the mould. In applying this press the workman places the cake of soap upon the lower half-mould, and then brings the lever down with considerable force, and then jerks it upwards, so as to separate the two halves of the mould. If necessary, he gives the cake several blows, after which he removes it and replaces it by another cake.

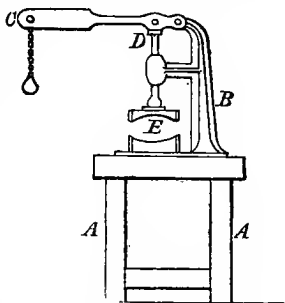


Fig. 31.

The cakes thus stamped are again set aside until their surface is perfectly dry, after which they are slightly scraped all over, and a little alcohol is sometimes rubbed over them to impart brilliancy to their surface.

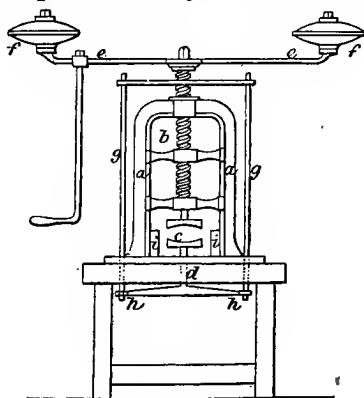


Fig. 32.

The cakes are finally stamped in a second press, which may be of the form given in Fig. 32, which is called a "fly"

or screw press. This useful press is, like the former, supported upon a strong wooden table, which latter must be secured to the floor by bolts or screws. *aa* represents the frame of the press; *b* the screw, furnished at its lower end with a socket, into which the upper half-mould is secured by a screw; *c* is the lower half-mould, and which is connected to the movable rod *d*. The fly, *ee*, is surmounted by two heavy balls, *ff*. The upright wrought-iron rods, *gg*, are adapted by screws to the horizontal bar below, *hh*. These rods pass beneath the cast-iron or brass matrix, *ii*, and raise the movable rod *d* after each stroke of the press, by which means the stamped tablet is set free, and, being removed, is replaced by another. In the upper half-mould is fixed, by means of a screw, the engraved stamp which is to impress the soap. After stamping the tablets they are carefully trimmed at the edges, and are then ready for wrapping up.

CHAPTER XVIII.

MANUFACTURE OF TOILET SOAPS—(continued.)

Rose Soap. — Orange-flower Soap. — Cinnamon Soap. — Musk Soap.
 — Bitter Almond Soap. — Windsor Soap. — Brown Windsor Soap.
 — Violet Windsor Soap. — Savon au Bouquet. — Savon à la Cannelle.
 — Almond-oil Soap. — Marshmallow Soap. — Vanilla Soap. — Benzoin Soap.

Rose Soap, or Savon à la Rose, may be made from either of the following formulæ, the soap being previously well melted, as before described:—

I.

White curd soap, made from best tallow	60 lbs.
Olive-oil soap	40 „
Vermilion in fine powder	3 ozs.

The vermilion is to be first well mixed with the soap, great care being taken to ensure *perfect* incorporation. The steam is then to be turned off, and when the soap has cooled a little the following perfumes are to be added in about the proportions given:—

Essential oil of rose	6 ozs.
„ oils of cinnamon and clovss, of each	2 „
„ oil of bergamot	5 „

Soap prepared from the above formula has a delicate rose colour, is very fragrant and emollient, and is indeed one of the finest of toilet soaps.

II.

White curd soap	100 lbs.
Vermilion	10 ozs.
Oil of rose	15 „
„ bergamot	5 „
„ neroli	2½ „
Oils of cloves and cinnamon, of each	5 „

Orange-flower Soap.

White curd soap	60 lbs.
Palm-oil soap	40 „

Colour with

Yellow-green pigment	16 ozs.
Minium (red-lead)	2½ „

Perfume with

Oil of Portugal	15 ozs.
„ amberggris	15 „

Cinnamon Soap.

White curd soap	60 lbs.
Palm-oil soap	40 „

Colour with 2 lbs. of yellow ochre and perfume with

Oil of cinnamon	14 ozs.
„ sassafras	2½ „
„ bergamot	2½ „

Musk Soap.

White curd soap	60 lbs.
Palm-oil soap	40 „

Colour with

Brown ochre, or Spanish brown	8 ozs.
-------------------------------------	--------

Perfume with

Oils of musk and bergamot, of each	7 ozs.
Powder of cloves, pale roses, and gilliflower, of each	9 „

Bitter Almond Soap, or Savon d'Amandes Amères.

White curd soap	100 lbs.
Oil of bitter almonds	20 ozs.

Windsor Soap.—This famous toilet soap, as prepared in London, is generally made from tallow nine parts and olive-oil one part, and is perfumed (for every 1,000 lbs. of the paste) with

Oil of caraway	6 lbs.
Oils of lavender and rosemary, of each	1½ lb.

Or, for each 100 lbs. of soap,

Oil of caraway	5 ozs.
„ bergamot	10 „
„ cloves	2½ „
„ thyme	5 „

Or, for the same quantity of soap,

Oil of caraway	10 ozs.
„ bergamot	5 „
Oils of lavender and rosemary, of each.....	2½ „

Brown Windsor Soap is prepared as above, and coloured either with burnt sugar (caramel) or *umber*.

In making this soap some perfumers have adopted a system of making what is called an *instantaneous soap*. This consists in saponifying the fatty matter, which is generally a mixture of hog's lard and tallow, with strong ley. Twenty parts of the fatty matters are taken, to which is added ten parts by weight of caustic soda ley at 36° B., and these being put into a small jacket-pan, steam heat is applied until the mass assumes a fluid condition, when five parts more ley are introduced, with constant stirring for an hour or so. At the end of this time an additional five parts of ley are given, and the agitation continued, the heat of the mass not being allowed to exceed 150° F. When the ley has deposited, and the paste become perfectly homogeneous and of the proper consistence, it is transferred to another pan, and the perfumes are then added, after which the soap is ladled into the frame. In about twenty-four hours or less the soap will be cool enough to cut. It must not be allowed to remain until quite cold, or it will become too hard for cutting. These instantaneous soaps are best made direct from the fatty acids, with carbonate of soda, as recommended by Mr. Morfit.

Windsor Soap is also made from lard in the same way as olive-oil soap, and the perfumes—oils of caraway, lavender, and rosemary—are added so soon as the soap has acquired the proper degree of firmness.

Violet Windsor Soap is made from lard, 50 parts; palm-oil, 33 parts; and spermaceti, 17 parts; and the perfume employed is essence of Portugal, to which a little oil of cloves is added. The well-known violet odour of the palm-oil, modified by the perfumes, gives an agreeable fragrance to the soap.

Powdered cassia is a useful substance for giving an agreeable brown colour to toilet soap, but it must be added

a little at a time, and well crutched or stirred into the melted soap.

Savon au Bouquet.—This soap is prepared from the following:—

White curd soap	60 lbs.
Olive-oil soap	40 „

Perfume with

Oil of bergamot	13 ozs.
„ neroli	1½ oz.
Oils of clove, sassafras, and thyme, of each	1¼ „

Colour with

Brown ochre	22 lbs.
-------------------	---------

Savon à la Cannelle. (Cinnamon Soap.)

White curd soap	60 lbs.
Palm-oil soap	4 „

Colour the paste with

Yellow ochre	2 lbs.
--------------------	--------

And perfume with

Oil of cinnamon	14 ozs.
„ sassafras and bergamot, of each	25 „

Almond-oil Soap is, according to Dussauce, prepared in France as follows, and since it is sold at a high price, the materials must be of the best and purest quality. “The oil of sweet almonds must be perfectly fresh and the carbonate of soda chemically pure. The soda is dissolved in water, adding to it one-third of its weight of slacked lime; stir from time to time, and after several hours, filter; concentrate the ley by evaporation until it marks 36° B.; then take 12 parts for 25 parts of oil, introduce the ley into a jar, and gradually incorporate the oil, being careful to stir the mixture until it has the appearance of a soft grease. In two or three days its consistency is such as that it can be run into china moulds, if placed in a room the temperature of which is from 71° to 107°. In about one month it can be taken from the moulds. The temperature of the ley must be from 40° to 59° (104° to 140° Fahr.), but the soap may be prepared more rapidly by placing the mixture on warm ashes, and

adding a little warm water to the ley, so as to prevent its concentration. This soap is very white, with a sweet taste and odour. It becomes very hard."

Marshmallow Soap.

White curd soap and palm-oil soap, of each 40 lbs.

Colour with

Yellow ochre 4 ozs.
 Orange mineral 4 ,,
 Gamboge 1½ oz.

Perfume with

Oil of lavender 10 ozs.
 ,, lemon 2 ,,
 ,, neroli 2 ,,
 ,, verbena 10 ,,
 ,, mint 3 ,,

Or, the following:—

Oil of Portugal 6 ozs.
 ,, thyme 4 ,,
 ,, lavender 1¼ oz.
 ,, cinnamon 2 ozs.
 ,, cloves 3 ,,

This soap may be coloured rose with vermilion, or be left as a white soap if desired.

Vanilla Soap.

White curd soap 40 lbs.
 Tincture of vanilla 2 ,,
 Oil of rose 2½ drms.

Colour with

Burnt sienna 7 ozs.

Benzoin Soap.

White curd soap 40 lbs.
 Tincture of benzoin 54 ozs.

The soap must be in the form of a very stiff paste, otherwise the tincture of benzoin will render it rather soft. Brown ochre may be used as the colouring agent.

CHAPTER XIX.

MANUFACTURE OF TOILET SOAPS—(continued).

French System of making Toilet Soaps.—Formulæ for French Toilet Soaps.—Savon de Guimauve.—Savon aux Fleurs d'Italie.—Savon de Crimée.—Savon de Palme.—Violet Soap.—Vanilla Soap.—Rose-leaf Soap.—Savon à la Maréchale.—Lettuce Soap.—Ambergris Soap.—Elder-flower Soap.—Lemon Soap.—Orange Soap.—Glycerine Soap.—Savonnettes or Washballs.—Violet Washballs.—Honey Savonnettes.—Savonnettes of Sweet Herbs.—Savonnettes of Camphor.—Savonnettes of Neroli.—Savonnettes à la Vanille.—Marbled Savonnettes.—Savonnettes au Miel.—Floating Savonnettes.—Sand Balls.

French System of making Toilet Soaps.—Instead of preparing toilet soaps from re-melted soap, as before described, a system is adopted on the Continent by which these soaps are made by a series of mechanical operations which we will endeavour to describe as briefly as possible. The various operations are arranged under the following heads:—1. Cutting the soap into shavings. 2. Mixing the essential oils and colours with the soap. 3. Grinding the soap. 4. Pounding the soap in a mortar. 5. Balling the soap. 6. Pressing. 7. Stamping.

Cutting the soap into shavings is performed by a machine such as is shown in Fig. 29, and the shavings are placed in a lead-lined wooden box. The proper proportion of essential oils and colouring matter (except when the soap is required to be white) are first mixed in a separate vessel, with a little alcohol, and the mixture is then added gradually to the shavings, with continual stirring. The perfumed shavings are next placed in a grinding-machine, through which they are allowed to pass several times, until a perfectly homogeneous paste is formed.

The soap is next pounded in a marble mortar, by means of a wooden pestle, the object of which is to convert the soap into a uniform mass. Only a few pounds (about ten or twelve) of soap are pounded at a time, lest it should become too dry for the subsequent operation of *balling*, which is performed somewhat as follows:—The soap is placed on one end of a table on which is a marble slab, and in order that an allowance may be made for the reduction of weight which the soap has to undergo in the process of drying, the balls or cakes of soap are made about 25 per cent. heavier than the finished tablets. The directions for making the soap into cakes of the proper size, weight, and form for the pressing and stamping machines are thus given by Dussauce:—

“Weigh as many pieces of $4\frac{1}{2}$ ounces as you want of cakes of $3\frac{1}{2}$ ounces; knead with the hands each little mass of soap, so as to form a ball, which is made round on the marble slab. For this purpose, the ball being on the marble, give it a rotary movement with the right hand. The ball being obtained, leave it on the marble, and give it a cylindrical shape by rolling it with the flat of the hand. This cylinder must not be larger than the model (mould?). Nevertheless, as the cylindrical shape is not that which the soap ought to have, strike the cylinder on all its sides on the marble to square it—that is, to form an oblong square—and round the angles by striking them gently on the marble. If any unforeseen circumstance requires a suspension of the work, cover the pounded soap with a damp cloth and keep it in a cool place. If the soap is too dry, it will be difficult to work well. Once begun, it must be worked quickly and without interruption.

“The small cakes being shaped as indicated, dispose them on trays or frames of white wood, traversed in their length by small rods of wood, in such a way that each frame presents as many empty spaces as full ones. These frames have a length of twenty-seven inches, by eighteen wide; they are arranged on shelves, at a distance of five or six inches from each other.”

In arranging the soap cakes as above, a space of about

half-an-inch is allowed between each, so that the air may circulate round them, and thus facilitate their drying on the surface. It is important that the drying should be as rapid as possible. In about a week the surface of the cakes will have become hardened, and ready for pressing. This is done by means of a lever press, Fig. 31, which merely gives to these cakes the preliminary form of the mould. To apply the press, one of the cakes is placed on the lower half of the mould, and the lever is then forced downwards and then raised, when the cake is removed and another substituted for it, and so on, until all the cakes have been struck. The edges of the cakes are then trimmed, after which they are again set aside to dry, and when sufficiently so they are removed from the drying-room, and the hardened skin which has formed upon the surface is carefully removed by means of a sharp knife, with which the cakes are dexterously scraped by the workman. It is said that a good workman can scrape forty dozen of cakes in a day.

When the cakes have been scraped they are moistened with alcohol, to improve the smoothness of their surface. To accomplish this, the fingers of the right hand are dipped in alcohol, and this is spread quickly over the cake, which is then rolled in both hands, by which it becomes moistened all over in a few moments. The cakes are again dried for about twenty-four hours, after which they are ready for the final stamping, which is effected in the fly or screw press, by which an active man can mould 1,500 cakes of soap per day.

In the above process there is a loss of about 14 or 15 per cent. of water during the several drying operations, but this is allowed for in the operation of balling, in which the cakes are made heavier than the resulting finished soap is required to be. The scrapings of the cakes are afterwards worked up in future batches of the same kind of soap.

Formulæ for French Toilet Soaps.—The following are some of the formulæ for toilet soaps adopted by the French makers :—

Savon de Guimauve. (Marshmallow Soap.)

White tallow soap	10 lbs.
Palm-oil soap	10 ,,

Colour with

Yellow ochre	1 oz.
Orange mineral	1 ,,
Gamboge	5 drms.

Perfume with

Oil of lavender	1½ oz.
„ mint	½ ,,
„ caraway	½ ,,
„ lemon	5 drms.
Oils of rosemary and thyme, of each	2½ ,,

Savon aux Fleurs d'Italie.

White tallow soap	20 lbs.
-------------------------	---------

Perfume with

Oil of citronella	1½ oz.
„ geranium	½ ,,
„ verbena	1 ,,
„ mint	2½ drms.

Colour with

Brown ochre	2½ ozs.
-------------------	---------

Savon de Crimée.

White curd soap	16 lbs.
Palm soap.....	4 ,,

Colour with

Vermilion	2½ drms.
Brown ochre	1 oz.
Ivory black	½ ,,

Perfume with

Oils of thyme, mint, and rosemary, of each	1 oz.
Oil of lavender	2½ drms.
„ cloves	1¼ drms.
Tincture of benzoin	1½ oz.

Savon de Palme.

Palm soap.....	10 lbs.
Half-palm soap	10 ,,

Perfume with

Oil of bergamot	2 ozs.
„ cloves	½ oz.
Oils of cinnamon and lavender, of each	1 ,,

Violet Soap. (Yellow.)

Yellow cocoa-nut oil	20 lbs.
Palm-oil	20 "
Tallow	10 "
Soda ley at 36° B.	26 "
Powdered orris-root	4 "

To which are added the following perfumes:—

Oil of lemon	4 OZS.
„ rhodium	2 „
„ thyme	2 „
Tincture of musk	4 „

Colour with cadmium yellow.

Vanilla Soap.

Lard, with vanilla	30 lbs.
Cocca-butter	10 „
Palm-oil	10 „
Caustic ley, 36° B.	26 „
Wax	2 „
Starch	2 „

Perfume with

Tincture of vanilla	4 OZS.
„ musk	2 „
„ ambergris	2 „
Oil of rose	$\frac{1}{2}$ OZ.

Lard with vanilla is prepared by adding the vanilla to the lard (1 oz. to the lb.), keeping it at a moderate heat for some days, then straining, &c.

Rose-Leaf Soap.

Rose pomade	20 lbs.
Lard	20 „
Cocca-nut oil	10 „
White wax	2 „
Soda ley, 36° B.	20 „
Potash ley, 30° B.	12 „
Gum tragacanth	8 „

Perfume with

Oil of roses	2 OZS.
„ geranium	2 „
„ rhodium	1 OZ.
„ bergamot	2 OZS.
„ cinnamon (Ceylon)	$\frac{1}{2}$ OZ.

Colour with aniline (fast red) a light pink.

Savon à la Maréchale.

Lard, with musk	10 lbs.
„ „ amberette	10 „
Pomade (aux fleurs) cassia, jasmine, and rose, of each	10 „
Olive-oil	1 lb.
White wax	2 lbs.
Gum tragacanth	2 „
Caustic ley, 36° B.	28 „

Saponify carefully and colour with a little caramel (burnt sugar).

Lettuce Soap.

Lard, with lettuce	20 lbs.
Cassia pomade	10 „
Spermaceti	5 „
Castor-oil	5 „
Palm-oil (bleached)	10 „
Caustic ley, 36° B.	26 „
Gum tragacanth	3 ozs.

Perfume with

Oil of bergamot	6 ozs.
„ thyme	2 „
„ valerian	1 oz.
„ cloves	1 „

Colour light green.

The lard with lettuce is made by melting the lard with its own weight of lettuce-leaves, keeping it at the melting-point—about 90° F.—for some hours, or until the leaves have parted with their colour and their juice. Then steam off for use.

Ambergris Soap.

Grease perfumed with ambergris and musk	25 lbs.
Jasmine pomade	10 „
Rose	10 „
Gum tragacanth	3 ozs.
Caustic soda ley, 33° B.	25 lbs.

Colour light brown with caramel.

This soap is made of select materials by the cold process, and after being made is allowed a few days to dry before melting. The musk and ambergris have to be added to the grease some weeks before, frequently melting and stirring.

Elder-flower Soap.

Half-palm soap	100 lbs.
Dextrine	3 "

Perfume with

Oil of bergamot	8 ozs.
„ lavender.....	2 „
„ thyme	2 „
„ cloves	1 oz.
„ cassia.....	$\frac{1}{2}$ „
„ almonds	$\frac{1}{2}$ „

Colour light green.

Lemon Soap.

White soap.....	50 lbs.
Starch.....	2 „

Perfume with

Oil of lemon	4 ozs.
„ bergamot.....	2 „
„ lemon-grass	2 „
„ cloves	1 oz.

Colour light yellow with cadmium yellow.

Orange Soap.

White soap	50 lbs.
Starch.....	2 „

Perfume with

Oil of orange-peel	8 ozs.
„ cinnamon	$\frac{1}{2}$ oz.
„ thyme.....	2 ozs.

Colour dark yellow with naphthaline yellow.

Glycerine Soap.

Tallow (mutton).....	44 lbs.
Cocoa-nut oil.....	44 „
Castor-oil	22 „
Glycerine (pure).....	22 „
Caustic ley, 40° B.	27 „
Alcohol, 96°	48·4 „
Water.....	9·9 „

Melt the grease at 104° F., and add the alkali by slow degrees, keeping the heat low to prevent evaporation, and stir constantly. When the ley has become absorbed, after three or four hours' stirring add the alcohol, which should be warmed; stir till it becomes clear, then add the glycerine, and when mixed, the water and perfume; turn into

the frame, pouring slowly. This soap, if carefully made, is a very superior one.—*Cristiani*.

The same author gives the following formulæ for preparing white Castile soap, with or without olive-oil :—

1. Olive-oil	40 parts.
Ground suet.....	30 "
Tallow.....	30 "
2. Olive-oil	30 "
Lard	30 "
Palm-nut oil.....	40 "
3. Olive-oil	30 "
Cotton-seed oil	30 "
Tallow-oil.....	40 "
4. Palm-oil (bleached).....	50 "
Sesame-oil.....	20 "
Tallow	30 "

Savonnettes, or Washballs.—These may be made from any of the milder toilet soaps, or from the subjoined formulæ. The spherical form is given by pressing the soap in moulds, or by first forming them into balls with the hand, and when quite dry and hard turning them in a lathe. According to Mr. Beasley, “they are formed into spherical balls by taking a mass of the prepared soap in the left hand, and a conical drinking-glass with rather thin edges* in the right. By turning the glass and ball of soap in every direction the rounded form is soon given; when dry, the surface is scraped, to render it more smooth and even.”

Washballs are sometimes made with the addition of powdered starch or farina, and sometimes sand. Having but a comparatively limited sale, they are usually prepared in small quantities.

Violet Washballs.

Palm-oil soap.....	4 lbs.
Farina (starch).....	2 "
Fine powdered orris	1 lb.

Cut the soap into fine shavings and melt over a hot water-bath, adding a small quantity of water. Then add the farina and incorporate it well by stirring. Lastly, add the orris powder, and mix well.

* A brass tool is commonly used for this purpose.

Honey Savonnettes.

Finest yellow soap.....	7 lbs.
Palm-oil soap.....	$\frac{1}{4}$ lb.

Melt and then add

Oil of verbena, rose, geranium, or ginger-grass ...	1 oz.
Oil of rosemary.....	$\frac{1}{2}$ "

Savonnettes of Sweet Herbs.—Melt 12 lbs. of white curd soap, and then add the following mixture of essential oils:—

Oils of lemon and bergamot, of each.....	4 ozs.
„ thyme, lavender, wild thyme, myrtle, and marjoram, of each.....	1 oz.
„ mint, sage, and wormwood, of each.....	$\frac{1}{2}$ "
„ fennel.....	2 ozs.

Savonnettes of Camphor.

White curd soap.....	3 lbs.
----------------------	--------

Melt, with the addition of a little water, and then add

Spermaceti.....	4 ozs.
Camphor (cut small).....	2 "

These are first to be melted together, and then added to the liquid soap.

Savonnettes of Neroli.

Melted curd soap.....	12 lbs.
Orris powder.....	1 lh.
Orange powder.....	3 ozs.
Oil of neroli.....	12 drms.
Essences of musk and amhergris, of each.....	4 ozs.

Savonnettes à la Vanille.

White curd soap.....	12 lbs.
----------------------	---------

Melt, with a little water, and then add the following mixture:—

Tincture of vanilla.....	4 ozs.
Balsam of Tolu.....	4 "
„ Peru.....	2 "
Tincture of cinnamon.....	1 oz.
Oil of cloves.....	2 drms.
Tinctures of musk and amber, of each.....	1 oz.

Marbled Savonnettes.—These may be formed as follows:—For *red*, cut white curd soap into small squares, and roll these in powdered *bole* or rouge, then press them strongly with the hands into balls, taking care to mix the colour as little as possible. For *blue*, roll the pieces of soap in powder blue, and then treat them as above. For *green*, roll the cakes of soap in a mixture of yellow ochre and powder blue. By varying the colour of the powder savonnettes of any shade or colour may be produced.

A very pleasing and real marbled appearance may be given to soaps in this way: Melt in one vessel any required quantity of white curd soap, adding a little water. When thoroughly melted put a small quantity of the soap in a separate vessel, previously warmed, and add to it a sufficient quantity of ultramarine, vermilion, or any other colour (previously mixed with a little water), to stain the soap. Now add the coloured to the white soap, and stir round and round in one direction only until the coloured soap has formed a series of circular veins in the mass. Care must be taken to do this slowly, so that the coloured soap may merely *streak* the white soap. Allow the soap to cool, when it may be scooped out in small lumps with a half-round and bright trowel, and these marbled lumps may then be fashioned into balls or tablets according to requirement. If preferred, the marbled soap may be carefully put into a frame while hot, but this must be done cautiously, so as not to *mix* the colour with the white ground. The required perfumes should be added to the white soap before the coloured soap is introduced.

Savonnettes au Miel (Honey Savonnettes).

White curd soap (melted)	1 lb.
Honey	1 „
Essential oil of any kind required	2 ozs.
Rose-water	2 „

Add the honey to the melted soap, then add the rose-water, and lastly the perfume.

Floating Savonnettes may be made by adding a little water to any of the perfumed soaps in a melted state, and

briskly stirring the mass, so as to mix or beat air into the soap. This agitation should be kept up until the mass is at least doubled in volume.

Sand-Balls are made by incorporating with melted and perfumed soap certain proportions of fine river sand. About one-third sand to two-thirds soap is a fair proportion. The sand, however, should be passed through a fine sieve before using. Sometimes finely-powdered pumice is substituted for the sand.

CHAPTER XX.

SOFT TOILET SOAPS.

Naples Soap, or Almond Cream.—French Method.—White Soft Toilet Soap.—Powdered Soaps.—Shaving Paste.—Essence of Soap.—Essence de Savon Vienne.—Essence de Savon Corinthe.—Transparent Soap.

THE alkaline base of these soaps is potash, and the fatty matter generally used is good hog's lard, though sometimes cocoa-nut oil is introduced to promote the lathering properties of the soap. This latter oil, however, should be used sparingly, since it invariably leaves a disagreeable odour on the skin after washing—a serious objection in toilet soaps.

Naples Soap, or Almond Cream.—This elegant preparation, which has been much used as a shaving soap, is prepared as follows:—A potash ley, marking 36° B., is first prepared. Now take 20 lbs. of clarified hog's lard, and place this in a small copper jacket-pan or other convenient vessel, and apply *gentle* heat, stirring continually with a wooden stirrer. When the lard is about half melted, but free from lumps, add 5 lbs., by weight, of the potash ley, and continue the agitation and also the same degree of temperature, when, after an hour or so, soap granules will have deposited at the bottom of the pan, while a layer of unsaponified fat will float on the surface. Another 5 lbs. of the same ley must now be added and the mixture stirred, when the granules and oil will disappear, and the mass assume the form of a paste. The heat and occasional stirring must be kept up for about four hours, by which time the mass will become a stiff paste, when it requires to be beaten lightly. The heat should then be withdrawn,

JAP-MAKING.

ed over, so that the cooling may

ow.

, the soap is to be put into a marble
pounded with a wooden pestle, by which
parated particles become united, and a per-
ogeneous paste formed, which has a beautiful
lustre; hence it is sometimes called *pearl* soap.
preparation is usually perfumed with oil of bitter
monds; hence it is also called *almond cream*.

French Method.—Fifty pounds of hog's lard and 10 lbs. of cocoa-nut oil are placed in a steam-jacket pan, and melted; 50 lbs. of potash ley marking 20° or 21° B. are then added gradually, with constant stirring, and the heat of the mass is to be kept at from 140° to 158° . After a while the mass thickens, by the evaporation of the water from the ley; if a tendency to separation of the fatty matter is exhibited, the heat must be lowered, and if necessary, a little stronger ley added until saponification is complete, which generally occupies about four hours. To finish the operation, 30 lbs. of potash ley at 36° B. must now be added, with continual stirring, and care must be taken to keep the heat below the boiling-point of water. When the paste has become quite stiff, the steam is to be turned off, and the paste allowed to cool down, after which it is put into stone jars for future use. To convert this into *pearl soap* it is pounded in a marble mortar, a few pounds at a time, from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 drachms of oil of bitter almonds being added for each pound of soap. When the soap is required to be of a delicate rose colour, from 15 to 30 grains of vermilion to each pound of soap must be added, and well incorporated by the pestle and mortar.

Although the oil of bitter almonds is principally used as a perfume for these *soap creams*, as they are called, other fragrant substances are occasionally employed. For example, *Crème Ambroisie* is perfumed with liquid storax and benzoin, and *Crème de Cacao Mousseuse* with oil of cacao.

White Soft Toilet Soap.—Cristiani gives the following

directions for making a white soft toilet soap:—Melt in a sheet-iron kettle, of a capacity of about 50 gallons, 50 lbs. of white fat and 13 lbs. of cocoa-oil. When the fatty matters are entirely melted, add 50 lbs. of potash ley at 20° or 21° B. Stir all the time, so as to aid the saponification, the temperature being kept at from 140° to 150° F. Under the influence of heat and stirring the aqueous part of the ley evaporates and the mixture acquires a thicker consistency. Sometimes it happens that a part of the fatty matter separates. This is produced especially where the temperature of the mixture is raised near the boiling-point, because at that temperature concentrated leys have little affinity for fatty substances. This effect may also be produced by the insufficiency of alkali in the mixture. In the first case the homogeneity is re-established by moderating the action of the heat, and in the other by pouring into the kettle a portion of strong ley necessary to complete the saponification. The first stage of the operation lasts about four hours. To obtain a perfect soap, add 10 lbs. of potash ley at 16° B., and be careful to keep the mixture very uniform by continual stirring. Keep the temperature below the boiling-point, and as much as possible between 140° and 150° F.

The saponification is finished when the paste has acquired a very thick consistency. At this point turn off the steam.

Many perfumers prepare this soap in iron kettles with a double bottom, heated by steam; some use silver kettles, which are preferable, because in them the soap will retain its whiteness. The engraving Fig. 26 represents a jacket or kettle with a double bottom, heated by steam. This kettle is of tinned copper, and may be also used to purify tallow and greases. The operation lasts in all from seven to eight hours. When the soap is entirely cooled down, pour it into large stone jars, in which it is kept for use. Soft soap, as obtained by the saponification of fatty matters by potash, has not that bright nacreous (pearly) appearance required for the toilet. To obtain it in this state it is ground in a marble mortar and aromatised with oil of bitter almonds.

Powdered Soaps.—All hard soaps may be reduced to a fine powder, when perfectly dry, by trituration with a pestle and mortar, but the operation is generally confined to cosmetic soaps for shaving or other toilet purposes. The soap, being previously perfumed in the usual way, is cut into thin shavings, and these are laid upon sheets of paper and placed in the drying-room, or dried in any convenient way. As soon as the shavings become brittle they are in a condition for powdering. Small quantities at a time should be carefully reduced to a powder in a mortar, and the powder afterwards passed through a fine sieve, the fine powder being placed in a jar and kept well covered. All coarser particles retained by the sieve should then be pulverised and sifted as before, until the entire quantity is reduced to a powder fine enough to pass through the sieve.

Although it is better to colour the soap in the ordinary way before powdering it, the colouring matter may, if preferred, be introduced into the mortar when the soap is about half reduced to powder, and then worked up with the soap until thoroughly incorporated. For rose-colour, about one drachm of vermilion to each pound of soap should be used. For yellow, from one to two drachms of finely-powdered gamboge. Other shades of colour, however, may be given if desired.

Powdered soaps, named after their respective perfumes, are much esteemed as shaving soaps by the fastidious; and perhaps the so-called rose soap, perfumed with oil of rose and tinted by vermilion, may be considered one of the most delicate preparations, provided that it has been made from a good white tallow soap free from cocoa-nut oil.

Shaving Paste.—This popular cosmetic may be prepared in various ways, but the following formulæ may be taken as representing the mode of manufacture: 1. Take Naples soap, 1 lb.; Castile or Marseilles soap, $\frac{1}{2}$ lb.; honey, $\frac{1}{2}$ lb.; essence of ambergris, oils of cassia and nutmeg, of each 20 to 30 drops. Mix these ingredients well together in a mortar, adding a little rose-water, until a perfectly homogeneous paste is formed. 2. Take of white or virgin

wax, spermaceti, and almond oil, of each 2 ozs.; melt over a water-bath, and then add 3 ozs. of Windsor soap previously worked up into a paste with a little rose-water. Mix all well together and place in a jar, which should be kept well covered. 3. White soft soap, 12 ounces; spermaceti and olive-oil, of each $1\frac{1}{2}$ oz. Melt these ingredients all together, and stir until the mass is nearly cold; perfume with any essential oil, or a mixture of perfumes, according to taste.

Essence of Soap.—Under this title various preparations are made; but they are all solutions of soap in warm alcohol, with, generally, the addition of a small quantity of potash. Soaps made from vegetable oils are preferred, because they remain clear and liquid when cold, whereas those prepared from animal fats become solid in cooling. Dussauce gives the following formula for preparing this soap:—

White Marseilles soap	6 $\frac{1}{2}$ ozs.
Alcohol at 85°	1 quart.
Potash	6 drms.

Cut the soap into fine shavings, and put them into a bottle holding about half-a-gallon (a "Winchester" bottle would suit admirably); add the alcohol and potash, and heat gently, without boiling, over a water-bath; stir with a glass rod. When the solution is complete, take it out of the water-bath, and add the essences. A very sweet perfume may be given to this preparation by adding to it—

Oil of geranium	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ drm.
„ verbenä.....	2 $\frac{1}{2}$ drms.

To colour yellow, add $2\frac{1}{2}$ drachms of saffron.

This essence continues limpid at the ordinary temperature. To use it, pour a little into half a tumbler of water, and stir quickly.

Essence de Savon Vienne.

White soap	3 ozs.
Carbonate of potash	1 drm.
Alcohol at 95°	18 ozs.
Lavender-water	6 „

Digest and filter.

Essence de Savon Corinthe.

Dry white soap.....	10 ozs.
Alcohol at 80°	1 quart.
Potash.....	2 ozs.
Essential oil	a few drops.

Digest as before.

Any perfumed toilet soap may be converted into an "essence," but doubtless the white Castile soap would form the most elegant preparation, besides being the most emollient.

Transparent Soap.—Soap, when perfectly dry, is readily soluble in warm alcohol, and advantage is taken of this chemical fact in the manufacture of *Transparent Soap*—perhaps the most elegant form which this substance is capable of assuming.

To prepare transparent soap, either tallow, almond, or soft soaps may be used, but in either case the soap must be rendered perfectly free from water. The soap is first cut into thin slices or shavings, and these are then dried over a water-bath, or by hot air. Equal parts by weight of the dried soap and rectified spirit are put into a still, heated by a water-bath. Only moderate heat is applied, otherwise the spirit would pass over without dissolving the soap. It is sometimes the practice to powder the soap in a mortar after drying before treating it with the spirit, by which it becomes more readily dissolved. If it is desired to colour the soap, any colouring matter soluble in alcohol may be employed, and it is best to colour the spirit before adding it to the soap.

When the soap is completely dissolved, it is allowed to rest for an hour or more, according to the quantity, after which the clear and transparent liquid is put into the frames, in which it will solidify on cooling. When cold the soap is cut into pieces of any required size, and these are moulded in the same way as other toilet soaps. The soap does not, however, acquire its characteristic transparency until after it has been exposed to dry air for a considerable time. To colour the soap red, a strong tincture of archil may be used, and for yellow turmeric may be

employed. Any of the aniline colours, however, may be used for tinting the transparent soap, and are, indeed, well suited to this purpose.

Resin soaps are considered very suitable for making these soaps, and the presence of a fair proportion of resin undoubtedly favours the transparency and beauty of the substance.

Although transparent soaps are exceedingly pleasing to the eye, they do not possess the active detergent powers of ordinary soaps.

CHAPTER XXI.

MEDICATED SOAPS.

Sir H. Marsh's Sulphur Soap.—Mercurial Soap.—Medicinal Soft Soap.—Antimonial Soap.—Carbolic Acid Soap.—Medicated Tar Soap.—Tooth Soap.—Liquid Glycerine Soap.—Bordhardt's Herb Soap.—Arsenical Soap.—Soap for Washing Dogs.—Turpentine Soap.—Tar Soap.—Black Soap.—Various Substances introduced into Manufactured Soaps.

MANY different substances have been introduced into soap for the relief or cure of cutaneous affections and for other purposes, amongst which may be mentioned the following:—

Sir H. Marsh's Sulphur Soap.—White soap 2 ozs. and sublimed sulphur $\frac{1}{4}$ oz. are triturated in a mortar, with 1 or 2 fluid drachms of rectified spirit, until a smooth paste is formed. The spirit should be first coloured strongly with alkanet root. A few drops of otto of roses are added to give the soap an agreeable fragrance.

Mercurial Soap is made from powdered Castile soap 4 ozs., corrosive sublimate 1 drachm, dissolved in rectified spirit 1 fluid oz. These ingredients are to be *thoroughly* mixed in a Wedgwood mortar.

Medicinal Soft Soap is made from pure olive-oil saponified with a caustic ley made from pure potash. The ley is added gradually and cautiously to the oil during the boiling, and the greatest care taken to avoid an excess of alkali. When the mass assumes a transparent and gelatinous appearance, the addition of ley is stopped. The boiling is continued until the soap has acquired the proper consistence.

Antimonial Soap.—Pure Castile soap (white) in powder $1\frac{1}{2}$ oz., golden sulphuret of antimony 2 drachms, solution of caustic potassa 6 drachms. Dissolve the sulphuret in the potash and add to the soap; then triturate in a mortar until a stiff paste is formed. It should have a greyish-white colour.

Carbolic Acid Soap.—As a powerful antiseptic, carbolic acid had long been known, but it was not until the late Dr. Crace-Calvert had developed its manufacture upon an extensive scale that its usefulness could be fully taken advantage of. Since then, however, its employment as a disinfectant and deodoriser has become universal, and its incorporation with soap, which has taken the name of *Carbolic Soap*, has been very extensive. Indeed, this article has now become a necessary and useful article of commerce. About 2 per cent. of carbolic acid is added to soap in a melted state, and thoroughly incorporated by crutching. It is then put into a frame, and when cold is cut into squares and moulded in the same way as ordinary fancy soaps, or, for more extensive use, it may be formed into bars of the ordinary size. Carbolic soap may be prepared from the following:—

Half-palm soap.....	20 lbs.
Starch.....	1 lb.
Carbolic acid, in crystals.....	1 oz.
Oil of lavender.....	2 ozs.
„ cloves.....	1 oz.

Medicated Tar Soap.

Cocoa-nut oil.....	20 lbs.
Tallow.....	10 „
Juniper tar.....	5 „
Soda ley, 40° B.	15 „

Tooth Soap.

Tallow soap.....	20 lbs.
Pumice powder (finely sifted).....	$\frac{1}{2}$ lb.
Prepared chalk.....	2 lbs.
Starch.....	$\frac{1}{2}$ lb.

Liquid Glycerine Soap is thus made:—

Oleic acid.....	187 lbs.
Cocoa-nut oil (best).....	33 „
Potash ley 35° B.	114 „
Glycerine.....	10 „

The ingredients are saponified at a gentle heat, and sufficient alcohol at 95° added to make the soap clear.

Bordhardt's Herb Soap.

Olive-oil soap.....	30 lbs.
Palm-oil soap	20 „
Dextrine.....	2 „

Perfume with

Oil of rosemary.....	2 ozs.
„ lavender.....	1½ oz.
„ thyme.....	1½ „
„ sage.....	1 „
„ magnolia.....	1 „
„ peppermint.....	1 „

Colour blue.

Arsenical Soap is used by bird and animal stuffers to preserve the skins from the attacks of insects. It is prepared by the following formula:—White soap, arsenious acid, and lime slacked by air, of each 4 ozs.; carbonate of soda, 12 ozs.; powdered camphor, $\frac{3}{4}$ oz. The whole of these ingredients are worked up into a paste, with pestle and mortar, a small quantity of water being added during the mixing.

A Soap for Washing Dogs and other animals is sometimes made by mixing Stockholm tar (wood tar) with melted soap. The tar should first be dissolved in pyroxylic spirit (wood naphtha).

Turpentine Soap, or Starkey's Soap, is prepared as follows:—Take of Venice turpentine, oil of turpentine, and carbonate of potash, of each equal parts; place these in a mortar (previously warmed), and triturate them together, adding a little water, until a homogeneous mass is formed; put it into a paper mould, and after a few days cut the soap into slices, and keep them in a well-stoppered bottle.

Tar Soap is made from soap cut into shavings, 2 parts; tar, 1 part; and liquor of potassa, 2 parts; the whole being intimately mixed in a mortar.

Black Soap, or Farrier's Soap, is a coarse kind of soft soap, made from fish oils and caustic potash; sometimes tar is added. Besides the substances above named, iodine,

bromine, creosote, and many other chemical substances have been employed for making what are sometimes termed *skin soaps*, but they are all prepared much in the same way as above indicated.

Various Substances introduced into Manufactured Soaps.—The following percentages of foreign substances which are added to manufactured soaps are thus given by *Cristiani* * :—

Tannin soap, 3 per cent. of tannic acid.

Salicylic soap, 2 per cent. of salicylic acid.

Disinfectant soap, carbolic acid, about 2 per cent.

Thymol soap, 3 to 5 per cent. of thymol.

Croton-oil soap, 2 per cent. of croton-oil.

Benzoic soap, 2 per cent. of benzoic acid.

Castor-oil soap, 20 per cent. of castor-oil with other fats.

Petroleum soap, 20 per cent. of petroleum-oil added to the other fats before saponification.

Paraffin soap. The wax is added to the amount of 10 per cent. to the fats before saponification.

Creosote soap, 2 per cent. of creosote.

Iodine soap, 2 per cent. of iodine.

Turpentine soap, 5 per cent. of oil of turpentine.

Borax toilet soap, 10 per cent. finely powdered borax.

Mercurial soap, 6 per cent. of mercurial ointment.

Irish moss soap, 5 per cent. of Irish moss dissolved in a suitable quantity of water and strained.

Bran soap, 10 per cent. of bran.

Cornmeal soap, 10 to 20 per cent. of maize-flour.

Oatmeal soap, 10 to 20 per cent. of oatmeal.

Camphor ice soap, 5 per cent. of camphor added to cold cream soap would be very suitable.

Wax soap, 10 per cent. of wax added to soap. It has some good and useful properties.

* "Technical Treatise on Soap and Candles."

CHAPTER XXII.

MISCELLANEOUS PROCESSES.

Jennings's Processes.—Levat's Process.—Violet's Palm-oil Soap.—Hampel's Shaving Soap.—Marriott's Process.—Sawdust in Soap.—Lewis's Process.—Borax Soap.—Camphor and Ammonia Soaps.—Mackay and Seller's Process.—Petroleum Soap: Bastet's Process.—Besson and Remy's Process.—Tardani's Process.—Half-resin Soap.—Payne's Process.—Bankmann's Process.—Jeyes's Process.—Varicas's Process.—Lorbury's Process.—Cleaver's Terebene Soap.—Scharr's Liquid Soap.—Bichford's Process.—Marking Soaps.

APART from the ordinary, or, if we may say so, recognised soaps, innumerable patents have been taken out from time to time for various "improvements," modifications, or additions, the merits of which may easily be determined by a small trial when the new process does not, which is too frequently the case, bear the brand of absurdity "on the very face of it." The following abstracts from a few of the patent specifications will enable the reader to form his own judgment as to whether any of the processes described in brief will be worth a further acquaintance, in which case he will naturally obtain a copy of the specification, and if necessary, put himself in communication with the patentee, provided, of course, that such patent is in full force.

Jennings's Processes.—1. Combine 1,000 lbs. of stearic or margaric acids, as free from olein as possible, or palmitine or any vegetable or animal stearine or margarine, at the temperature of 212° F., with a solution of bicarbonate of potassa or soda of a specific gravity of about 1,500°; stir constantly until an intimate combination is obtained, and no separation visible when tried with the shovel or trowel. When the mass has cooled down to

about 60° F., add 1 lb. per cent. of liquid ammonia of about 880°, and 1 lb. per cent. of the strongest solution of caustic potassa; these are to be added gradually, and well mixed by stirring until perfectly combined. Dissolve 15 to 18 per cent. of resin by boiling it with a solution of carbonate of potassa and soda in equal parts, or as much as will give the solution a specific gravity of or about 1,800° when boiling hot. Mix these perfectly with the stearic or margaric acids and carbonated alkali; then add a strong solution of caustic potassa or soda, until perfect saponification is produced. The dose of caustic alkali will much depend upon the purity of the stearine or margarine employed. The separation is now effected by using common salt or sulphate of soda as usual. If the soap is to be colourless, no resin must be employed, and a larger dose of liquid ammonia and caustic alkali must be used according to the dryness of the stearine to be operated upon.

2. White curd soap is dissolved in about one-third of its weight of water, to which is added *colophony* (black resin), carbonate of soda, and alum. For this purpose the resin (at the rate of 25 per cent. of the quantity of soap) is dissolved with about 6 per cent. of carbonate of soda of commerce to the resin employed, using about a like weight of water as there is of the resin. These matters being boiled together till the resin and alkali are dissolved, the compound is to be added to the dissolved soap, and the whole of the matters are to be boiled till the workman on taking a sample finds that the soap is hard and smooth, as is well understood by soap-boilers. To this compound is to be added a quantity of sulphate of alumina (common alum) with a view to improve the colour, say from about 2 to 4 per cent. of the tallow or oil and resin in the mixture, using more or less of the alum according as the resin is less or more pure. The whole compound is to be boiled up, and then allowed to stand from two to four hours. In order to prevent the resin precipitating, a quantity of dilute sulphuric acid is introduced and stirred into the above mixture. The strength of each solution of acid

which is used is 1 part by weight of sulphuric acid to 9 parts by weight of water, of which about 2 per cent. in respect to the weight of tallow or oil and resin in the mixture is to be employed. The compound is then to be fitted, cleansed, and framed as usual.

Levat's Process.—The object of this process is to utilise the waste or residual oily products resulting from the distillation of essential oils, and to add to the emolliency of the soap by the employment of lichen. The fatty matters are first heated to expel the alcohol left in them after the process of distillation, and they are then heated with a weak soda ley, after which stronger leys are used to complete the saponification. When the soap separates and the grain has the proper consistence, an infusion of lichen is added, when a perfectly smooth paste is formed. The soap consists of:—

Fatty matters.....	58 parts.
Soda.....	6 "
Water.....	34 "
Lichen.....	2 "

Violet's Palm-oil Soap.—100 lbs. of palm-oil are melted, and at the temperature of 203° , $12\frac{1}{2}$ ozs. of nitric acid are added, with vigorous stirring for about a quarter of an hour; 12 gallons of hot water are then added, and the stirring continued, after which the oil is allowed to rest. The oil is then well washed several times to free it from the acid, and after being separated from the water is saponified with a weak ley at 8° B., followed by stronger leys of 10° and 15° . The boiling is kept up until the soap is of the proper granular consistence, and the grained soap, after being separated from the ley, is dissolved with lemon juice. This soap is called "Orangine."

Hampel's Shaving Soap is made by his patented process as follows:—Cleaned olein 6.6 per cent. is first mixed thoroughly with 13 per cent. of hot water; then 5.4 per cent. of soda ley at 25° is added, and the mass, which assumes the appearance of soft butter, is agitated until it becomes cold and is easily liquefied, when 12.5 per cent. of best white soap and 50 per cent. of boiling

water are added. All these ingredients are to be well mixed together, and finally 12·5 per cent. of spirit at 90° is to be added and well incorporated with the mass. The compound is then to be covered, and allowed to rest for a while, after which it is to be filtered, and is then ready for use.

Mrs. Marriott's Process.—For making “a washing or cleansing compound,” the inventor mixes with common yellow or any fancy or toilet soap about an equal proportion of very finely-powdered pumice, which is added to the soap in its melted state. The powdered pumice is to be thoroughly incorporated with the soap, so as to be equally distributed throughout. This compound combines the detergent qualities of the soap with the frictional action of the pumice; at the same time, when used for washing or cleansing purposes, the soap lubricates the particles of the powdered pumice and modifies its abrasive action, thus preventing injury to the finest fabrics.

Sawdust in Soap.—Mr. Waller forms a washing or cleansing compound by adding to melted soap certain quantities of sawdust, and well mixing the whole together by stirring or crutching. The sawdust may, if preferred, be introduced during the process of manufacture in the same way that other ingredients are added to soap.

Lewis's Process.—Mr. Lewis mixes potato flour, dextrine, or other suitable farinaceous substances with a viscous solution of soluble glass or solution of silicate of soda or silicate of potash, in the proportion of about one part flour to ten or twelve parts of the silicate. The soap is manufactured from oleic acid in the usual way, with the addition of a small quantity of resin, say about one part of resin to about ten parts of soap. When the process is finished, and while the soap remains hot and in a fit condition for running into the cooling frames, the above compound of the silicate and farinaceous substance is added in the proportion of about one part by weight to three parts of the soap, more or less. These materials are thoroughly incorporated or mixed by crutching and stirring, and then the whole is transferred to the frames as usual.

For household or laundry purposes he uses by preference a soap made of oleic acid mixed with common tallow or animal grease and resin; if necessary, he adds a certain proportion of French chalk to give firmness to the soap. The solution of silicate of soda should have a specific gravity of about 170° by Twaddell's hydrometer.

Borax Soap.—Mr. Rowbottom produces "borax dry soap," or soap powder" by adding borax to the usual carbonated or silicated ash or alkali, or other substance used in the manufacture of dry or powder soaps. For *borax soft soaps* he adds a solution of borax to the ingredients usually employed for making ordinary soft soaps before or during the manufacture, or he dissolves by heat any ordinary soft soap in the borax solution, and incorporates the same, after which the mass is allowed to cool in the usual manner.

Camphor and Ammonia Soaps.—Messrs. Cooper and Smith introduce these substances into ordinary hard or soft soap, the former being previously melted. The camphor is first dissolved in camphine or rectified oil of turpentine, or in alcohol. The solution of camphor is added to the hard or soft soap in any desired quantity according to the use to which it is to be applied. The carbonate of ammonia is first reduced to a fine powder, and this is well incorporated with the soap by stirring. The carbonate of ammonia is added in the proportion of from one to five parts by weight to every 100 parts of soap. The addition of camphor to the soap is said to give it valuable disinfecting properties, while carbonate of ammonia increases the detergent power of the soap. The camphor may be used without the carbonate of ammonia, and the latter without the former, or they may both be added to the same soap.

In addition to the camphor solution and carbonate of ammonia, the patentees prefer to add of borax about 10 per cent. to the soap, and also glycerine to the extent of 5 per cent. In adding borax it is dissolved in as small a quantity of water as is practicable, and the solution is

added to melted hard soap. In treating soft soap the camphor and ammonia may be added either singly or conjointly, and with or without borax and glycerine. The borax may either be added in solution or in fine powder. In making soft soap for ships' use 2 per cent. of tar is added to soft soap in addition to the other ingredients, the tar being first dissolved in pyroxylic spirit.

Mackay and Seller's Process.—The patentees' process consists in mixing with soap, during its manufacture, chlorate of potash "or any other substance which, in process of solution in water, will give off oxygen." The chlorate of potash is sifted into or mixed with the soap "on the point of its setting, or just before it is allowed to cool, in such manner that the oxidizing agent is not then dissolved in such soap base, but preserved therein more or less in contact with the soaps treated. The object of introducing the chlorate, or other oxidizing agent, is to facilitate the removal of dirt during the process of washing. Proportions: about 7 lbs. of chlorate to 112 lbs. of soap.

Petroleum Soap: Bastet's Process.—Caustic ley at 36° B. is placed in a suitable vessel, and then equal parts of animal fatty matter and mineral oil are placed in separate vessels. The combined weight of the fatty matter and the mineral oil being taken as a standard, boracic acid sufficient to dissolve the alkali is used; the mineral oil is heated to a temperature of about 90° F., and the animal fatty matter is melted by steam heat, and while in this condition a quantity of boracic acid is dissolved therein, which, with that acid used as before, will make up one-half per cent. of the combined weight of the fatty matter and mineral oil employed.

The partially acidified animal fatty matter and the mineral oil being heated in separate vessels, are now united by gradually pouring the former into the latter, with constant stirring or agitation, in order to effect a perfect combination; the acidified alkali is then gradually added, and the mass kept well stirred.

The process of converting the mineral oil into a solid is completed by gradually adding the ordinary or unacidified alkali in sufficient quantities to effect this result, keeping up the agitation as before. When the entire mass is found to be granulated, the conversion into a saponaceous compound is complete. While animal fatty matter only has been mentioned, the same results can be reached by the use of vegetable fatty matter, or a mixture of animal and vegetable fatty matters. The soap is finished by the free use of steam. Liquefaction is accomplished by a jet of steam to thoroughly deoxidise the saponified matter and disintegrate the compound. After the use of steam for this purpose, the soap is boiled by superheated steam.

Besson and Remy's Process.—This consists in forming a soap paste of any ordinary ingredients, and perfuming as desired. The soap is afterwards pulverised, as in making shaving powder, and the powder thus obtained is agglomerated by pressure in small moulds of special form, that is to say, of a form corresponding to that required in the pieces. This form is in section plano-concave, so that the middle portion is comparatively thin, and can be crushed by the finger with a very slight pressure applied to the flat side. The crushed piece, as it consists of agglomerated powder, at once becomes disintegrated, and forms a good lather in water, an effect which cannot be obtained from an equal-sized piece of ordinary toilet soap without much friction.

Tardani's Process.—Any convenient quantity of oil or suet or other fatty matter is taken, and placed in a flat-bottomed boiler of iron, constructed in the form of a truncated cone, together with double the quantity of water and a proportion of quicklime previously slaked by a quantity of water equal to 12 per cent. of the weight of the oil or fat. The whole must be boiled and mixed by means of an agitator—a mechanical one by preference.

This will produce an insoluble hard lime soap and a solution of glycerine, the latter of which may be separated by opening the top of the perforated pipe connected with

the bottom of the boiler. After having washed the lime soap a little and closed the top, a certain quantity of water is added to the soap, and also a quantity of commercial carbonate of soda equivalent to and rather in excess of the quantity of lime used.

When the ingredients are well mixed and the mixture boiled, the hard insoluble lime soap will be decomposed, and the lime precipitated in the form of a granular carbonate, while a soluble soda soap or potash soap (where potash is used to form a soft soap) is produced, which floats in the shape of flakes on the top of the water, more especially if sea-salt has been added. This is the reason why the shape of the truncated cone is preferred for the boiler and its bottom flat. The heat is applied only round the boiler. In this way it is said to be possible to make good soap, using fatty matter with membranes and very impure oils without incurring the expense of extracting the pure fat or oil. If cocoa-nut oil or palm-oil are to be saponified, a quantity of lime equivalent to the fifth of their weight can be used. These soaps being very soluble, even in salt water, it is necessary to use tolerably pure carbonates of the alkali.

Half-resin Soap, by Higgins's process, is produced as follows:—For a cheap laundry soap is taken prime tallow or equivalent fat, 10,000 lbs., which is saponified as usual with caustic soda of, say, 30° strength. After the first or "grease" charge an equal quantity, viz. 10,000 lbs., of clear resin is added and saponified in the usual manner. About 6,000 lbs. of caustic soda at a strength of 30° is used for the whole. Upon the completion of the saponifying process, and while the compound is in a hot fluid state before framing, a quantity of crystallised stearic acid of commerce, equal in amount to about 2 per cent. of the whole mass, is added, or about 3 per cent. of stearine, the substance in either case being in a melted state. This is added gradually while the soap is hot and is thoroughly "crutched" into the body, which is then "framed" in the usual manner. The mass solidifies into a hard and useful soap, having in its composition equal portions of

resinous and fatty matter, instead of only one-third or one-fourth as usual.

This soap is said to preserve its quality and hardness better than ordinary resin soaps, does not become unduly dry and brittle, and also possesses the advantage that while in most laundry soaps a large portion is wasted because of their extreme solubility, which causes them to dissolve to a greater extent than is required for the strictly deterative purposes, the soap produced by the above process is said to last longer, besides being also cheaper.

Mr. G. Payne's Process consists in treating fatty or oily matters and subjecting the same, under pressure, in an autoclave with lime and water.

After the decomposition of the fatty or oily matter in the autoclave, the aqueous solution of glycerine is withdrawn, and instead of decomposing the lime soap with acids, as in the ordinary process of making stearine, the inventor employs for its decomposition strong caustic soda or potash leys, or a solution of carbonate of soda or potash. The hydrated or carbonate solution is used in about the proportion of 7 per cent. of the alkaline base to from 60 or 70 per cent. of the fatty acid, these proportions being varied within certain limits; in all cases care must be taken that the alkali shall be sufficient to combine with or saturate the whole of the fatty acid. The decomposition of the lime soap by means of the hydrate or carbonate of soda will result in the production of a soda soap, and where the hydrate or carbonate of potash is used for such decomposition the product will be potash soap, the lime in either case being precipitated in a more or less insoluble condition. The soaps obtained by this process may be finished in a soap-copper in the ordinary manner.

Mr. Bankmann's Process has for its object to furnish soap in the form of thin perforated sheets or tablets, so that a single piece may be torn off for each washing of the hands or face. A number of frames are placed one above another, and are securely fastened together in such a manner that the joints are water-tight. The soap to be treated is put

into these frames, and the sides or sections are capable of being removed so as to leave the soap projecting. Thin shavings are planed from the block of soap by a cutter passing along the surface, and the shavings or sheets are then subjected to the action of a roller which compresses and smooths them. Then a perforator divides each shaving or sheet into correspondingly small pieces. Each sheet should be about 3 inches long by 2 inches broad, and perforated crosswise so as to form four tablets. The sheets have then about the thickness and portability of postage-stamps. About one dozen of such sheets may be arranged in a packet in form of a pocket-book. The packet will then contain the material for forty-eight separate washings. If desired, the soap may be impregnated with carbolic acid, tar, or other medicinal material.

Mr. W. Jeyes's Process.—The inventor introduces anthracine salt, naphthaline, or any similar crystallisable hydrocarbon into the ordinary ingredients of soap. Either of the above salts is added to and mixed with the ordinary ingredients of soap at any convenient period during the manufacture before solidification, and in various proportions, according to the use to which it may be intended to apply the soap.

M. Varicas's Process.—“The practice now,” says the inventor, “is to saponify fats with alkalis without any previous treatment of the fat, looking to the preliminary decomposition of the same. The result is a comparatively slow saponification, and all the glycerine which does not remain in the soap mechanically suspended is carried off in the waste ley and lost. The object of this invention is to prepare fats for instant saponification, and to save all the glycerine. To effect this, the inventor first extracts the glycerine from fats in their neutral state by the direct action of steam and water, under a pressure of about 150 lbs., whereby a soap stock is produced susceptible of immediate saponification when combined with an alkaline ley. Besides the important advantage of saving all the glycerine, the whole process of soap-making is said to be materially hastened, and the resulting soaps are of superior

quality, all things being equal, than soaps made by ordinary methods.

Lorbury's Process consists in adding a solution of gluten in caustic alkali to soap, by which the emolliency of the soap is said to be considerably increased. The gluten may be added to any kind of soap after the process of saponification is complete. The solution of gluten is thus obtained:—To a solution of caustic potassa of about 20° B. as much bran or gluten obtained from any other source is added as it will take up. After some hours' digestion the mass becomes clear and homogeneous, when it is strained through a fine sieve or coarse cloth. This solution is added to the soap to the extent of 10 per cent. more or less.

Cleaver's Terebene Soap.—Mr. Cleaver combines with soap while in a melted state the substance known as *terebene*, whereby a disinfectant and antiseptic soap is produced. This substance is also combined with toilet creams, cosmetics, &c. The following proportions, which may, however, be varied at will, are said to give good results:—For toilet soap $4\frac{1}{2}$ pints of terebene are added to 112 lbs. of soap. For household or laundry soap, he adds 6 pints of terebene to 112 lbs. of soap. The terebene is introduced into the soap in its liquid state, and thoroughly incorporated by stirring. The soap may be perfumed if desirable. The soap is known as *terebene soap*.

Scharr's Liquid Soap.—For making this soap the following complicated formula is given for one ton of the compound:—

Twelve cwt. of water and 4 lbs. of starch are first boiled together for a few minutes, after which the following ingredients are introduced:—

Linseed.....	53 lbs.
Sal ammoniac	8 "
Soda ash (52° to 54°)	44 "
Pearl ash (American).....	56 "
Russian potash	73 "
Resin	52 "
Oleine.....	26 "
Borax	4 "
Spirit of turpentine	5 "
Liquid ammonia.....	10 "

The ingredients are placed in a vat or other suitable vessel, and boiled by injection of steam for two hours. The liquid, after being boiled, is passed through a sieve, to separate the solid portion; it is then cooled down to between 90° and 122° F. The solid or third portion is put into a cask (which is provided with a tap near the bottom) and upon it is poured about 40 to 44 gallons of boiling water, which is thoroughly incorporated by stirring. It is then allowed to rest until it becomes clear, when the clear portion is run out by the tap into a suitable receiver, and brought to the boiling-point by the injection of steam. The steam is now turned off, and 152 lbs. of soft soap and 20 lbs of American pearlash are added, with stirring. The soap which had previously cooled down is now introduced and well mixed by stirring, when the compound is ready for use.

Mr. Bichford introduces powdered French chalk (steatite, or soapstone) into soap, employing from 4 to about 7 per cent., according to the purpose for which the soap is to be used. For a nursery soap, 4 per cent. is recommended, and for toilet soaps 5 per cent. of the powder.

As far back as 1838 Mr. Sheridan—the original inventor of silicated soaps—patented a process for combining potato flour, water, and soda or potash leys (preferring the latter alkali) in the following proportions:—potato flour, 16 lbs.; water, 270 lbs.; potash leys, 100 lbs. It will be seen, as is too frequently the case with “improvements” in soap, that the same idea has been often patented since.

Marking Soaps.—Mr. Dunn suggested marking soaps, coloured soap, or other similar material in this way:—The soap is first stamped in the usual manner, and when dry the impression is filled in with plastic soap of a different colour by means of a spatula; or if the impression is fine and small, with dry powdered and coloured soap, by means of a spatula, with which a little of the powder is spread over the impressed surface.

CHAPTER XXIII.

ALKALIMETRY. METHODS OF DETERMINING THE PERCENTAGE OF REAL ALKALI IN COMMERCIAL SODA ASH, POTASH, AND CAUSTIC ALKALI.

Mohr's Alkalimeter.—Preparation of the Test-Acid.—Sampling Alkalies.—The Assay.—Normandy's Method.—Testing Commercial Pearlashes.—To determine the Percentage of real or anhydrous Alkali.

It must be obvious that in a manufacture which consumes vast quantities of materials of variable quality, some means of estimating the *actual* value should be at the command of the consumer. The science of chemistry, which, as we have shown, rescued the art of soap-making from the empiricism and ignorance which ruled its operations until little more than forty years since, has shown not only the principles of saponification, but also the means by which the precise value of the various ingredients employed in the art may be determined with absolute certainty, and with comparative ease and simplicity.

It was the custom formerly for the soap-boiler to estimate the strength of his alkali by first pouring a quart of water on a pound of the ash, and then putting into the solution a lump of Dutch soap, which floated in it; he then added more water gradually until the piece of soap sank, and the more water that was required to effect this object, the richer in alkali was the ash supposed to be. It is needless to say that a test of this kind would be all but worthless.

The first adoption of a system for estimating the relative value of alkalies by chemical agency was made by the celebrated French chemist Vauquelin; this was followed by Descroizelles' important invention of the *alkalimeter*, by the aid of which tolerably accurate results could be obtained.

To our own countryman, Dr. Andrew Ure, however, we are indebted for the employment of a test-acid that represents the absolute amount of alkali in a given commercial sample of soda or potash, whether in the form of carbonate or of caustic alkali. To understand the methods of determining the percentage of real alkali in a commercial sample it may be necessary to refer briefly to the laws of chemical combination defined by the atomic theory of Dr. Dalton. This great chemist discovered that all substances combine in *definite proportions* or equivalents; for example, 1 part by weight of *hydrogen* combines with 8 parts of *oxygen* to form water. The *equivalent number* of hydrogen, therefore, is 1, that of oxygen 8, and that of water 9. Again, 3 equivalents of oxygen combine with 1 equivalent of sulphur (16) to form sulphuric acid, thus: sulphur 16, oxygen 24, equals anhydrous sulphuric acid 40, or monohydrated acid (the strongest oil of vitriol) 49; therefore, 40 is the *equivalent* or combining number of this acid, and it cannot be made to unite with alkalis or other bases in any other proportion. For example, *forty grains* by weight of *pure* sulphuric acid will neutralise exactly 53 grains of *dried carbonate of soda*, 31 grains of *pure anhydrous* soda, or 40 grains of *hydrate of soda* (caustic soda). This being so, it is only necessary to have exactly 40 grains of *real* sulphuric acid in 1,000 grains of water to form a *test-acid*, which, when employed to neutralise an alkaline solution, will show, by the proportion of dilute acid used to saturate the alkali, the absolute percentage present in the sample.

There are two principal methods of analyzing or assaying alkalies by means of the test-acid, the first of which is *volumetric*, or by measure; and the second *gravimetric*, or by weight. In the former, the test-acid or "standard solution" is applied by means of a glass vessel termed an *alkalimeter*, or *burette*, which holds, up to its 0 or *zero* mark, exactly 1,000 grains. The scale is graduated into 100 divisions, which are again subdivided into tenths. There are several forms of the burette or alkalimeter, all more or less admirable for their ingenious

construction, but for the ordinary purposes of alkali testing Bink's burette, Fig. 33, or Mohr's burette, Fig. 34, will be well suited to the soap-maker's laboratory. The simplicity of the former at once commends it, but the latter has the advantage of enabling the operator to add the test-liquor drop by drop, when the alkaline solution is near the point of saturation, without encumbering the hands.

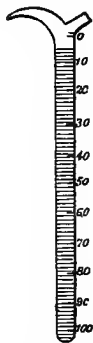


Fig. 33.

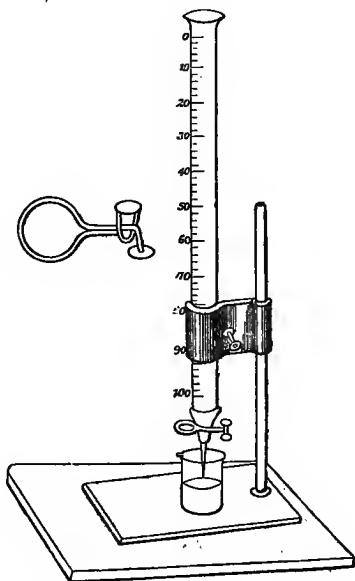


Fig. 34.

Mohr's Alkalimeter.—Mohr thus describes the construction and use of his very useful and ingenious apparatus.* “I have succeeded in substituting for expensive glass stop-cocks, an arrangement which may be constructed by any person with ease, which remains absolutely air and water tight for an indefinite period, which may be opened and regulated at will by the

* *The Chemist*, vol. i., New Series, p. 158.

pressure of the fingers, and which costs almost nothing. It consists of a small piece of vulcanised india-rubber tube, which is closed by a clamp of brass wire (Fig. 34). The ends of this clamp, which I call a pressure-cock, are bent laterally at right angles in opposite directions, and furnished with knobs, so that when both ends are pressed the clamp is opened, and a single drop or a continuous current of liquid may be allowed to escape at pleasure. The measuring tube is a straight glass cylinder B, as uniform as possible, graduated into 0·2 or 0·1 cubic centimetres, and somewhat contracted at its lower end, so as to fit into the india-rubber tube. A small piece of glass tube, inserted below the pressure-cock, forms the spout. The pressure-cock has the advantage of not leaking, for it closes of itself when the pressure of the fingers is removed.

“The measure furnished with the pressure-cock is fastened upon an appropriate stand, which can be placed at any required height. When used, it is filled above the zero point with test-liquor, the cock opened for an instant, so as to let the air escape from the spout, and the level of the solution is then adjusted. This is done by bringing the eye level with the zero point, and applying a gentle pressure to the cock until the liquid has sunk so low that the inferior curve of the liquid touches the graduation like the circle of a tangent; the cock is then closed, and at the same moment the liquid remains at zero, and continues to do so for weeks, if evaporation is prevented. The test measure being now normally filled, the experiment may be commenced; this is done sitting, while the filling of the measure is done standing.

“The weighed sample of alkali is first placed in a ‘beaker’ glass, and the test-liquor is allowed to flow into it by gently pressing the cock. Both hands are set at liberty, for when the pressure-cock is released it closes of itself. The volumetric operation may be interrupted at pleasure, in order to heat the liquid, shake it, or do whatever else may be required. The quantity of liquid used may be read off at any moment, and in repeating an ex-

periment the limit of the quantity used before may be approached so near that the further addition of liquid may be made drop by drop."

When alkalies are analyzed *gravimetrically* a *specific gravity-bottle* (Fig. 35) capable of holding exactly 1,000 grains of distilled water is employed, and this, when filled with test-liquor, weighs (exclusive of the *tare* of the bottle) exactly 1.033 grains. 1,000 grains of the test-liquor contains exactly 40 grains of *real* sulphuric acid. The test-acid to be used *volumetrically*, that is, with the alkalimeter, has a specific gravity of 1.032 at 60° F., and 1,000 grains *by measure* contain exactly 40 grains of real or anhydrous sulphuric acid.



Fig. 35.

Preparation of the Test-acid or Standard Solution.—

When making the test-liquor it is advisable to prepare a quantity sufficient for many operations, since there is necessarily a certain amount of trouble involved in its preparation. It may be readily made by mixing 1 part of concentrated sulphuric acid with 11 or 12 parts of *distilled water*, the mixture being effected in a "Winchester" bottle, which holds rather over half a gallon. The acid solution must be *adjusted* or brought to the proper strength after it has cooled down to 60° F., and it should be *faintly tinged* with litmus, which will give it a pinkish hue.

If the acid is of the proper strength it should *exactly* saturate 53 grains of pure carbonate of soda previously calcined at a red heat, or 31 grains of pure anhydrous soda. To prepare the anhydrous carbonate of soda, place a few crystals of carbonate of soda in a Berlin porcelain crucible, and heat this over a spirit-lamp or Bunsen burner; when all the water of crystallisation is expelled continue the calcination until the mass is at a bright red heat, when the vessel may be set aside to cool. Now carefully weigh out 53 grains of the calcined carbonate, and dissolve in about 2 ounces of distilled water in a beaker-glass. The alkalimeter is now to be charged with the test-acid to the level of zero, and (if Mohr's burette be used) the beaker containing the alkaline solution is to be placed upon the

stand immediately beneath the exit-tube. Now press the nobs of the pressure-cock, and allow a portion of the liquor to flow into the beaker. When the effervescence which is immediately set up subsides, make further additions of the test-liquor from time to time, until the effervescence becomes sluggish, when the acid must be added with greater caution. When the solution approaches saturation it acquires a purplish tint (due to the litmus with which the acid is tinged), which it retains until the point of saturation is reached, when it suddenly changes to *pink* or onion-red colour. After each addition of the acid the solution should be stirred with a thin glass rod, and before the final change from purple to pink or onion-red, the end of the glass rod should be applied to a strip of blue litmus-paper, when, if the spot touched assumes a red colour, the saturation is complete; if, on the contrary, the paper is unchanged, or has a violet or reddish hue, add the test-liquor, one or two drops at a time, with continued stirring, until a drop of the solution applied with the rod reddens the litmus-paper, when the saturation is finished. If any test-liquor remain in the burette this indicates that there is an excess of acid in the test-liquor; consequently more distilled water must be added to the bulk, the burette emptied and refilled with the reduced liquor, and another 53 grains of anhydrous carbonate treated as before, until 1,000 grains of the acid liquor *exactly* neutralise the solution. Should the whole contents of the burette in the first trial be used before saturation is complete, a little more sulphuric acid must be put into the Winchester or test-acid bottle, and a 53-grain solution of carbonate of soda treated as before. A very little practice will enable the operator to adjust his test-liquor with perfect accuracy; and, in order to prevent mistakes, the bottle should be labeled "Test-acid," and should be kept closed with its glass stopper.

Sampling Alkalies.—The ordinary soda ash of commerce is usually packed in wooden casks; and in order to secure a fair average sample from a large number of these casks, which may represent one consignment, it is important

to take small samples, as near the centre of each cask as possible, from as many of the casks as time will permit. Each sample, as drawn from the cask, should be at once placed in a wide-mouthed bottle furnished with a well-fitting cork. Each sample should be numbered and marked with the brand which distinguishes each cask. The soap-maker who tests or assays his own alkali should always be careful to employ a person of known intelligence and integrity to procure samples for him.

When about to analyze any given sample, first empty the contents of the bottle upon a piece of dry paper, then crush the larger lumps, and reduce the whole to a coarse powder as quickly as possible, so as to prevent absorption of moisture from the atmosphere. Now carefully weigh out 100 grains, and put them into a small flask (Fig. 36),



Fig. 36.

and at once return the remainder to the bottle, and securely cork it. Pour into the flask about half an ounce of distilled water, and gently heat it, shaking occasionally to assist solution of the alkali. After a few minutes set the flask aside to enable the insoluble matter to subside, then pour *the clear liquor* into a beaker-glass, and wash the sediment several times with small quantities of distilled water, being careful to add the washings to the alkaline solution in the beaker.

This washing must be performed several times, or until the last washing-liquor produces no effect upon yellow turmeric-paper. So long as the washings give a brown tint to this test-paper the presence of alkali is assured, and the washing must be continued. It is important, after each washing, to pour off the last drop of the liquor, by which the process is rendered more complete and with less water than when this precaution is not observed. To ensure perfect accuracy every particle of the washings must be added to the contents of the beaker-glass in which the assay is to be made.

The Assay.—To perform the assay, the alkalimeter must first be filled with the test-acid exactly to the line 0 or zero of the scale; the acid must then be allowed to

flow gradually into the alkaline solution (which should be constantly stirred with a glass rod) until the liquid assumes a purple tint, which it retains until the exact point of saturation is reached, when it suddenly changes to pink. It is commonly the practice to warm the alkaline solution so as to expel the carbonic acid which is evolved and absorbed by the solution during the process of saturation. When the neutralisation is complete, the alkalimeter is allowed to repose for a few moments, so that the acid liquor may drain from the interior of the glass into the bulk of the fluid, and the quantity of test-acid used is then determined by reading off the number of divisions which have been exhausted.

Every alkalimeter division of Mohr's burette (Fig. 34) represents $\frac{1}{100}$ th part, or 1 per cent., of alkali, when 100 grains are taken for assay.

"In *commercial assays*, when 100 grains (or some aliquot part thereof) are taken for trial, the *percentage* result is obtained from the number of *alkalimeter divisions*, or the number of grains of the test-acid consumed by the common 'Rule of Proportion.' Thus: A *crude sample* of potash, having taken 90 alkalimeter divisions of test-acid to neutralise it, would contain—

$$100 : 47 :: 90 : 42.30$$

or nearly $42\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of pure potassa. If only 50, 25, or 20 grains are tested, the result must, of course, be *double*, *quadrupled*, &c., as the case may be. Or the *third term* of the proportion may be *multiplied* by the *denominator* of the *fraction* representing the aliquot part. This, in the case of 50 grains (repeating the above example), would be—

$$100 : 47 :: 45 \times 2 : 42.30\frac{1}{2}$$

as before; but even these easy calculations may be simplified, as is shown below.

"One of the advantages, and not the least, attending the use of test-acids corresponding to equivalents is that, by means of the simple 'Rule of Three,' the *percentage*

quantity of alkali may be found, whether 100 or any other number of grains have been submitted to trial. For the weight of the sample tested (in grains) bears the same relation to the equivalent weight of the alkali under examination, that the number of alkalimeter divisions or of the grains of test-acid consumed do to the percentage of alkali sought. Thus, with a sample of 33 grains of *pearlash*, taking 35 alkalimeter divisions or 350 grains (every 10 grains being = 1%) of test-acid for neutralisation. This would be—

$$33 : 47 :: 35 : 49.85\%$$

or nearly 50 per cent. of *pure potassa*. By substituting the equivalent of the *dry carbonate of potassa* (69) for that of 'pure potassa' used above, the quantity of that article corresponding to the same weight of the pure alkali may be at once found. Repeating the last example this will be—

$$33 : 69 :: 35 : 73.18\%$$

or nearly 73½ per cent. The same applies to all the alkaline bases and their carbonates."—*A. J. Cooley*.

The following table shows the *equivalent* or combining proportions of alkalis with 40 grains of real (that is, anhydrous) sulphuric acid:—

	grs.	
40 grains of anhydrous sulphuric acid	} Are equivalent to	47 Potassa (anhydrous)
1,000 grains of dilute sulphuric acid (sp. gr. 1.033)		56 Hydrate of potassa (pure caustic potash)
		69 Carbonate of potassa (anhydrous)
1,000 grains (water-grain measure) sp. gr. 1.032		31 Soda (anhydrous)
		40 Hydrate of soda (pure caustic soda)
		53 Carbonate of soda (anhydrous)
		143 Crystallised carbonate of soda.

Normandy's Method.—Dr. Normandy gives the following method of assaying commercial soda and potash* :—

* "Commercial Handbook of Chemical Analysis." By A. Normanby. Lockwood and Co.

“*Commercial Soda.*—Five hundred grains are weighed out from the thoroughly powdered and mixed sample. After being dried it should be gently ignited in a porcelain or platinum crucible, and allowed to cool without exposure to the air. When cool it is again weighed; the loss indicates the amount of moisture. It is then washed into a beaker, in which it is dissolved. Should any insoluble residue remain it is filtered off, dried, and weighed; the clear filtrate is made up [with distilled water] to exactly 10,000 grain measures. The solution is well mixed together, and from it 1,000 grain measures are taken, transferred to a beaker, the solution made blue by a few drops of litmus water, heated nearly to boiling, and then tested with the normal acid [or standard test-acid] until the neutral point is reached; the process may be repeated several times, if necessary, to be certain of the accuracy of the analysis. In order, however, to avoid all ambiguity arising from the carbonic acid, a sufficient quantity of acid may be added to render the acid very decidedly red, and then the normal caustic alkali* added drop by drop until the liquid changes suddenly to violet-blue. The number of divisions of the burette that have been required to effect this must be deducted from the quantity of acid originally used. By this *backward* or residual method very sharp results may be obtained.

“*Example.*—Suppose 850 burette divisions of the normal acid have been required, the following calculation gives the amount of real carbonated alkali in the sample:—

$$1.000 : 850 :: 53 : x$$

$x = 45$, the amount of carbonate of sodium in 53 grains of the sample.

“The soda ash of commerce contains generally, besides

* The normal caustic alkali solution is prepared by dissolving exactly 56 grains of hydrate of potassa (pure caustic potash), or 40 grains of hydrate of soda (pure caustic soda), in 1,000 water-grain measures of distilled water. The solution is applied from a burette.

insoluble substances, which are removed by filtering, a greater or less quantity of chloride of sodium (common salt), and of sulphate of sodium (which, however, do not interfere with the accuracy of the result); but when sulphurets, sulphites, or hyposulphites are present, these substances, neutralising a certain quantity of the test-acid, would render the estimation seriously inaccurate; wherefore it is absolutely necessary in such cases to transform these substances into *sulphates* by calcining a given quantity of the sample with 5 or 6 per cent. of chlorate of potassium, as recommended by Gay-Lussac, and Welter."

The chlorate of potash is first pulverised, and then 5 or 6 grains are intimately mixed with each 100 grains of the sample, and the mixture is fused in a platinum crucible. When cold, the fused mass is dissolved in boiling water, filtered and washed, and the assay then conducted in the same way as before described. If, however, the soda ash contains any *hyposulphites* this method must not be adopted, since each equivalent of hyposulphite would be converted into *two* equivalents of sulphate, at the expense of the alkali or its carbonate present in the sample, and which would render the assay seriously inaccurate.

MM. Fresenius and Will, in order to overcome this source of inaccuracy, recommend the addition of a small quantity of yellow chromate of potash to the alkaline solution, by which the sulphurets, sulphites, and hyposulphites are converted into *sulphates, sulphur, and water*. Fresenius says: "It is always advisable to make it a rule, in the examination of *soda*, to add some chromate of potassa."

Testing Commercial Pearlashes is performed in the same way as samples of soda, but it is usual to employ a separate test-acid for this purpose. The test-acid for potash should have a specific gravity of 1.070 to 1.071; 470 grains contain 40 grains of *real* sulphuric acid. Of this solution 1,000 grain measures (or 100 burette divisions) *exactly* neutralise 113 grains of pure *anhydrous carbonate of soda*, or exactly 100 grains

of pure potassa. The number of measures consumed read off, by *mere inspection*, from the burette scale, gives the exact percentage of the sample of potash under examination. Or, if Normandy's method be adopted, "as the equivalent of carbonate of potassium is 69, the weight of the sample to be operated upon to make in solution 10,000 grain measures will be 690. It may sometimes be convenient to employ a normal sulphuric acid, 1,000 grain measures of which shall be equivalent to precisely 100 grains of the anhydrous caustic alkali. For this purpose it is obvious that different standard acids will be required for soda and for potassa. That for soda must be of such a strength that 1,000 grain measures shall saturate exactly 171 grains of pure carbonate of sodium, and that for potassa must be precisely equivalent to 146.8 grains of pure carbonate of potassium. The advantage of the standard above described is its equivalency both to potassa and soda."

There are many other methods of determining the percentage of real alkali in the commercial products than those referred to, but to enter into this subject more fully would involve more space than the limits of this work would permit. Since, moreover, soap-makers are now supplied with caustic soda, as also caustic potash, the necessity for testing soda and potashes is greatly diminished.

To determine the percentage of real or anhydrous alkali in a sample of caustic soda or potash, M. Barreswill recommends the following method: "A solution of *chloride of barium* is added in excess to a solution of the sample under examination, and the whole is filtered; the precipitate of carbonate of baryta left on the filter is washed with a little water, and the *filtrate* and the *washings* placed in a deep glass tube; a stream of carbonic acid gas is then passed through the mixed liquor until it ceases to occasion a precipitate of carbonate of baryta. This last precipitate is separated on a filter, washed, dried, and weighed. Each grain represents .315 grains of *real or anhydrous soda*; or .477 grains of anhydrous potassa."

Ure says : " Add the *first* portions of the test-acid very gradually to the sample, carefully observing the effect. When the effervescence at length commences, *the weight* or measure of the test-liquor expended shows the quantity of pure *caustic alkali* under treatment (nearly). The result depends upon the fact that little or no carbonic acid gas is expelled from the liquid on the addition of the test-acid until the caustic portion is *very nearly neutralised.*"

CHAPTER XXIV.

METHODS OF ANALYZING OR ASSAYING SOAPS.

Soap Assay.—Rampel's Method.—D'Arcet's Method.—Richardson and Watt's Method.

It is of the greatest importance to the soap-maker that he should be able to estimate the exact proportions of fatty matter, alkali, and water in each boil of soap when finished and ready for sale, in order that he may determine the cost of manufacture and estimate his profit. A simple method of assaying a sample of soap is the following:—

Soap Assay.—I. *To estimate the percentage of water*, take a *fair* sample, say from a recently cut bar of soap,* and weigh 100 grains. Cut this into thin slices or shavings, and put them into a small porcelain capsule, which is then to be placed over a water-bath kept boiling, or over an oil-bath heated to 350° F., until the shavings are quite free from water, in which condition they are exceedingly brittle. The shavings should be weighed from time to time, or until they cease to lose weight by continued heating. The ultimate loss in weight indicates the percentage of free or uncombined water, which, in the case of curd and mottled soap, should not exceed 35 per cent.† The loss in yellow or resin soap would be about 45 per cent., and in Castile or olive-oil soap about 14 or 15 per cent.

II. *To estimate the fat acids*, dissolve 100 grains of the soap to be examined in 4 or 5 ounces of boiling distilled water in a porcelain capsule, then add a little muriatic

* If the soap has dried on the surface, the sample should be taken from the interior of the bar.

† Ure gives the following analysis of London curd soap:—Fat, 52; soda, 6; water, 42 = 100.

acid, and stir gently. The acid, combining with the soda, will set free the fat acids, which will float on the surface. Now set the vessel aside to cool, and, when quite cold, make a hole in the cake of fatty matter, and allow the liquid to escape into another vessel. To hasten the solidification of the fat acids, add 100 grains of white wax and a little water, and then apply heat until the whole is well melted; again set aside to cool; and proceed as before, washing the cake several times until no trace of acid remains in the last water when tested by litmus paper. Finally, run off all the water, remove the cake carefully, and place it upon a piece of white blotting-paper and thoroughly dry it, taking care not to allow any particles of the combined fatty matter and wax to remain in the capsule. After carefully weighing, and deducting the 100 grains of wax, the result will show the proportion of fat acids in the sample of soap under examination. If, when the soap is first dissolved in boiling water, oily matter floats on the surface, it indicates that saponification has not been complete.

III. *To ascertain the percentage of alkali.* This may be effected roughly by simply volatilising all the fatty matter by heat, and then weighing the residuum. Having weighed out 100 grains of the soap, place them in a porcelain crucible and apply heat either over a clear fire or a Bunsen burner until all the fatty matter has burnt off, when the residuum, which is carbonated alkali, will show, on weighing, the percentage of alkali in the sample. If the soap, however, has been adulterated with earthy matters, as silicate of soda or china clay for example, the proportion of real alkali must be determined by the alkalimetric test before described. 100 grains of the soap being dissolved in about 2,000 grains of boiling water, the solution is then neutralised with test-acid, and the quantity of this acid used will give the exact percentage of alkali present in the soap.

“If the soap contain clay, chalk, silica, dextrine, fecula, pumice-stone, ochre, plaster, salt, gelatine, &c., dissolve 100 grains of the suspected soap in alcohol; with the aid

of gentle heat the alcohol will dissolve the soap and leave all these impurities in an insoluble state. Good mottled soap should not leave more than 1 per cent. of insoluble matter, and white or yellow soap less still. All soap to which earthy or silicious matter has been added is opaque instead of being transparent on the edges, as is the case with all genuine fitted soap. The drier the soap the more transparent it is."—NORMANDY.

There is no better test for insoluble impurities than dissolving a given weight—say 100 grains—of soap in alcohol.* After the insoluble matters have subsided, the clear solution should be poured off, and the residual matter washed several times with alcohol, after which it should be carefully dried and weighed.

To determine the nature of the fatty matters which have been used in the manufacture of soap is a difficult and sometimes a very laborious task. An approximate result may be obtained, however, by first saturating an aqueous solution of the soap with a solution of tartaric acid; the fatty acids which float on the surface may, when cold, be transferred to a porcelain capsule, and heated gently over a water-bath. By applying a thermometer, the *fusing point* will give some idea of the nature of the fatty material, as to whether the soap was made from tallow or oils, or a combination of both. Again, if the fatty acids have been separated by dilute sulphuric or hydrochloric acid, if a little be rubbed in the palm of the hand the odour will frequently indicate the nature of the fatty material.

Soft soaps are assayed in the same way as hard soaps, but the manipulation is somewhat more troublesome, and therefore involves a little extra caution.

Unaponified Fatty Matter.—A properly-made soap is *entirely* soluble in water. If, therefore, after a sample of soap has been dissolved in hot water and allowed to rest for awhile a film of fatty matter appears on the surface (and which makes a greasy stain upon paper), that portion of the fat has not been saponified.

* Good methylated spirit answers equally well, and is much cheaper than alcohol.

Since pure soap is entirely soluble in alcohol, any insoluble colouring matter which may have been introduced into the soap may readily be separated, and, if desirable, examined by ordinary chemical tests.

Rampel's Method of Assaying Soaps.—1. The analysis of soaps does not present any more difficulty, and may be done in as little time and with as much precision as that of alkalis. 2. There is no necessity for analyzing marbled soap, for it *cannot be adulterated*; an excess of water would precipitate the marbling, and the introduction of foreign substances would prevent its formation. 3. For the white or unicoloured soaps, *i.e.* manufactured according to the Marseilles method, the quantity of water is determined by the usual process. The soap in thin shavings is submitted to a temperature of 212° F. The soap is weighed before and after drying, the difference in weight giving the proportion of water. One drachm dissolved in 2 ounces of hot water indicates, by the limpidity of the solution, if the soap has been manufactured by *liquefaction*. If the solution is muddy, this effect is due to the presence of resin. Liquefied soaps do not require further analysis, for they can contain neither insoluble nor inert substances. 4. Unicoloured, white, or other liquefied soaps mixed with resin, manufactured by saponification and evaporation, always produce muddy solutions. 5. To ascertain the presence and quantity of insoluble substances contained in soap, the process is simple and easy. Introduce into a small test-tube a few grains of soap, and heat it with about ten times its weight of alcohol. The solution is soon completed if there is no insoluble impurity; if, on the contrary, a deposit is left, it is to be well washed several times with alcohol, and weighed after drying. Its weight indicates the quantity of insoluble substances in the soap.

When the proportion of water and insoluble matter has been ascertained, the operator has approximately determined the value of the soap. Indeed, if the soap has given 30 or 34 per cent. of water, and 1 or 2 per cent. of insoluble matter, it is certain that the soap contains 6

per cent. of alkali, and 60 per cent. of fatty acids, which are the constant proportions of the marbled and pure white liquefied soaps. If, on the contrary, the proportion of water exceeds 35 per cent., or the insoluble matter 2 per cent., it is a certain proof that the soap has been adulterated. In either case it is useless to determine the proportions of fatty and inert substances that the soap contains.

By burning a small quantity of soap and assaying the residuum in the same manner as by the alkalimetric process, the real quantity of alkali and inert substances is determined at the same time. The alkalimetric assay is not necessary; indeed, when soap is burned, the residuum obtained contains all the fixed principles of the soap, but instead of having the soda in a *caustic state*, as in the soap, it exists in the form of a carbonate.

6. To ascertain the value of the soap as to the proportions of fatty acids and base it contains the following is recommended:—A given weight of soap in solution is decomposed by an acid; the fatty acids float on the surface of the liquid, and it is easy to collect them and determine their weight. When they do not collect easily, they are mixed with a known weight of white wax (previously dried) which hastens their solidification. A cake is thus obtained which, when cold and dried, is weighed, the weight of the wax used being deducted from the gross weight of the cake. To obtain the proportion of alkali, calcine a given weight of the soap in an iron ladle; all the soda becomes transformed into carbonate, and the real quantity of the alkali is determined by the alkalimetric test.

D'Arcet's Method.—If preferred, D'Arcet's system may be adopted, which consists in dissolving $2\frac{1}{2}$ drachms of soap in 2 ounces of hot water; from 1 to $2\frac{1}{2}$ drachms of pure and dried white wax are then added, and the whole boiled until the wax is melted, when the mixture is decomposed by the normal test-acid as in the ordinary alkalimetric process. After cooling, the weight of the fatty acids is determined by deducting the weight of wax-used. By

submitting the fatty acids to pressure, the solid and liquid acids may be recognised by their consistency, odour, &c.

When the soap under examination has been made from materials rich in stearine, the addition of white wax may not be necessary, since the fatty acids will set into a hard cake. When, on the other hand, the separated acids solidify slowly, and when cold form a soft cake, it indicates that liquid vegetable oils have been employed in the manufacture.

To determine the quantity of resin in soap, Dussauce suggests the following:—One ounce of soap is decomposed by an excess of sulphuric acid. The fatty acids obtained after cooling are washed with slightly acidulated water. The cake of fatty acids is divided into small equal pieces and well dried. A certain quantity is dissolved in five or six times its weight of alcohol at 90°. When the solution is made, boiling water is added to it; the proportion of water must be larger than that of the alcohol. An immediate separation takes place, and the fatty acids float on the surface of the liquor, which becomes limpid if the soap does not contain resin, and, on the other hand, becomes milky if resin is present. After the solidification of the fatty acids by cooling, the cake is divided again into pieces, dried and weighed. The difference in weight from that of the acids before the treatment by alcohol gives the proportion of resin contained in the soap.

Richardson and Watt's System.—They give the following plan for analyzing soap:—The soap is dried over a water-bath at 212° F., and is then dissolved in alcohol (100 grains require 3 ounces of alcohol), and heated to boiling over a water-bath. The soap, resin, and free fat enter into solution, leaving the mineral constituents, glue, starch, dextrine, &c. undissolved. The liquid is filtered and the residue washed with alcohol. The alcohol is expelled from the filtrate by evaporation. Addition of water then sets free any resin or uncombined fat. These are collected on a filter, dried and weighed. The filtrate now only contains the fat soap and resin soap if any, and must be treated by

the alkalimetric test to determine the amount of potash or soda in combination with the fat acids.

At the same time that the soap solution is decomposed, the fat and resin acids rise to the surface, and these are collected on a weighed filter, washed with hot water, dried *in vacuo*, and again weighed. The weight expresses the joint amount of fat and resin acids in the soap. Cold alcohol will dissolve out all the fat acid, together with a small proportion of the resin from the filter, and the filter dried *in vacuo* and weighed as before, gives approximately the amount of resin in the soap.

To determine whether the base of the soap is soda or potash, the solution of the sulphates filtered from the fat acids is concentrated and treated with tartaric acid and dichloride of platinum in the usual way. The filter containing the matter insoluble in alcohol is dried and weighed, after being thoroughly washed in alcohol. In genuine soap this insoluble matter is of very small amount, not exceeding 1 per cent. for mottled and even less for yellow soap.

CHAPTER XXV.

PURIFYING AND BLEACHING OILS AND FATS.

Bleaching Palm-oil: Watt's Chrome Process.—Recovery of the Chrome.
—Bleaching Palm-oil with Chromate of Lime.—Purifying Oils.—
Dunn's Method.—Justice's Method.

A VERY necessary branch of the soap-maker's art is that of decolouring or bleaching oils or other fatty matters previous to their introduction, with other and superior goods, into the soap-pan. The most important of all saponifiable materials possessing a colour natural to itself is *palm-oil*; but its deep orange-red colour, except for special purposes, would render it comparatively valueless as a soap-making material if there were no means of depriving it of its characteristic colour. In the early part of the present century many attempts were made to destroy, modify, or in some degree to reduce the intensity of the red colour of this oil. It was subjected to a high temperature, which changed the red to a brown tint; nitric acid was found to change the colour from red to yellow; it was subjected to the oxidising influence of the air, which greatly reduced its objectionable redness, and numerous other processes (including of course chlorine) were devised to render it serviceable as a partial substitute for tallow; but it was not until the year 1836, when Mr. C. Watt introduced his now well-known process for bleaching palm-oil by means of chromic acid, that the usefulness of this oil as a soap material could be fully enjoyed. By all the previous processes, the colouring matter of the oil, though modified, was neither removed nor actually destroyed, for it was invariably found that, in contact with caustic alkali, the colour more or less returned, and therefore affected the ultimate

colour of the soap. By the "chrome process," however, the colouring matter of the oil was entirely removed and the oil rendered as white as the finest English tallow. The importance of this process at a time when palm-oil was worth about £32 per ton and tallow about £56 can readily be imagined, and although some years elapsed before the trade fully recognised its importance, it was eventually adopted by all soap-makers in every part of the Kingdom. The process is conducted as follows:—

Bleaching Palm-oil: Watt's Chrome Process.—One ton of raw palm-oil melted by steam heat and allowed to settle is placed in a wooden tub or vat, and is stirred with a wooden crutch until it has a temperature of about 120° F. or even lower in hot weather; 28 lbs. of bichromate of potassa are then dissolved in boiling water and the solution poured into the vat and the stirring continued; 60 lbs. of hydrochloric acid are then added, and the stirring vigorously kept up. In a few moments the oil assumes a dark brown colour, which in a few minutes changes first to a dark green and then quickly to a lighter green, with slight foaming, when the operation is complete. If small samples are taken from time to time and placed upon a piece of glass or porcelain, the rapid changes of colour appear very remarkable, and when the last stage is reached (which is sometimes the case within five minutes after the acid has been introduced) the oil upon the palette will be *perfectly* free from colour. If now a drop or two of the bleached oil be treated with a drop of soda ley, the mixture will be *quite colourless* if the operation has been properly conducted. A current of steam or a few pails of boiling water are now introduced, with brisk stirring, after which the oil is allowed to repose. In about twelve hours the "green liquor," as it is called, is drawn off by a plugged opening at the bottom of the vessel, and the bleached oil is then ready for the soap-copper. The green liquor, which contains oxide of chromium in solution, is carefully preserved, and may be treated *for the recovery of the chrome* by a process which will be described hereafter.

Instead of using hydrochloric acid, 40 lbs. of sulphuric acid and 60 lbs. of common salt may be used. The sulphuric acid is diluted with about twice its bulk of water, and the salt, previously dissolved in cold water, is mixed with the solution of bichromate of potassa in the proportion given. Some persons, in bleaching palm-oil by the above process, have been known to use as much as 40 lbs. of bichromate to the ton, an excess not only extravagant but unnecessary.

In bleaching palm-oil by the above process it is of great importance that the temperature of the oil should not be above 120° F., since the chemical action which takes place after the introduction of the bichromate and acid greatly augments the temperature of the oil, and when this latter stands at a higher point than we have indicated the bleached oil is liable to assume a brown or "fóxy" colour. The author has most successfully bleached palm-oil when it has been almost at the point of congealing.

Recovery of the Chrome.—Although the recovery of the most costly ingredient employed in the process of bleaching palm-oil with chromic acid is not now, owing to the greatly reduced price of bichromate of potassa, of such paramount importance as it was formerly, there will be little difficulty in showing that even now, where this salt is used extensively, or even in moderate quantities, it will *pay* to save it from the gutter. The process, which was originated by Mr. Charles Watt, jun., may be described as follows:—The "green liquor" resulting from the bleaching of palm-oil, and which is rich in oxide of chromium, is placed in a wooden vat or tub. A quantity of slaked lime is worked up with water into what is termed *milk of lime*, small quantities of which are added cautiously, with continual stirring, to the green liquor, until all the free sulphuric or hydrochloric acid is saturated. No excess must be added, otherwise the oxide of chromium will be precipitated. When the saturation of the acid is complete the vessel is allowed to rest for an hour or two, after which the liquid is transferred to another vessel, and milk of lime again added and well stirred in, until the supernatant liquor is *colourless*.

After a few hours' rest the clear liquor is run off and fresh water added, which, after a further repose, is again run off, this operation of *washing* being continued until the clear liquor is tasteless. After about twelve hours' repose, the whole of the liquor is run off, and the *deposit*, which is a mixture of oxide of chromium and lime, after being well drained, is spread over an iron plate, with a furnace fire beneath to the depth of about two inches. The fire being kindled, the paste is first allowed to dry, when the heat is gradually increased. When the plate acquires a cherry-red heat the *grey* mass will gradually assume a yellow colour nearest the plate, and the mass will break up into irregular cakes. When these have become roasted about half through they must be turned over one by one, and the roasting continued until the whole assumes the yellow tint of *chromate of lime*. It will generally be found that the lumps will fall into a coarse powder, in which case, in order to ensure uniformity and to prevent *over-heating* (which must be strictly avoided) the substance should be constantly turned over by means of a trowel or shovel, a long-handled trowel being a most convenient tool for the purpose. It is advisable in practice to shift from the centre of the plate those portions which are sufficiently roasted* and to replace them with those which are less done; the finished material may be shovelled into an iron box or barrow, and there allowed to remain until cold, when it may be put into a cask until required for use.

Bleaching Palm-oil with Chromate of Lime.—About 60 lbs. of the chromate of lime prepared as above are sprinkled into a vat containing a ton of melted palm-oil, and well crutched or stirred in; and when the whole has been introduced 60 lbs. of hydrochloric acid are added, and the stirring continued until the usual reaction takes place and the oil is completely bleached. A few buckets of hot water may now be introduced with brisk agitation, and the usual time then allowed for settling. It is hardly necessary to say that the green liquor resulting from this opera-

* It is very important that the heat should be only of a dull red. Beyond this point the product becomes decomposed and useless.

tion may be treated as before, and the chrome again recovered.

Purifying Oils.—*Fish oils* may be purified by first boiling them with a weak caustic soda ley—about half a pound of the alkali dissolved in half a gallon of warm water to each ton of oil. This being well stirred into the oil, half a pound of sulphuric acid diluted with six times its weight of water is then added, the whole being boiled by steam for about a quarter of an hour. After about an hour's rest the liquid is run off from the bottom of the vat, and the operation of bleaching commenced. 4 lbs. of bichromate of potassa dissolved in hot water is first introduced, and this is immediately followed by adding 2 lbs. of sulphuric acid diluted as before; and after steam has been blown through the oil for a short time 1 lb. of nitric acid diluted with 1 quart of water is introduced, and the boiling continued for half an hour longer. The oil is then to be well washed with boiling water, and then allowed to rest until all the liquid matters have subsided.

All fixed vegetable oils and also fats may be purified and decoloured by means of chromic acid, but the operation is more effective when a solution of bichromate of potassa and either dilute sulphuric acid or hydrochloric acid are mixed during the process, when the alkali, being attacked by the acid, sets the chromic acid free. Melted kitchen-stuff and other rank fatty matters may be greatly improved, both in smell and colour, by judicious treatment with small quantities of bichromate and any mineral acid, but in order to remove the traces of green oxide of chromium which are apt to remain in fatty matters containing a considerable amount of stearine, it is advisable to well wash the bleached fat by the free use of steam or by means of boiling water, and the vessel in which the operations have been conducted should be well covered with sacking so as to retain the heat as long as possible, and thus facilitate the subsidence of the *green liquor*.

In the purifying of fish and other oils chloride of lime, made into a thin creamy mass, has frequently been employed, with the addition of dilute sulphuric acid. About

1 per cent. of the chloride and $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of sulphuric acid diluted with twenty times its weight of water are about the right proportions. The oil is first gently heated, the chloride of lime is then added and well stirred in, after which the dilute acid is introduced, and the agitation kept up until a sample exhibits a satisfactory appearance. Steam is then blown in or hot water applied to thoroughly wash the oil, when it is allowed to rest for some hours. The clear oil is then run off into a proper receptacle.

Solutions of tan, or tannic acid, followed by chloride of lime and dilute sulphuric acid have also been used in purifying fish oils.

Dunn's Method.—Mr. Dunn purified these oils by heating them with steam to a temperature of from 180° to 200° F., and then forcing a stream of hot air through the oil, after which the oil was washed by steam or hot water and afterwards filtered. A strong solution of common salt, or a mixture of salt and sulphate of copper (both in solution), and the whole well agitated for some time, is another method of purifying fish oil which has been frequently adopted. The oil is afterwards filtered through fresh charcoal, or is allowed to clarify by resting for a few hours.

Palm and other oils frequently contain foreign matter the presence of which is likely to retard the chemical action of the bleaching agent; it is better, therefore, to remove these impurities by first heating the oil and then allowing it to rest for several hours, so that these matters may subside.

Justice's method of purifying and bleaching oils and fats consists in mixing with these substances, while in a melted state, pulverised dry fuller's-earth, and then separating the earth from the oil or fat by allowing it to subside. The fatty matter to be purified is placed in any vessel suited to the purpose, and is heated until it is perfectly liquid. The temperature required of course varies with the different kinds of oil or fat, but it is simply sufficient that the material to be treated be brought to the liquid state. When the fat is thoroughly melted a quantity

of finely-powdered fuller's-earth, or an equivalent of clay, is spread over its surface and mixed with it by agitation, after which the fuller's-earth is allowed to subside. The fullers'-earth being now at the bottom of the vessel, the oil or fat, freed from impurities and colouring matter, but in other respects unchanged, is ready for use. The residuum, consisting of fuller's-earth mixed with oil, after the clear portion has been drawn off, may be put into boiling water, which separates the oil or fat from the earth and permits it to rise to the top, where it can be recovered. The refuse may then be thrown away or utilised in any desired manner. The amount of fuller's-earth to be used varies with the different kinds of fats and oils, say from 1 to 15 per cent. by weight of the fat or oil to be treated. No stills or machinery are needed, the only apparatus required being an ordinary vessel of suitable capacity in which to warm the oil or fat, and if desired one or more settling tanks.

CHAPTER XXVI.

RECOVERY OF THE GLYCERINE FROM WASTE OR SPENT LEYS.

Young's Process.—Payne's Process.—Versmann's Process.—O'Farrell's Process.—Thomas and Fuller's Process.—Allan's Process.—Lawson and Sulman's Process.—Clolus's Method.—Benno, Jappé, and Co.'s Method.

It had always been a source of regret that the enormous quantity of glycerine formed during the process of saponification should have been ruthlessly wasted, and that no practical effort should have been made to recover this valuable product from the exhausted leys. The high price of glycerine, however, naturally turned attention to the soap-maker's waste leys, which were known to contain large quantities of this important substance; and to save it from its usual fate—the gutter—certain ingenious persons have devised various methods for its extraction. Of the several patents which have been obtained for recovering glycerine from spent leys, the following abstracts will prove interesting, but as these patents are of recent date they cannot, of course, be worked without the consent of the respective patentees.

Mr. Benjamin Young's Process consists in first putting the waste ley into capacious evaporating-pans or other suitable vessels, provided with coils of pipe made of any suitable metal, through which superheated or ordinary steam is passed. The free and carbonated alkalies (soda or potassa) are next neutralised by adding a solution of sulphuric acid in about the following proportions, namely, one part of water and one part of the sulphuric acid of commerce (68° B.), in about the proportion of two gallons of the diluted sulphuric acid to every forty gallons of the

waste soap-liquor. The solution of sulphuric acid is added to the waste soap-liquor in its original bulk, or when it is reduced to about one half that bulk by evaporation. Superheated or ordinary steam is then passed through the coils of pipe connecting with the evaporating-pans, and the waste liquor is concentrated to about one-tenth of the original volume. If any resin or fat is contained in the waste liquor it is admissible to add a slight excess of the dilute acid, and to remove the same—the resin or fat—by straining the concentrated liquor through cloth or any other suitable material made into bags or otherwise, after it has been evaporated to about one-tenth of its original volume. A small quantity of carbonate of lime is then added to the strained liquor, and it is further concentrated by evaporation until upon cooling it assumes the consistency of a syrup or paste, which consists of a mixture of chlorides and sulphates of soda and potassa, sulphate and carbonate of lime, and glycerine. The entire contents of the evaporating vessels are then placed in a centrifugal machine, such as is used for causing the separation of sugar from molasses, which is then set in motion and caused to rotate rapidly on its axis, thereby causing the removal of the glycerine. By this means the greater portion of the salts of soda, potassa, and lime are retained in the interior of the centrifugal machine, the glycerine being thrown off by the rapid rotation of the machine. As the glycerine thus obtained holds a certain quantity of salts in solution, these are separated by distillation.

Mr. George Payne's Process.—The inventor takes the spent ley resulting from the manufacture of soap and saturates any free alkali present with an acid. He prefers to use sulphuric, hydrochloric, or nitric acid. He then takes a solution of tannin or tannic acid, and adds this to the spent ley after being neutralised by the acid. This solution should contain about one part by weight of tannin or tannic acid to about ten parts by weight of water. The addition of the solution to the ley is continued until it ceases to precipitate any albuminous or gelatinous matter.

The precipitate which is thus formed is separated by filtration, or is allowed to settle. The remaining liquid consists chiefly of raw or impure glycerine and chloride of sodium. The solution should be warmed, as experience shows that heat facilitates the formation and separation of the precipitate. In some instances the solution may be found to be slightly acid; if so, it must be neutralised by the addition of milk of lime. The clear liquor, which is a mixture of glycerine and spent ley, is next heated to expel the water, thereby concentrating the mixture and removing from the same a large quantity of the salts, which will crystallise out during the process of evaporation. For this purpose heated air, superheated steam, or the direct heat of the fire may be employed.

By this process a concentrated solution of glycerine is obtained containing about 10 per cent. of salt, and the glycerine may be separated by distillation and refined in the usual way. The inventor says that "the glycerine obtained by this process may be more easily refined by distillation than that obtained by any known process."

Versmann's Process.—The object of this invention is the recovery of glycerine from soap leys, and its more or less complete separation from chloride of sodium, carbonate of soda, and caustic soda. A large percentage of these salts is separated by simply boiling down the soap ley and raking out the salts as they become insoluble. The concentrated solution is then allowed to cool, after which carbonic acid gas is passed through it until the whole of the carbonate and caustic soda is converted into bicarbonate of soda, which being much less soluble in glycerine than either the carbonate of soda or caustic soda, may readily be removed by filtration or other convenient means.

The inventor sometimes commences by passing carbonic acid gas through the original soap ley, but he finds it more convenient to first reduce the bulk of the liquid by boiling down, thereby separating large quantities of the salts, and then treating the liquid with carbonic acid. The liquid from which the bicarbonate of soda has been

removed is very rich in glycerine, but it still retains sensible quantities of chloride of sodium and other salts, the presence of which may act injuriously in the subsequent applications of the glycerine to certain purposes. These salts are separated by submitting the liquor, either hot or cold, to the process of "Osmose," in an apparatus known as the "Osmogene," such as is used in the separation of saline compounds from solutions of beet-root sugar. By this process nearly all the salts are separated from the glycerine. But as the latter becomes diluted with water it may be concentrated by evaporation, when it will be ready for the market as crude glycerine.

O'Farrell's Process.—The spent leys are evaporated immediately they are drawn off from the soap-pan by fire heat or dry steam applied by any suitable apparatus, till a saturated aqueous solution of common salt is obtained, and this saturated solution is used for the purpose of separating the glycerine from a fresh portion or second charge of soap, when the spent ley obtained from this fresh portion or second charge is evaporated, and this is again returned to the soap-copper for the purpose of separating the glycerine from a third charge, and the ley obtained is evaporated as before. The process is repeated until the quantity of glycerine present in the solution is sufficiently concentrated to be economically separated.

Having by this means obtained the maximum amount of glycerine in the minimum volume of spent soap leys, the inventor proceeds to evaporate the solution till as much salt as possible crystallises out, when the glycerine is dissolved out from the residue by means of methylated spirit or other suitable liquid, or the glycerine may be separated by distillation *in vacuo*.

Thomas and Fuller's Process.—The spent or partially spent leys are first evaporated until nearly all the salts are deposited; the resulting liquor, which is strongly impregnated with glycerine, is then boiled with an excess of fat or fatty acids, which readily combines with the soda salts, and removes all salts which may be in suspension in the liquor. The solution is then filtered and sub-

jected to distillation to recover the glycerine. Or the spent leys may be treated with quick-lime to convert the carbonate of soda into caustic soda, and after filtration boiled to concentration, and then fat or fat acid may be added to remove the soda and such salts as may be in suspension. The method described above, however, is preferred, using simply concentrated leys and a fat acid as the more effectual means of clearing the liquor of salts.

Allan's Process.—The inventor first neutralises the spent leys with any mineral acid with agitation. After settling, he adds a solution of alum, chloride of lime, or crude pyroligneous acid, stirring thoroughly. If preferred, he evaporates to nearly "salting point" before adding any of the substances mentioned above, and allows the precipitate to deposit. After settling he draws off the clear liquor and evaporates it to a concentrated condition in pans (to which the heat is only applied at the sides), or in shallow pans with sloping bottoms, to which the heat is applied. The liquor is then distilled in a glycerine retort heated by superheated steam from within, and provided with an exit pipe at the bottom, which carries off the precipitated salt as it accumulates.

Lawson and Sulman's Process consists in first evaporating the leys to a density of from 1.14 to 1.16, and allowing the solution to cool. The salt liquor being thus concentrated, the residual soapy matters remaining in solution are rendered insoluble, and, rising to the surface, may readily be removed by skimming or otherwise for further use. To remove the albuminous matters remaining in the liquor it is first heated, after which a salt of chromium sesquioxide is added, which is capable of tanning or rendering albumen insoluble. The quantity of the chromium salt added will depend upon the percentage of albuminous matter existing in the ley. The albuminous matters thus rendered insoluble by the addition of the salt are precipitated and removed.

The removal of these matters at this stage prevents their decomposition by further evaporation, and thus a

purser and more concentrated glycerine of better colour than usual is obtained. The alkalinity of the liquor is at the same time neutralised by a suitable acid.

The inventors remark, "A very convenient method of effecting our invention, so as to obtain these two results, *i.e.* the tanning of the albuminous matters and the neutralisation of the alkalinity, is to use the waste liquor resulting from the bleaching of tallow or other fats or oils (chrome liquor?). For a ley such as the above we may add the bleaching liquor in the proportion of, say, 1 to 3 gallons for every 100 gallons of original ley; but this must depend entirely on the strength and colour of the ley. When treating highly-coloured leys, we add a proportion of free chromic acid to the waste liquor, which, by the oxidation and destruction of the colouring matters, is reduced to a salt of chromium sesquioxide capable of removing the albuminous matters as above."

The quantity of chromic acid will necessarily vary, but for the above quantity of ley we should say about half a pound of bichromate of potash added to a mixture of three-quarters of a pound of sulphuric acid in 2 lbs. of water, and add this mixture in the proportion of 5 lbs. to 20 lbs. to every 100 gallons of ley, according to circumstances. We now treat the liquor with a small excess of calcium carbonate (say, for example, 1 to 2 gallons "cream of whiting" to 100 gallons of ley), and maintain at a boiling temperature for a short time. This precipitates the whole of the chromic salts, and neutralises any slight proportion of acid remaining. The chromic oxide contained in the resulting precipitate can be recovered for another operation in any suitable and well-known manner. The resultant liquor obtained by removing the precipitate by subsidence or filtration will be found clear and almost colourless. It is then concentrated by further evaporation, which causes the gradual separation of the salt, which can be again used in the manufacture of soap.

The crude glycerine finally obtained is of greater purity and better colour than usual.

M. Victor Clolus's Method.—To effect a separation of

the various bodies for commercial purposes, and especially to extract the glycerine from spent leys, the inventor first saturates the ley, when cold, with hydrochloric acid. The solids are precipitated and collected; the neutral clear liquid is evaporated in any suitable heating apparatus. By degrees, as the evaporation proceeds, the salt is precipitated and is removed, subjected to the action of a turbine, and washed. In most cases this salt is sea-salt in a nearly pure state. The evaporation is arrested when the liquid has arrived at a density of about 32° B. At this point the glycerine contained in the ley still contains considerable quantities of salt in solution, the greater part of which is eliminated by the following treatment; that is to say, the glycerine liquid, at about 32° B., is poured into any suitable vessel and hot air is blown into it, or the liquid is otherwise heated and cold air blown into it. The air so heated, or heated by the glycerine itself, gradually eliminates the last traces of water in the glycerine, and salt is constantly precipitated, as the latter is very slightly soluble in anhydrous glycerine. To eliminate the water evaporation *in vacuo* might also be effected, but would be more expensive. As the final result, highly concentrated glycerine mixed with salt crystals is obtained. A turbine is used for eliminating the salt, which is systematically washed, and the water used for the washing is again treated.

The glycerine, thus purified by one or the other of these two processes, contains only a very small quantity of sea-salt in solution, and may be distilled. The inventor also adopts another method when he desires to obtain the carbonated or caustic salts of soda in the condition of carbonates, instead of transforming them into chlorides by means of hydrochloric acid. For this purpose he evaporates the ley and introduces into it carbonic acid, so as to convert the caustic soda into carbonate. When the liquor indicates about 25° , he allows the ley to cool, when he introduces an excess of carbonic acid, whereby bicarbonate of soda is formed, which is only slightly soluble, especially in a glycerine solution of salt. The greater

part is precipitated and is eliminated by means of a turbine. The bicarbonate is transformed into carbonate by calcination. The glycerine liquid which leaves the turbine is treated as before. If it is desired to obtain glycerine more free from salt, the operation is performed as follows:—The glycerine concentrated by air blown into it, or *in vacuo*, is treated with hydrochloric acid added in excess, either in a gaseous state or as a liquid. Sea-salt, being almost insoluble in an excess of hydrochloric acid, will be precipitated in fine crystals, and is eliminated by means of a turbine. The excess of hydrochloric acid then contained in the glycerine is eliminated either by blowing air into the same or by an excess of oxide of lead.

Benno, Jappé, and Co.'s Method.—According to this process the inventors do not use common salt for separating the soap from the ley, but employ in lieu thereof an alkaline sulphate. The alkaline sulphates, especially the sulphate of soda, act upon the soapy liquor in the same manner as common salt, but there will be no difficulty in subsequently separating such sulphate from the glycerine. The spent ley obtained in eliminating the soap by means of sulphate of sodium has an alkaline reaction, and is, therefore, first neutralised by the addition of hydric-sodic sulphate; it is then filtered and ultimately evaporated. In the process of neutralising the spent ley the hydric-sodic sulphate is transformed into sulphate of soda by the caustic soda contained in the spent ley. When the liquid is evaporated the sulphate of soda separates in crystals, and is thus recovered as a bye-product. The sulphate of soda, which has been introduced for the purpose of separating the soap from the ley, is also separated, and if properly purified can be used again for eliminating soap from the ley. The liquid remaining after the crystallisation is glycerine containing a slight proportion of impurities, and can be further purified in the usual manner, as for instance by distillation.

CHAPTER XXVII.

MISCELLANEOUS SOAPS.

Soap to be used in Cloth Manufactories.—White Cocoa-nut Oil Soap.—Dresden Palm Soap.—Altenburge's Resin Soap.—Ox-gall Soap.—Scouring Balls.—Borax Soft Soap.—Borax Soap-Powder.—London Soap-Powder.

Soap to be used in Cloth Manufactories, &c.—Kürten makes the following interesting observations on the preparation of soaps to be used for milling and other similar purposes,* which will assist in guiding the soap-maker who may not be fully acquainted with the requirements of the cloth-scourers. “In preparing all soaps intended for the use of the above-mentioned establishments, great care is indispensably necessary in giving the ley its proper proportion of strength, for if the ley be too weak the stuffs cannot be properly cleansed, and also a greasy matter is communicated to them which in every case is very injurious; on the other hand, if the ley is too strong in the soap, the stuffs are scoured too much, and retain always a dry stiffness which should be specially avoided. When the cloth is scoured or milled it is a rule to use soap of a quality corresponding with that of the stuffs, for it is proved by experience that a cloth which is really good, and which is called stout cloth, must be milled a longer time than a zephyr or light stuff for pantaloons, which only require to be washed, else they would loose the elasticity which is indispensable to them.

“In executing an order for soap for milling, the maker should direct his attention to ascertain whether the process of milling was according to the ancient manner by stocks or the new method by cylinders. By the first

* “Art of Manufacturing Soap.” By Philip Kürten.

method the milling requires longer time and the employment of a soap which does not dissolve too quickly, whilst by the latter method a soap is wanted which does not congeal too quickly. Among the soaps which do not dissolve quickly we reckon those which are prepared from tallow or palm-oil with soda ley, from which it is afterwards separated. A soap which dissolves the quickest is that which has been boiled from olive-oil, with an addition of tallow, then some olein soap; in a word, the genuine soap. It is, however, true that green or brown soap always dissolves quickest; nevertheless it is not fit for milling heavy cloth with the stocks, because on that account they do not thicken sufficiently. Although the manufacturers of cloth will not easily decide on using any other sort of soap, yet the soap-boiler should not be led away by the opinion that every maker of the same article can make use of the same sort of soap, because, as we have already observed, not only the different qualities of cloth and the method employed in their manufacture should be taken into consideration, but also the different properties of the water used. It is, therefore, the duty of every soap-boiler to supply each manufacturer with the kind of soap which, in that manufacturer's own opinion, is the best adapted for his purpose and for the quality of his material. We will for that reason more fully describe the preparation of the different sorts of soap.

*“Hard and Unsalted Soap for Milling Cloths of Superior quality.—*This kind of soap is made either of tallow or cocoa-nut oil, or whitened palm-oil with an addition of cocoa-nut oil, and in the following manner:—The palm-oil or the tallow should be boiled into a firm-grained soap with a caustic soda ley,* which is added till the soap shows a strong grain and bears a good pressure of the hand, and the sample shows a sufficient firmness when cool, and when the ley, which still remains unsalted in the soap, leaves a sharpish taste on the tongue. We have then a soap, it is true, but it is not fit for milling, because it does not yet possess a sufficient scouring

* Mr. Kürten is in error in recommending soda soaps for these purposes.

quality, therefore will not cleanse the cloth from its dirt, glue, and grease. To give the soap the necessary power to effect that purpose an addition of cocoa-nut oil is requisite, and for that reason the unsalted ley which remains in the soap must be got rid of, and the soap poured again into the boiler, but without any ley. For every 100 lbs. of palm-oil or tallow used for this soap 25 lbs. of cocoa-nut oil must be added, which is mixed with the soap when cold in small quantities, or, which is more advisable, when in a state of solution, and then made to boil afresh. When it is intended to make a soap of a superior quality and to diminish the ley, in order to saponify cocoa-nut oil a caustic ley of soda of 28° or 30° is required. The ley is added till the soap has acquired a good firmness, and, when tried, a taste rather strong of ley remains on the tongue. As soon as this is found, then the soap must be allowed to boil for half an hour to ascertain whether the same taste yet remains; if not, a little more ley must be added till the taste returns. When the soap is not yet separated from the ley, to effect that purpose some salt must be used, and continued till the soap on the spatula separates from the ley. The soap will remain some hours in the boiler to cool, and be afterwards poured into the frame. When it is desired to obtain a larger produce, although with the conviction that the quality will not be so good, instead of a ley at 28° or 30° for the saturation of the cocoa-nut oil, one 22° to 24° must be used, and the soap poured into the frame in the state of paste, and not unsalted; but in this case care must be taken that the soap is not brought to a higher degree of heat than 25° Réaumur (152°), otherwise the soap from the cocoa-nut oil would stick to the bottom of the boiler."

White Cocoa-nut Oil Soap.—Cristiani gives the following directions for making this soap in a simple and quick way:—To prepare 100 lbs. of this soap, introduce into a kettle* holding from 200 to 250 gallons, 200 lbs.

* The term "kettle" is generally used in America in preference to soap-pan or copper.

of pure white cocoa-nut oil; afterwards add 200 lbs. of colourless and perfectly limpid ley at 30°. All being ready, heat the kettle, and to accelerate the combination of the substances stir well from time to time. Under the influence of the heat the material, which was at first in the form of grains, softens and becomes liquid. Continue the heat gently and gradually until the combination of the oil and alkali is effected, which generally takes place when the ebullition begins. When properly made, the soap has the appearance of a fluid, homogeneous, and syrupy paste of an amber-white colour. It is useless to boil it; stop off the heat, and run the soap into the frames. If, when the mixture begins to boil, a certain quantity of oil swims on the surface of the paste, it may be combined with the saponified mass by adding 10 lbs. to 12 lbs. of cocoa-nut oil soap; or, the same result may be obtained by adding from 2 to 2½ gallons of pure water. After stirring a few minutes the homogeneity of the soap is re-established and the combination perfected. The heat is then withdrawn, and the soap transferred to the frames as usual. After five or six days the soap is firm enough to cut. By the above process the soap is very white, does not contain any excess of alkali or oil, and may be employed for toilet uses. From the quantities given from 396 to 400 lbs. of soap are obtained, according to the quantity of water added. The operation lasts about one hour.

Dresden Palm Soap.

Cocoa-nut oil.....	3,520 lbs.
Palm-oil (crude).....	1,100 „
Resin.....	880 „
Soda ley, 28°	353 „

Melt together the fats and saponify the resin separately, taking care to add the resin soap before it becomes too thick to stir.

Altenburge's Resin Soap.

Cocoa-nut oil	220 lbs.
Resin	220 „
Soda ley, 28° B.....	297 „

Make by the cold process, and cut with a salt ley of 24° B. before framing.

Ox-gall Soap.

Purified ox-gall	1 part.
White curd soap	2 parts.

The soap is cut into shavings and melted in the ox-gall at a moderate heat, evaporating until of proper consistency. The ox-gall is prepared by boiling it with 10 to 12 parts of wood spirit and straining.

Scouring-Balls.

White curd soap	35 lbs. 2 ozs.
Pearlash	6 ,, 6 ,,
Oil of juniper	3 ,, 3 ,,

Mix together, having previously added a little water to the soap and pearlash to dissolve them by a moderate heat; add the oil of juniper and mould into balls.

Borax Soft Soap.

White fats	100 lbs.
Soda ley, 15° B.	100 ,,
Potash ley, 10° B.	60 ,,
Solution of borax, 10° B.	15 ,,

The soda ley is added to the melted grease and heated till it forms a clear liquid or is combined, when the potash ley and borax solution are added. It should be a semi-solid translucent paste, and is usually sold in quart cans.

Borax Soap-powder.

Curd soap in powder	5 parts.
Soda ash	3 ,,
Silicate of soda	2 ,,
Borax, crude	1 part.

Each ingredient is thoroughly dried and all mixed together by sifting.

London Soap-powder.

Yellow soap	6 parts.
Soda crystals	3 ,,
Pearlash	1½ part.
Sulphate of soda	1½ ,,
Palm-oil.	1 ,,

These ingredients are combined as well as possible without any water, and they are spread out to dry and then ground into a coarse powder. Thus in an infinite degree can the variety of soap-powders be multiplied. They are adapted for hard waters, as their excess of alkali neutralises the lime.—*Cristiani.*

CHAPTER XXVIII.

USEFUL NOTES AND TABLES.

Pickling Soap.—The Oleometer.—Aluminate of Soda.—Determination of Resin in Soap.—Detection of Resin in Soap.—Cheap Almond Soap.—Analyses of Soft Soaps.—Potato-flour in Soft Soap.—Saponification of Neutral Fatty Bodies by Soap.—Jellifying.—Twaddell's Hydrometer.—Causticising Soda.—Soda Soft Soap.—Half-palm Soap.—Adulteration of Commercial Silicate of Soda Soaps for Calico-printers.—Fulling Soaps.—Table showing the Percentage of Soda in Caustic Ley.—Table showing the Percentage of Anhydrous Caustic Potash in Caustic Ley.—Comparative French and English Thermometer Scales.—Table showing the Specific Gravity corresponding with Baumé's Hydrometer (Liquids denser than Water).—Table showing the Specific Gravity corresponding with the Degrees of Baumé's Hydrometer (Liquids lighter than Water).—Table of Essential Oils.—Fusing and Congealing Points of Fats and Oils.—Kürten's Table.—Boiling-points of some Volatile Oils.—Boiling-points of Caustic Alkaline Leys.—Table showing the Quantity of Caustic Soda in Leys of different Densities (Water 1000).—Table of the Mechanical Power of Steam.

Pickling Soap.—Under this attractive heading we may state that some *very* competitive soap-makers have occasionally adopted a plan of artificially hardening the surface of soap containing an infinitesimal proportion of fatty matter by soaking it for a few hours in a strong solution of common salt. The soap bars (which require careful handling!) are gently deposited in the strong brine, where they are allowed to remain until the surface is sufficiently indurated, after which they are quickly rinsed and then submitted to the drying-room for a short time. By this method the soap assumes a virtue which it does not possess.

The Oleometer.—This very useful instrument, for ascertaining the density of fixed oils, is thus described by Mr. Cooley:—“A delicate areometer or hydrometer, so weighted and graduated as to adapt itself to the densities of the leading fixed oils. As the differences of the specific

gravities of these substances are inconsiderable, to render it more susceptible the ball of the instrument is proportionately large and the tube or stem very narrow. The scale of the oleometer in general use (Gobby's) is divided into 50 degrees, and it floats at 0 or zero in *pure* poppy oil; at 38 or $38\frac{1}{2}$ in *pure* almond oil, and at 50 in *pure* olive-oil. The standard temperature of the instruments made in this country is now 60° ; those made on the Continent 54.5° F. The oil must therefore be brought to this normal temperature before testing it, by plunging the glass cylinder containing it into either hot or cold water, as the case may be; or a correction of the observed density must be made. The last is done by *deducting* 2 from the indication of the instrument for *each degree* of the thermometer *above* the normal temperature of the instrument, and adding 2 for every degree below it. Thus: suppose the temperature of the oil at the time of the experiment is 60° F. and the oleometer indicates 60° , then—

60.0°	<i>Actual temperature.</i>	
54.5	<i>Normal temperature.</i>	
<hr style="width: 20%; margin: 0 auto;"/>		
5.5	Difference.	
<i>Indication of the oleometer</i>	61.0
<i>The difference</i> 5.5 × 2 =	11.0
<hr style="width: 20%; margin: 0 auto;"/>		
	Real density	50.0

Suppose the temperature observed at the time of the experiment is 52° and the oleometer indicates 45° , then—

54.5	<i>Normal Temperature.</i>	
52.0	<i>Actual Temperature.</i>	
<hr style="width: 20%; margin: 0 auto;"/>		
2.5	Difference.	
<i>Indication of the oleometer</i>	45.0
<i>The difference</i> 2.5 × 2 =	5.0
<hr style="width: 20%; margin: 0 auto;"/>		
	Real density	50.0

The oil is therefore presumed to be pure.

Aluminate of Soda.—It has been proposed to employ this salt as a substitute for caustic soda in the manufacture of soap. Aluminate of soda is prepared from *bauxite*, an aluminate of iron, and from *cryolite*, a double fluoride

of sodium and aluminum. Bauxite is calcined with soda ash, whereby an aluminate of soda is formed, and the oxide of iron is separated by lixiviation, the resulting liquors being evaporated until a dry commercial aluminate of soda is obtained, the composition of which is—soda, 43; alumina, 40; water and impurities from the soda ash employed, 9. Cryolite (powdered) is mixed with six equivalents of lime and boiled with water, when an insoluble fluoride of calcium is formed and the alumina becomes dissolved in the excess of caustic soda. If an excess of lime is used, the alumina will be precipitated, leaving caustic soda alone in solution. We understand that soap is made in the United States to a considerable extent from aluminate of soda.

For making soap from aluminate of soda, about equal parts of lard and tallow are preferred, and these should not be heated to a greater extent than is just necessary to liquefy them. The materials are not boiled in the usual way, but the combination is effected at the lowest temperature at which they can be intimately mixed.

To determine the Quantity of Resin in Soaps.—Mr. Sutherland recommends the following process, which is said to give very satisfactory results:—300 grains of soap cut into small pieces are introduced into a capsule and covered with concentrated hydrochloric acid, the contents are gently boiled till the soap is dissolved and entirely decomposed; 4 ounces of hot water are added, and the capsule is set aside to cool. When cold, the cake of fatty acids and resin is removed and washed several times with warm water. After cooling it is dried and gently remelted, and kept for a few minutes at 212° to evaporate all traces of water.

This cake containing the fatty acids and the resin is carefully weighed.

100 grains of the mixture are placed in a capsule and covered with strong nitric acid and the temperature raised to the boiling-point; a powerful reaction takes place with violent evolution of nitrous vapours. The heat is withdrawn till the violence of the action subsides, and is

again applied to maintain a gentle ebullition for a few minutes. Small portions of nitric acid are successively added till no further distinctly appreciable quantity of nitrous acid is given off. The fatty acids are now allowed to cool, and are removed from the acid solution strongly coloured by terebic acid. The cake is then washed by melting it in a further quantity of nitric acid. When cold it is dried and melted at a gentle heat till acid fumes cease to be given off. The resulting cake is the pure fatty acid freed from resin, the latter being indicated by the loss. It will be observed that a correction must be made to obtain the exact relative proportions between fat and resin originally put into the soap-pan, as fats on being decomposed lose about $4\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of their original weight. Hence, in making the calculation a proportionate addition must be made to the fatty acid before dividing its weight by that of the resin indicated. This process may be also used to determine resin in bees'-wax.

Detection of Resin in Soap.—Mr. C. Barford decomposes the soap with hydrochloric acid, and washes the mass thus obtained with water. He then treats it with a caustic soda ley of the specific gravity of 1.1 diluted with 6 volumes of water, avoiding excess. He then evaporates it to dryness over a water-bath, grinds up the residue, and dries in stove at 100° . One portion of this powder is utilised for the determination of the fatty acids, and another portion is put into a very dry bottle, and from 5 to 6 per cent. of absolute alcohol are added for every gramme of soap. It is heated at 80° , to dissolve the soap of the fatty acids and of resin, and allowed to cool again while well stoppered. The alcoholic liquid, when cold, is mixed with 5 times its volume of ether. The whole is well shaken up and left to settle. The resin soap is entirely dissolved, whilst the soap of the fatty acids is deposited almost entirely. After standing for 24 to 48 hours the ethereal liquid is decanted, and the residue is treated with hydrochloric acid. This method is based upon the slight solubility of a soda soap of the fatty acids in the above mixture of alcohol and ether.

Cheap Almond Soap.—To impart the odour of bitter almonds to soap, *nitro-benzol* has been much employed. It is exceedingly powerful as a perfume, and must therefore be used in moderation. It is largely used in some parts of England for scenting cheap tablet soaps. In small quantities it has also been employed to disguise the disagreeable odour of cocoa-nut oil.

Analyses of Soft Soaps.—The following analyses may be useful as showing the composition of several well-made soft soaps:—

Good soft soap of London make: Potash 8·5 + oil and tallow 45 + water 46·5 in 100 parts.—*Ure*.

Thenard gives the composition of soft soap as: Potash 9·5; oil 44·0; water 46·5 = 100.

Belgian soft or green soap: Potash 7 + oil 36 + water 57 = 100.—*Ure*.

Scotch soft soap: Potash 8 + oil and tallow 47 + water 45 = 100.—*Ure*.

Another well-made soap: Potash 9 + oil and fat 34 + water 57 = 100.

An olive-oil (Gallipoli) soft soap from Scotland consisted of potash with a good deal of carbonic acid 10, oils 48, water 42 = 100.—*Ure*.

A rapeseed oil from Scotland consisted of potash 10 + oil 51·66 + water 38·33.

A semi-hard soap from Verviers, for fulling cloth, called *savon économique*, consisted of potash 11·5 + fat (solid) 62 + water 26·5 = 100.—*Ure*.

M. Juncmann proposes to make a soap by dissolving 28 parts of soda ash in 100 parts of molasses, and stirring in 100 parts of oleic acid.

Potato Flour in Soft Soap.—In the year 1838 Sheridan (the original inventor of silicated soap) obtained a patent for making soft soap with potato flour. The proportions were: potato flour, 16 lbs.; potash leys, 100 lbs.; water, 270 lbs. How many times has the same process been, with slight modifications, re-patented!

“Liquored soaps” are such as have water (with or without silicate of soda) added to them after removal from

the pan. *Watered*, or "run" soaps are those which have water or weak leys added and mixed with the soap in the soap-pan.

Saponification of Neutral Fatty Bodies by Soaps:
By M. J. Pelouze.—One of the oldest and most skilful candle-makers in France, M. de Milly, made a series of important experiments on the saponification of fatty matters, and especially suet, by lime, in which he demonstrated that a much smaller percentage of lime than was ordinarily employed would effect the complete saponification of the fatty matter. Having reduced the percentage of lime from 15 to 8 or 9 per cent., he subsequently reduced the proportion to 4 per cent. of the fatty matter operated upon, the condition being that of subjecting the lime, water, and fatty matter to an elevated temperature. The operation was performed in a metallic boiler, which was maintained for several hours at a temperature corresponding to a pressure of 5 to 6 atmospheres.

It is easy to understand the economy of an operation which enables us to diminish to one half the quantity of sulphuric acid necessary for the decomposition of the lime soap. It appeared to me interesting to subject to an attentive examination a saponification performed with so small a quantity of a base as one twenty-fourth part of the acidified fatty matter.

I prepared a lime soap by double decomposition, by pouring a solution of chloride of calcium into an aqueous solution of commercial soap. The precipitate, when well washed, was introduced into a small Papin's digester, with nearly its own weight of water and 40 per cent. of olive oil. The vessel was kept for nearly three hours in an oil bath at a temperature of from 311° to 329° F. The water above the precipitate was evaporated, and left a syrupy residue presenting all the properties of glycerine.

The precipitate, when boiled in water acidulated with hydrochloric acid, furnished a completely acidified fatty matter; for it was directly and entirely soluble in alcohol and the alkalis. In one word, the reaction showed all the characters of the ordinary decomposition of the neu-

tral fatty matters by the free alkalies. The difference in hardness of the new lime soap being set aside (it was not so hard), one might have supposed that the saponification had been performed with caustic lime.

Another experiment was made by mixing Marseilles soap with its weight of water and one quarter of its weight of olive-oil. The temperature and operation were the same. The matter, after the reaction, had all the properties of an acid soap: it was soluble in cold alcohol and in an aqueous solution of potassa or soda. Acids separated from it a fatty substance likewise entirely soluble in cold alcohol and alkaline solutions.

It results from the double experiment, which has just been described, that soaps are as capable as alkalies of decomposing fatty bodies into glycerine and fatty acids; it will thus be understood why I have given to this note the apparently paradoxical title, *Saponification of Neutral Fatty Matters by Soaps*.

I have, moreover, ascertained that at the temperature of 329° F. water does not act on oils. To decompose them it is necessary that the mixture of fatty matters and water should attain and be maintained for a long time at the temperature of 428° F. assigned by M. Berthelot for this latter saponification.

In England, where Price's house manufactures immense quantities of stearine candles, the saponification is performed by the action of superheated steam at a still higher temperature. Thence result fatty acids and free glycerine which is nearly pure, and whence arts, manufactures, and medicine have already drawn great advantages, and which will, probably, be much increased.

In the new reactions of which we speak it will be understood that water, at a temperature of from 311° and 329° F., decomposes a neutral soap into an acid soap and very basic soap, and that the latter acts in a secondary manner on a fresh quantity of fatty matter in the same manner that a free alkali would do. The observations of M. Chevreul, relative to the action of water on soaps, accord with this explanation.

The experiment of M. Milly, which served as a foundation for my work, may be explained in an analogous manner.

It must be admitted that the saponification of suet by means of 4 per cent. of its weight of lime presents several distinct phases in which a basic or neutral soap is formed at first and is then changed into a relatively acid soap.

The observations of which I have been giving a summary find a simple interpretation in M. Chevreul's works on fatty bodies. They lead us to look forward to fresh developments in this class of numerous and important substances. When the elements of water alone cause the decomposition of neutral fatty bodies into fatty acids and glycerine, we may expect that science and industry will multiply and vary the phenomena of saponification.

Jellifying is a term applied to soap which, after being dissolved in a certain quantity of water, sets into a jelly when cold. Soap-makers frequently test the jellifying property of their soaps in this way:—After having carefully weighed 1 ounce of soap, this is cut up into thin shavings, and these are placed in a porcelain capsule; $7\frac{1}{2}$ ounces of water (by measure) are then added, and the whole gently boiled over a spirit-lamp, constantly stirring with a glass rod until the soap is all dissolved. Cold water is then added to make up 16 ounces, and the solution of soap is then set aside to cool. If the soap is of good quality it should gelatinise in half an hour. In cloth factories, and large laundries also, the character of soap is determined by its congealing or jellifying properties. For this purpose 1 cwt. of soap is boiled by steam heat in 80 gallons of water. When thoroughly dissolved, cold water is added to make up 170 gallons in all. At the end of twelve hours or so the solution of soap will have set into a jelly if the soap has been of good quality.

Twaddell's hydrometer is used in England for liquids heavier than water. Its degrees are converted into specific gravities by multiplying them by 5, adding 1,000, and dividing the sum by 1,000. Thus:—

$$\begin{array}{r} 20 \text{ Tw.} = 20 \times 5 + 1000 \\ \hline 1000 \qquad \qquad = 1.100 \end{array}$$

Twaddell's figures advance 5° in each number, thus:—

1000	specific gravity is	No.	0
1005	„	„	1
1010	„	„	2
1015	„	„	3
1020	„	„	4

and so on.

Causticising Soda.—Mr. Parnell's plan for causticising soda liquor under pressure appears to have proved very successful in practice and to have effected a considerable saving in fuel. The operation is conducted in horizontal cylinders about 7 feet in diameter and 30 feet long, provided with a revolving shaft or agitator and "cages" for holding the lime. Each charge is about 400 cubic feet of soda liquor, and takes about three and a half to four hours to causticise under a pressure of from 50 to 60 lbs. to the square inch. It is stated that 90 or 92 per cent. of the soda is causticised by this method, and the caustic liquor comes out up to 32° Twaddell. The "mud" contains from 3 to 4 per cent. of free lime. Each ton of 70 per cent. caustic soda requires 15 or 16 per cent. of lime. One apparatus turns out about 70 tons weekly. The patentee says:—"1. I treat the alkaline carbonates, or alkaline carbonates mixed with caustic lime, under a pressure greater than the ordinary atmospheric pressure, so as to obtain a sufficiently high temperature to cause the alkaline carbonate and the caustic lime to react upon each other. Thus it is possible, under pressure of 50 lbs. per square inch, to effect the reaction with a solution of 1·200 specific gravity or over. 2. I agitate the mixed alkaline carbonates and lime during treatment in the manner above described in order to facilitate the reaction and hasten its completion. 3. After the reaction has taken place I maintain the pressure upon the products, and keep the temperature constant until I have separated the caustic soda or potassa, or both, from the carbonate of lime produced, in order that the reaction may not be reversed by a reduction of temperature taking place whilst the caustic alkalis and the carbonate of lime are in contact.

Soda Soft Soap may be made from a mixture of soda

and potash leys, but the leys must be quite free from salt. The proportions recommended are: Soda ley, 1 part; potash ley, 4 parts; oleic acid, 100 lbs.; tallow, 50 lbs.; hempseed-oil, 3,750 lbs. This is said to make a good soft soap.

Half-palm Soap may be made from either of the following formulæ:—

<table border="0"> <tr> <td>1. White tallow</td> <td>900 lbs.</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Palm-oil</td> <td>400 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Cocoa-nut oil</td> <td>200 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Yellow resin</td> <td>100 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black;">1600</td> </tr> </table>	1. White tallow	900 lbs.	Palm-oil	400 "	Cocoa-nut oil	200 "	Yellow resin	100 "		1600	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>3. Lard</td> <td>550 lbs.</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Tallow</td> <td>400 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Cotton-seed oil</td> <td>450 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Resin</td> <td>200 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black;">1600</td> </tr> </table>	3. Lard	550 lbs.	Tallow	400 "	Cotton-seed oil	450 "	Resin	200 "		1600
1. White tallow	900 lbs.																				
Palm-oil	400 "																				
Cocoa-nut oil	200 "																				
Yellow resin	100 "																				
	1600																				
3. Lard	550 lbs.																				
Tallow	400 "																				
Cotton-seed oil	450 "																				
Resin	200 "																				
	1600																				
<table border="0"> <tr> <td>2. Tallow</td> <td>700 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Palm-oil</td> <td>300 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Cocoa-nut oil</td> <td>200 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Cotton-seed oil</td> <td>400 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black;">1600</td> </tr> </table>	2. Tallow	700 "	Palm-oil	300 "	Cocoa-nut oil	200 "	Cotton-seed oil	400 "		1600											
2. Tallow	700 "																				
Palm-oil	300 "																				
Cocoa-nut oil	200 "																				
Cotton-seed oil	400 "																				
	1600																				

The following formulæ, recommended by Ott*, may prove useful:—

<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Palm-oil</td> <td>300 lbs.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tallow</td> <td>200 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resin</td> <td>20 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black;">520</td> </tr> </table>	Palm-oil	300 lbs.	Tallow	200 "	Resin	20 "		520	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Palm-oil</td> <td>450 lbs.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cocoa-nut oil</td> <td>50 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black;">500</td> </tr> </table>	Palm-oil	450 lbs.	Cocoa-nut oil	50 "		500				
Palm-oil	300 lbs.																		
Tallow	200 "																		
Resin	20 "																		
	520																		
Palm-oil	450 lbs.																		
Cocoa-nut oil	50 "																		
	500																		
<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Tallow</td> <td>500 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Palm-oil</td> <td>300 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Resin</td> <td>200 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black;">1000</td> </tr> </table>	Tallow	500 "	Palm-oil	300 "	Resin	200 "		1000	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>Lard</td> <td>550 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Palm-oil</td> <td>150 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cocoa-nut oil</td> <td>50 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clarified resin</td> <td>50 "</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="border-top: 1px solid black;">800</td> </tr> </table>	Lard	550 "	Palm-oil	150 "	Cocoa-nut oil	50 "	Clarified resin	50 "		800
Tallow	500 "																		
Palm-oil	300 "																		
Resin	200 "																		
	1000																		
Lard	550 "																		
Palm-oil	150 "																		
Cocoa-nut oil	50 "																		
Clarified resin	50 "																		
	800																		

Adulteration of Commercial Silicate of Soda.—The sample in question gave on analysis, according to M. F. Jean—

Soda combined with silica	8.54
Carbonate of soda	6.36
Soda soap	2.00
Silica	21.40
Ferric oxide, alumina, and traces of lime	0.74
Alkaline chloride and sulphates	0.66
Water	60.05
Matter not determined, and loss	0.25

The sample of silicate of soda contained, therefore, 2 per cent. of anhydrous soap, but as such a solution

* "Art of Manufacturing Soap," &c. By Adolphe Ott.

forms a jelly on cooling, the object of its introduction was evidently to thicken the silicate, giving it the appearance of a very concentrated product, and to prevent its strength being taken with the hydrometer.

Soaps for Calico-printers.—The soap used by calico-printers for clearing alizarine work must be very neutral, the alkali being not only kept down in quantity, but its thorough combination with the fatty acids secured by very careful boiling. The superiority of the madder purples for which the firm of Hoyle and Sons were long famous was due to their practice of re-melting the best soaps procurable with an additional quantity of palm-oil.

Fulling Soaps.—For use in woollen manufacture a genuine potash oil-soap has been found in practice superior to all others. Resin gives harshness to the fibre of wool, so must not therefore on any account be used. Soda also injures the suppleness of the wool, so in discarding it the manufacturer follows the teachings of Nature. The natural lubricant of wool, called *suint*, is a kind of potash soap, containing a bare trace of soda. Silicates also must not be used; if present they are decomposed in the process of fulling, &c., and deposit free silica, which grates on the fibre and injures its lustre.

To prevent the boiling-over of the Copper, a piece of machinery called a "fan" is used at some soap-works. This consists of a revolving paddle furnished with blades which touch the top of the boiling matter.

Small jacket-pans may be made from the alloy of aluminium and bismuth of the Crown Aluminium Company, instead of silver, which possesses the advantage of being cheaper, harder, and less fusible than the more costly metal.

TABLE SHOWING THE PERCENTAGE OF SODA IN A CAUSTIC LYE, AT THE TEMPERATURE OF 60° FAHRENHEIT, AND THE QUANTITY OF MIXED FATS WHICH MAY BE SAPONIFIED BY THIS LYE.—*Tünnermann*.

Specific Gravity.	Degrees Baumé.	Per cent. of Soda.	Quantity of Mixed Fats which may be saponified by 100 parts of these Lyes.	Specific Gravity.	Degrees Baumé.	Per cent. of Soda.	Quantity of Mixed Fats which may be saponified by 100 parts of these Lyes
1.4285	43	30.22	379	1.2392	27	15.11	139
1.4193	42.5	29.616	274	1.228	26	14.506	134
1.4101	42	29.011	270	1.2178	25	13.901	128
1.4011	41	28.407	263	1.2058	24.5	13.297	122
1.3923	40.5	27.802	257	1.1948	23	12.692	117
1.3836	39.7	27.2	251	1.1841	22	12.088	111
1.3751	39	26.594	246	1.1734	21	11.484	105
1.3668	38.5	25.989	240	1.163	20	10.879	100
1.3686	38	25.385	235	1.1528	19	10.275	95
1.3505	38	24.78	229	1.1428	18	9.67	89
1.3426	36.7	24.176	224	1.133	17	9.066	83
1.3349	36	23.572	217	1.1233	16	8.462	78
1.3273	35	22.967	212	1.1137	15	7.857	72
1.3198	34.5	22.363	206	1.1042	13.5	7.253	66
1.3143	34.2	21.894	202	1.0948	12	6.648	61
1.3125	34	21.758	201	1.0855	11	6.044	55
1.3053	33.5	21.154	195	1.0764	10	5.44	50
1.2982	33	20.55	190	1.0675	9	4.835	44
1.2912	32.4	19.945	184	1.0587	7	4.231	39
1.2843	31.6	19.341	179	1.05	6	3.626	33
1.2775	31	18.73	173	1.0414	5.6	3.022	28
1.2708	30.5	18.132	167	1.033	4.2	2.418	22
1.2642	30	17.518	162	1.0246	3	1.813	16
1.2573	29	16.923	156	1.0163	2	1.209	11
1.2515	28.5	16.319	151	1.0081	1	0.604	5.5
1.2453	28	15.714	145				

TABLE SHOWING THE PERCENTAGE OF ANHYDROUS CAUSTIC POTASH IN A LEY AT 60° FAHR., AND THE QUANTITY OF MIXED FATS WHICH MAY BE SAPONIFIED BY IT.—*Tünnermann.*

Specific Gravity.	Approximate Value in Degrees Baumé. :	Per Cent. of Anhydrous Caustic Potash.	Quantity (in weight) of Mixed Fats, which may be saponified by 100 parts (in weight) of these leys.
1.3300	36	28.290	170
1.3131	34	27.158	163
1.2966	33	26.027	156
1.2803	32	24.895	150
1.2648	30	23.764	142
1.2493	28	22.632	136
1.2342	27	21.5	129
1.2268	26	20.935	125
1.2122	25	19.803	119
1.1979	23	18.671	112
1.1839	22	17.54	105
1.1702	21	16.408	98
1.1568	19	15.277	92
1.1437	18	14.145	85
1.1308	17	13.013	78
1.1182	15	11.882	71
1.1059	14	10.750	64
1.0938	12	9.619	58
1.0819	11	8.487	51
1.0703	10	7.355	43
1.0589	7	6.214	37
1.0478	6	5.022	30
1.0369	5	3.961	24
1.0260	3	2.829	17
1.0153	2	1.697	10
1.0050	1	0.5658	3.4

COMPARATIVE FRENCH AND ENGLISH THERMOMETER SCALES. :

French, or Centigrade. 0 Cent. or C.	equals	English, or Fahrenheit. 32 Fahr. or F.
5	"	41
10	"	50
15	"	59
20	"	68
25	"	77
30	"	86
35	"	95
40	"	104
45	"	113
50	"	122
55	"	131
60	"	140

COMPARATIVE FRENCH AND ENGLISH THERMOMETER SCALES—(continued).

French, or Centigrade. 65 Cent. or C.	equals	English, or Fahrenheit. 149 Fahr. or F.
70	"	158
75	"	167
80	"	176
85	"	185
90	"	194
95	"	203
100	" (Water boils)	212 " (Water boils)-
200	"	392
300	"	572
356	" (Mercury boils)	662 " (Mercury boils)-

TABLE SHOWING THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY CORRESPONDING WITH THE DEGREES OF BAUMÉ'S HYDROMETER.

Liquids denser than Water.

De- grees.	Specific Gravity.	De- grees.	Specific Gravity.	De- grees.	Specific Gravity.
0	1.0000	26	1.2063	52	1.5200
1	1.0066	27	1.2160	53	1.5353
2	1.0133	28	1.2258	54	1.5510
3	1.0201	29	1.2358	55	1.5671
4	1.0270	30	1.2459	56	1.5833
5	1.0340	31	1.2562	57	1.6000
6	1.0411	32	1.2667	58	1.6170
7	1.0483	33	1.2773	59	1.6344
8	1.0556	34	1.2881	60	1.6522
9	1.0630	35	1.2992	61	1.6705
10	1.0704	36	1.3103	62	1.6889
11	1.0780	37	1.3217	63	1.7079
12	1.0857	38	1.3333	64	1.7273
13	1.0935	39	1.3451	65	1.7471
14	1.1014	40	1.3571	66	1.7674
15	1.1095	41	1.3694	67	1.7882
16	1.1176	42	1.3818	68	1.8095
17	1.1259	43	1.3945	69	1.8313
18	1.1343	44	1.4074	70	1.8537
19	1.1428	45	1.4206	71	1.8765
20	1.1515	46	1.4339	72	1.9000
21	1.1603	47	1.4476	73	1.9241
22	1.1692	48	1.4615	74	1.9487
23	1.1783	49	1.4758	75	1.9740
24	1.1875	50	1.4902	76	2.0000
25	1.1968	51	1.4951		

TABLE SHOWING THE SPECIFIC GRAVITY CORRESPONDING WITH THE DEGREES OF BAUMÉ'S HYDROMETER.

Liquids lighter than Water.

Degrees.	Specific Gravity.	Degrees.	Specific Gravity.
10	1·0000	36	0·8488
11	0·9932	37	0·8439
12	0·9865	38	0·8391
13	0·9799	39	0·8343
14	0·9733	40	0·8295
15	0·9669	41	0·8249
16	0·9605	42	0·8202
17	0·9542	43	0·8156
18	0·9480	44	0·8111
19	0·9420	45	0·8066
20	0·9359	46	0·8022
21	0·9300	47	0·7978
22	0·9241	48	0·7935
23	0·9183	49	0·7892
24	0·9125	50	0·7849
25	0·9068	51	0·7807
26	0·9012	52	0·7766
27	0·8957	53	0·7725
28	0·8902	54	0·7684
29	0·8848	55	0·7643
30	0·8795	56	0·7604
31	0·8742	57	0·7656
32	0·8690	58	0·7526
33	0·8639	59	0·7487
34	0·8588	60	0·7449
35	0·8538	61	0·7411

TABLE OF ESSENTIAL OILS.

Nams. ☞	Colour.	Nams.	Colour.
Oil of absinthe (worm-wood)	green	Oil of mugwort	yellow
„ dill	yellow	„ elecampane	white
„ anise	„	„ badiane	yellow
„ ache, or parsley	„	„ angelica	„
		„ Portugal	„

TABLE OF ESSENTIAL OILS—(continued).

Name.	Colour.	Name.	Colour.
Oil of cinnamon	yellow	Oil of yarrow	blue and green
„ chamomile	blue	„ marjoram	yellow
„ cajeput	green	„ mustard	deep brown
„ cascarrilla	yellow	„ nutmeg	yellow
„ caraway	„	„ neroli	orange
„ chervil	lemon yel-	„ pennyroyal	yellow
„ lemon	low	„ rosemary	white
„ cochlearia	yellowish	„ sage	green
„ coriander	„	„ saffron	yellow
„ cumin	white	„ sassafras	„
„ dittany	yellow	„ turpentine	white
„ fennel	brown	„ thyme	yellow or pale green
„ galangal	white	„ rose	white
„ genista	yellow	„ valerian	green
„ juniper	„	„ pimento	slightly yellow
„ ginger	green	„ rhodium	yellow
„ cloves	yellow	„ savin	limpid
„ hyssop	„	„ tansy	yellow
„ lavender	„	„ rue	yellow-green
„ cherry laurel	„	„ bergamot	yellow
„ crisp mint	white	„ serpolet (lemon thyme)	light brown
„ peppermint	„		
„ balm mint	„		
„ motherwort	blue		

FUSING AND CONGEALING POINTS OF FATS AND OILS.

Substance.	Degrees Fahrenheit.
Castor and poppy oils freeze at	0 or Zero.
Walnut-oil freezes	15°
Oil of beechnuts freezes	29°
Almond-oil congeals	30°
Olive-oil freezes	36°
Horses' fat fuses	55°
Cocoa-nut oil solidifies	70°
Lard fuses	74°·5
Oil of roses and oil of cedar-wood solidify at	79°
Lard melts	at 97°
Spermaceti fuses	107°
Palm-oil melts	117 $\frac{1}{2}$ °
Margarine fuses	120°
Tallow fuses	127°
Bees'-wax fuses	150°
Stearine melts	158°
Resin becomes soft	160°
Dammara resin fuses	164°

KURTEN'S TABLE

SHOWING THE COMPOSITION AND PRODUCT OF SOAP BY THE COLD PROCESS FROM CONCENTRATED LEY AND MIXTURE OF COCOA-NUT OIL WITH PALM-OIL, LARD, AND TALLOW.

Soap.	Tallow.	Cocoa-nut Oil.	Palm Oil.	Lard.	Ley.	Degrees.	Salt Water.	Degrees.	Potash.	Degree.	Product.
Cocoa-nut oil No. 1	20	100	"	"	56	36	"	"	"	"	153
Paris toilet, round	"	30	"	8	31	36	"	"	5	36	87
" " "	"	25	"	75	50·52	36	"	"	"	"	150
Windsor, square	66	34	"	"	77	30	"	"	13	30	185
Shaving No. 1	66	34	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
	or	or	"	"	120	27	"	"	"	"	214
Shaving No. 2	33	34	33	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
	33	34	33	"	120	27	12	12	"	"	224
Washing No. 1	60	40	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
	or	or	"	"	125	27	25	12	"	"	244
" No. 2	30	40	30	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
	40	60	"	"	135	27	50	15	"	"	278
Ordinary cocoa-oil	"	100	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
	or	or	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
	10	90	"	"	225	21	75	12	"	"	400
	or	90	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
			10	"	"	"	"	"	"	"	"

BOILING POINTS OF SOME VOLATILE OILS.

Substance.	Degrees Fahrenheit.
Oil of sassafras begins to boil at	223
" tar (creosote) begins to boil at	280
" amber boils at	284
" hyssop "	289·4
" grass "	297
" garlic "	302
" coriander "	302
" elemi "	345
" bitter almonds boils at	350
" thyme boils at	356
" orange-peel boils at	356

BOILING POINTS OF CAUSTIC ALKALINE LEYS.

Alkaline Ley.	Specific Gravity.	Percentage of Alkali.	Boils at Degrees Fahrenheit.
Soda	1.18	13	217
Potash....	1.23	19.5	220
Soda	1.23	16	220
Potash....	1.28	23.4	224
Soda	1.29	19	224
Soda	1.32	23	228
Potash....	1.33	26.3	229
Soda	1.36	26	235
Soda	1.40	29	242
Potash....	1.42	34.4	246
Soda	1.47	34	255
Potash....	1.44	36.8	255
Soda	1.5	36.8	265
Potash....	1.52	42.9	276
Potash....	1.6	46.7	290
Soda	1.63	46.6	300
Potash....	1.68	51.2	329

TABLE SHOWING THE QUANTITY OF CAUSTIC SODA IN LEYS OF DIFFERENT DENSITIES (WATER 1000).

Specific Gravity.	Soda Per Cent.	Specific Gravity.	Soda Per Cent.
1.00	0.00	1.22	20.66
1.02	2.07	1.24	22.58
1.04	4.02	1.26	24.47
1.06	5.89	1.28	26.33
1.08	7.69	1.30	28.16
1.10	9.43	1.32	29.96
1.12	11.10	1.34	31.67
1.14	12.81	1.35	32.40
1.16	14.73	1.36	33.08
1.18	16.73	1.38	34.41
1.20	18.71		

TABLE OF THE MECHANICAL POWER OF STEAM.

Pressures.		Tempera- ture in Degrees of Fahrenheit.	Pressures.		Tempera- ture in Degrees of Fahrenheit.
Atmo- sphere.	Pounds per square inch.		Atmo- sphere.	Pounds per square inch.	
1·00	14·70	212·00	4·50	66·15	300·27
1·25	18·38	223·88	5·00	73·50	307·94
1·50	22·05	234·32	6·00	88·20	320·00
1·75	25·72	242·78	7·00	102·90	331·56
2·00	29·40	250·79	8·00	119·60	340·83
2·25	33·08	257·90	9·00	132·30	351·32
2·50	36·75	263·93	10·00	147·00	359·60
2·75	40·42	269·87	12·50	183·75	377·42
3·00	44·10	275·00	15·00	220·50	392·90
3·25	47·78	279·86	17·50	257·25	406·40
3·50	51·45	284·63	20·00	294·00	418·56
3·75	55·12	288·66	25·00	367·50	499·34
4·00	58·18	292·91	30·00	441·00	457·16

INDEX.

- A** BSINTHE, oil of, 241
Ache, or parsley, oil of, 241
Acid, arsenious, 174
 henzoic, 175
 boracic, 181
 carbolic, 124, 175
 carbonic, 8
 chromic, 27
 coccinic, 8
 elaiodic, 27
 hydrochloric, 203
 hyponitrous, 27
 margaric, 8
 margaritic, 27
 muriatic, 92
 nitric, 26
 nitrous, 230
 oleic, 8
 palmitic, 8
 pyroligneous, 219
 ricinic, 27
 salicylic, 175
 stearic, 10
 sulphuric, 29
 tannic, 175
 tartaric, 203
 terebic, 231
 test, 189
 thymic, 124
Acids, fatty, 8
Adulterations of commercial silicate of
 soda, 237
Albumen, 219
Alcohol, 9
Alizarine, 121
Alkali, 10
 carbonated, 28
 caustic, 9, 44
Alkalies, 29
 samples of, 193
Alkalimeter, 188
 Bink's, 190
 Mohr's, 190
Alkalimetry, 188
Alkalins ley, 9
 leys, boiling-points of, 244
 to prepare, 33
Alkanet root, 172
Almond cream, 165
 oil soap, 152
Almonds, bitter oil of, 166
Altenburge's resin soap, 226
Alum, 69, 94
Alumina, 41
 silicate of, 109
 sulphate of, 69
Aluminate of soda, 229
 soap, 230
Alumino-ferruginous soap, 41
Allan's process for recovery of gly-
 cerine, 219
Amberette, lard with, 159
Ambergris, 159
 oil of, 150
 soap, 159
American potash, 128
Ammonia, liquid, 177
 and camphor soaps, 176, 180
Analyses of soft soaps, 231
Analysing or assaying soaps, 201
Anderson's process for treatment of
 nigers, 72
Angelica, oil of, 241
Anhydrous soda, 189
Aniline, fast red, 158
Animal oil, 130
 soap, 125
 tissues, 124
Anise, oil of, 241
Anthracene salt, 185

- Antimonial soap, 173
 Antimony, golden sulphuret of, 173
 Apparatus and appliances, 16
 barring, 23
 for re-melting the soap, 140
 Archil, tincture of, 170
 Areometer, 228
 Arsenical soap, 174
 Arsenious acid, 174
 Ash, black, 41
 soda, 29, 93
 Assay, of soap, 201
 alkalies, 194
 Assaying alkalies, 194
 D'Arcet's method, 205
 Rampel's method, 204
 Richardson and Watt's method, 206
 soaps, 201
 Assays, commercial, 195
 Australian tallow, 26, 53

BADIANE, oil of, 241
 Balm mint, oil of, 242
 Balsam of Peru, 162
 Tolu, 162
 Balling, 156
 Balls, sand, 164
 scouring, 227
 wash, 161
 Bankmann's process, 184
 Barilla, 2, 29, 93
 Barium, chloride of, 199
 Barring apparatus, 23
 Baryta, carbonate of, 199
 Bauxite, 229
 Beech-nut oil, 28, 242
 Beef marrow, 83
 Bees'-wax, fusing-point of, 242
 Belgian soap, 136
 soft or green soap, 231
 Benzoic acid, 175
 soap, 175
 Benzoin soap, 153
 tincture of, 153
 Benzole, nitro, 86
 Bennett and Gibbs's process, 117
 Benno, Jappé, and Co.'s method of re-
 covering glycerine, 222
 Bergamot, essential oil of, 149, 242
 Bernardet's process, 124
 Besson and Remy's process, 182
 Bicarbonate of potassa, 176
 soda, 93
 Bichford's process, 187
 Bichromate of potash, 26, 92
 potassa, 200

 Bink's alkalimeter, 190
 Binocalate of potash, 139
 Bitter almond soaps, 150
 almonds, oil of, 150
 Black ash, 41
 garden poppy oil, 44
 ivory, 167
 resin, 177
 soap, 172, 174
 Bleached palm-oil, 49
 Bleaching, Watt's chrome process,
 208, 209
 palm-oil with chromate of lime,
 211
 powder, 112
 soap in the pan, 115
 Blue, Prussian, 52
 Boiling, 56, 64
 over, to prevent, 238.
 points of caustic alkaline leys, 243
 points of some volatile oils, 224
 to "strength," 72
 Bole, 163
 Bone-fat, 123
 grease, 28
 Boracic acid, 181
 Borax, 139
 soap, 180
 soap-powder, 227
 soft soap, 227
 toilet soap, 175
 Bordhardt's herb soap, 174
 Bran, 69, 175
 soap, 175
 Bromine, 175
 Brown ochre, 157
 oil, 85
 soap from, 85, 139
 Spanish, 150
 Windsor soap, 150
 Burette, 189
 Bink's, 190
 Mohr's, 190
 Burnt sienna, 153
 Butter, cocoa, 73

CACAO, oil of, 166
 Cadmium yellow, 158
 Cajeput, oil of, 242
 Calcined flint, 98
 quartz, 98
 soda, 111
 Calcium carbonate, 220
 Caldron, 81
 Camphine, 180
 Camphor, 162
 and ammonia soaps, 180

- Camphor, savonnattes of, 162
ice soap, 175
- Caramel, 151
- Carbolic acid, 124, 175
soap, 173
- Carbonate of baryta, 199
lime, 23
potash, 100
soda, 28
- Carbonated alkali, 28, 92
leys, 121
of potassa, 12
- Carbonic acid, 8
- Caraway, oil of, 150, 242
- Cascarilla, oil of, 242
- Castile soap, 8, 36, 161
- Castor-oil, 27
oil soap, 175
- Cassia, 86
powdered, 151
- Caustic alkali, 9, 44
alkaline leys, boiling-points of, 244
ley, atrong, 82
leys, 32, 121
lime, 233
potasaa, 12
soda, 8, 29
- Causticising soda, 236
- Cedar wood, oil of, 242
- Cerates, 36
- Chalk, 29
French, 180
prepared, 173
- Chamomile, oil of, 242
- Charcoal, ground, 100
- Cheap almond soap, 231
- Cheapened soaps, 96, 105
- Chervil, oil of, 242
- Cherry laurel, oil of, 242
- Chevreur's discovery, 3
theory, 7
- Cbina clay, 31, 105
in soap, 109
- Chlorate of potash, 181
potassium, 198
- Chloride of barium, 199
lime, 112
potassium, 13
soda, 85, 112, 114
sodium, 13
- Chloridised sanitary soap, 112
- Chlorinated soap, 113
- Chromate of lime, 208
bleaching palm-oil with, 211
- Chrome, recovery of, 210
- Chromic acid, 27, 208
- Chromic oxide, 220
- Chromium, oxide of, 210
sesquioxide of, 219
- Cinnamon, essential oil of, 149, 242
soap, 150
tincture of, 162
- Citronella, oil of, 157, 242
- Clarified resin, 237
- Clay, China, 31, 105
pipe, 111
- Cleansing, 60
- Cleaver's process, 186
- Clolus's method of recovering glycerine, 220
- Cloth manufacture, soap used in, 223
- Cloves, essential oil of, 149, 242
powder of, 150
- Cochlearia, oil of, 242
- Cocinic acid, 8
- Cocoa butter, 73
nut oil, 27, 73, 75
soaps, 71, 74, 75, 77
oil, 75
- Cocos nucifera, 27
- Coction, 43
leys of, 63
- Coke, ground, 100
- Cold process (Hawes's), 79
soap, 133
soft ley, 46
- Coleseed oil, 42, 130
- Colophony, 28, 177
- Colza oil, 28, 130
- Combined soaps, 115
- Commercial assays, 195
aoda, 197
- Common salt, 10
- Comparative French and English
thermometer scales, 239
- Composition of pure olive-oil soap, 50
- Continental method of making yellow
soap, 62
- Continental soaps, 135
- Cooling worm, 68
- Copper or soap-pan, 17
- Copperas, green, 41
- Coriander, oil of, 242
- Corn-meal soap, 175
- Corrosive sublimate, 172
- Cotton-seed oil, 28
- Cream, almond, 165
of whitening, 220
- Creams, soap, 166
- Crème ambroisie, 166
de cacao mousseuse, 166
- Creosote, 124
- Crevel's process, 126

- Crisp mint, oil of, 242
 Croton oil, 175
 soap, 175
 Crude glycerine, 218
 soda, 43
 soft soda, 43
 Crutch, steam, 16, 20
 Crutchea, 16, 20
 "Crutched in," 20
 Crutching-pot, 20
 spindle, 21
 Crysolite, 229
 Crystals, soda, 88
 Cumin, oil of, 242
 Curb, 17
 iron, 132
 Curd soap, 39
 white, 53
 stiff, 101
 Cutting machine, 24
 soap, 127, 146
 into shavings, 156
 "Cutting the pan," 38
- DALTON'S** theory, 189
 Dammara resin, 242
 D'Arcet's method of assaying, 205
 Davis's process, 111
 Descroizelle's invention of the alkali-
 meter, 188
 Detection of resin in soap, 232
 Detergent mixture, 98
 Dextrine, 160, 174
 Diachylon plaster, 8
 Dill, oil of, 241
 Disinfecting mixture, 112
 soap, 112, 124
 Dittany, oil of, 242
 Douglas's improvements, 109
 Dresden palm soap, 226
 Dry white soap, 170
 Dunn's method of purifying oils, 213
 process, 105
 of marking soaps, 187
- EARTH-NUT** oil, 42
 Effloresced soda, 93
 Elaine, 25, 27
 Elaiodic acid, 27
 Elais guineaensis, 27
 melanococca, 27
 Elder-flower soap, 160
 Elecampane, oil of, 241
 English soft soap, 135
 tallow, 209
 Essence de savon Corinthe, 170
 de savon Vienne, 169
- Essence of soap, 169
 Essential oil of bergamot, 149, 242
 oil of cinnamon, 149, 242
 oil of cloves, 149, 242
 oil of rose, 149, 242
 oils, table of, 241
 Ether, 232
- FANCY** soaps, 140
 Farina, 161
 Farriers' soap, 174
 Fat acid, 87
 bone, 123
 hogs', 26
 horses', 242
 Wakefield, 86
 Yorkshire, 28
- Fats**, 26
 and oils, Justice's method of puri-
 fying, 213
 Dunn's method, 213
 fusing and congealing points of,
 242
- Fatty acids, 8, 41
 Fecula, 202
 Felspar, ground, 100
 Fennel, oil of, 162, 242
 Ferric oxide, 237
 Finishing the soap, 39, 61
 First ley, 129
 soap patent, 2
 Fish-oils, 8, 28, 212
 Fitted soaps, 14, 61
 Fitting, 55, 64, 71
 the soap, 91
 Flint, calcined, 98
 Floating soaps, 11
 savonnettes, 163
 Flocculæ, gelatinous, 11
 Flour, potato, 187
 Foam or fob, black, 47
 Frames, 19
 iron, 16, 19
 soap, 20
 wooden, 16, 19
- Free alkali, 34
 French chalk, 180
 cocoa-nut oil soaps, 77
 formulæ for soaps, 49
 marbled soaps, 42
 system of making toilet soaps, 154
 toilet soaps, 154
- Fresh vat, 32
 Fuller's earth soap, 109
 Fulling soap, 138, 238
 Fusing and congealing points of fats
 and oils, 242

- CALANGAL**, oil of, 242
Gall, ox, 227
Gamboge, 153
Gauging stick, 24
Gelatinous flocculæ, 11
Genista, oil of, 242
Gentile's process, 137
Geranium, oil of, 157
Gilliflower, powder of, 150
Ginger grass, oil of, 162
 oil of, 242
Glass liquor, 114
 soluble, 30
Glauber's salt, 31
Gluten, 122
 in soap, 122
Glycerine, 7, 10, 14
 Allan's, 219
 Benno, Jappé, & Co.'s, 222
 Clolus's, 220
 crude, 218
 Lawson and Sulman's, 219
 O'Farrell's, 218
 Payne's, 216
 recovery of, 215
 soap, 160
 Thomas and Fuller's, 218
 Versmann's, 217
 Young's process, 215
Glyceryl, oxide of, 10
Golden sulphuret of antimony, 173
Goose-fat, 8
Gossage's processes, 99
Grain, soap, 11
Gravimetric assaying, 189
Grease, bone, 25, 28
 horse, 25, 28
 recovered, 28
 soap, 69
Green copperas, 41
 vitriol, 44
Ground charcoal, 100
 coke, 100
 felspar, 100
 suet, 161
Gum tragacanth, 158
Guppy's process, 106
HALF-resin soap, 176, 183
 Hampel's shaving soap, 178
Hand pumps, 22
Hard soaps, 8, 29, 36, 58, 71
 or unsalted soaps for milling
 cloth, 224
Hawes's system (cold process), 79
Hempseed oil, 28, 130
Higgins's process, 183
Hogs' fat, 26
 lard, 151
Holland soft soap, 134
Honey, 163
 savonnettes, 162
Horse-grease, 28
 oil, 8
Horses' fat, fusing-point of, 242
Hydrate of potassa, 196
 soda, 189
Hydrochloric acid, 203
Hydrometer, Baumé's, 37, 240
 Twaddell's, 235
Hyponitrous acid, 27
Hyssop, oil of, 242
ICELAND moss, 139
 Indigo, 134
Instantaneous soap, 94
Intestines, soap made from, 124
Iodine, 174
 soap, 175
Irish moss soap, 175
Iron curb, 132
 frames, 19
 oxide, 45
 pans, 17
 peroxide of, 41
 pumps, 16
 rake, 51
 salts of, 46
 sulphate of, 41
 sulphuret of, 41
Ivory black, 157
JACKET-PANS, 238
Jacobson's process, 137
Jasmine pomade, 159
Jeyes's process, 185
Jennings's processes, 176
Juice, lemon, 178
Juniper, oil of, 242
 tar, 173
**Justice's method of purifying and
bleaching oils and fats**, 213
KAOLIN, 31, 109
Kelp, 29, 93
Kettle, 17, 225
Kitchen-stuff, 28
 waste, 28
Kottula's soaps, 94
Kürten's table, 243
LADLES, 16
Lard, hogs', 26, 151
 soap by cold process, 88
 with amberette, 159

- Lard with lettuce, 159
 vanilla, 158
- Laundry soaps, 82
- Lavender, oil of, 150, 242
 water, 169
- Lawson and Sulman's process for re-
 covering glycerine, 219
- Lead, margarate of, 8
 oxide of, 8
 red, 145
- Leblanc's process for making soda, 3
- Lemon grass, oil of, 160
 juice, 178
 oil of, 153, 242
 soap, 160
- Latuce, lard with, 159
 soap, 159
- Levat's process, 178
- Lewis's process, 179
- Ley, alkaline, 9
 caustic, 9
 cold soft, 46
 potassa, 13
 soda, 33
 soft, 44
 strong, 129
 tanks, 16, 19, 32
- Leys, caustic, 32, 121
 of coction, 63
 potash, 128
 salted, 46
 soda, 33
 spent, 38, 215
 waste, 22
- Lichen, 178
- Liebig's researches, 10
- Lime, 8, 33
 carbonate of, 23
 chlorida of, 112
 chromata of, 208
 liquor, 94
 milk of, 129
 slaked, 23, 33
 soap, 84, 116
 " Lungs's method of making,
 116
 sulphate of, 84
 waste, 23
- Liniments, 36
- Linseed oil, 28, 130
- Liquid ammonia, 177
 glycerine soap, 173
 soaps, Scharf's, 186
- Liquor, lime, 94
- Liquored soaps, 232
- Litharge, 8
- Litmus, 197
- London "Crown soap," 133
 mottled, 50
 soap-powder, 227
 tallow, 26
- Lumbarton's process, 124
- M**ACHINE, barring, 23
 cutting, 24
 for slicing soap, 142
 for stamping soap, 147
- Magnolia, oil of, 174
- Maize flour, 175
- Making oleic soaps, 93
- Manganese, oxide of, 94
- Manufacture of hard soaps, 36, 58, 71
 of soft soaps, 128, 136
 of toilet soaps, 140
- Marble savonnettes, 163
- Margarate, 10
 of lead, 8
- Margaric acid, 8
- Margarine, 25, 37
- Marine soap, 73
- Marjoram, oil of, 162, 242
- Marrow, beef, 83
- Marseilles soap, 36
- Marsh's, Sir H., sulphur soap, 171
- Marshmallow soap, 153
- Materials used in soap-making, 25
- Matters, membranous, 124
- Meat, residuum of, 125
- Medicated soaps, 172
 tar soap, 173
- Medicinal soft soap, 172
- Meinicke's process, 68
- Membranous matters, 124
- Mercurial ointment, 175
 soap, 172, 175
- Mercury, 105
 bath, 119
- Metallic soap, 8, 40
- Methods of analysing and assaying
 soaps, 201
 D'Arcet's, 205
 of preparing leys, Tennant &
 Co.'s, 33
 Rampel's, 204
 Richardson and Watt's, 206
- Methylated spirit, 203, 218
- Milk of lime, 129
- Mineral, orange, 153
- Minium, 159
- Mint, oil of, 153
- Miscellaneous processes, 176, 223
 Bastet's process, 181
 Besson and Remy's process, 182
 Bichford's process, 187

- Cleaver's process, 186
 Cooper and Smith's process, 180
 Dunn's process, 187
 Hampel's process, 178
 Higgins's process, 183
 Jennings's processes, 176
 Jeyes's process, 185
 Levat's process, 178
 Lewis's process, 179
 Lorbury's process, 186
 Mackay and Sellers's process, 181
 Marriott's, Mrs., process, 179
 Payne's process, 184
 Rowbottom's process, 180
 Scharr's process, 186
 Symons's process, 124
 Tardani's process, 182
 Varicas's process, 185
 Violet's process, 178
 Waller's process, 179
 M. Loch's soft soap, 139
 Mohr's alkalimeter, 190
 Molasses, 232
 Morfit's steam series, 16
 system of soap-making, 86
 Moss, Iceland, 139
 soap, Irish, 125
 Motherwort, oil of, 242
 Mottled soap, 8, 50
 Mottling, 47
 notes on, 48
 Mrs. Marriott's process, 179
 Mugwort, oil of, 241
 Muriatic acid, 92
 Musk soap, 150
 tincture of, 158
 Mustard, oil of, 242
 Mutton tallow, 160
 Myrtle, oil of, 162
- NAPLES** soap, 165
 Naphthaline yellow, 160
 Neroli, oil of, 162, 242
 savonnettes of, 162
 Neutral fatty bodies, saponification of, 232
 Neutral soap, 88, 233
 New process of saponification, 120
 Niger, or Nigre, 40
 Nigers, treatment of, 71
 Nitric acid, 26, 178
 Nitro-benzol, 86
 Nitrous acid, 130
 Notes on mottling, 48
 useful, and tables, 228
 Normandy's method of assaying, 196
 process, 96
- Nut, cocoa, oil, 8, 27
 palm, oil, 8, 25, 26
 Nutmeg oil, 242
- OATMEAL** soap, 175
 Ochre, 202
 brown, 150, 157
 yellow, 157
 O'Farrell's process for recovering, glycerine, 218
- Oil, almond, 242
 animal, 130
 beechnut, 28
 black garden poppy, 44
 bleached palm, 49
 brown, 84
 castor, 27
 cocoa-nut, 8, 27, 75
 cod, 130
 coleseed, 42, 130
 colza, 28, 130
 cotton-seed, 28
 croton, 175
 earth-nut, 42
 fish, 8, 28
 hempsed, 130
 horse, 8
 linseed, 28, 130
 olive, 8, 25, 130
 palm, 8, 25, 26
 palm-nut, 161
 petroleum, 175
 poppy, 28, 130
 rapeseed, 26, 130
 raw palm, 75
 red, 83
 seal, 130
 sesame, 26, 161
 sesamum, 28
 sperm, 133
 tallow, 25, 161
 turpentine, 68
 vegetable, 130
 volatile, 243
 walnut, 242
 whale, 130
 yellow cocoa-nut, 158
 of absinthe, 241
 of ache or parsley, 241
 of ambergris, 150
 of angelica, 241
 of anise, 241
 of badiane, 241
 of balm mint, 242
 of beechnuts, 242
 of bergamot, 242
 of bitter almonds, 150
 of cacao, 166

- Oil of cajeput, 242
 of caraway, 152, 242
 of cascarilla, 242
 of cedar-wood, 242
 of chamomile, 242
 of cherry laurel, 242
 of chervil, 242
 of cinnamon, 242
 of citronella, 157
 of cloves, 242
 of cochlearia, 242
 of coriander, 242
 of crisp mint, 242
 of cumin, 242
 of dill, 241
 of dittany, 242
 of elecampane, 241
 of fennel, 162, 242
 of galangal, 242
 of genista, 242
 of geranium, 157
 of ginger, 242
 of ginger grass, 162
 of hyssop, 242
 of juniper, 242
 of lavender, 150, 242
 of lemon grass, 160
 of magnolia, 174
 of marjoram, 242
 of mint, 153
 of motherwort, 242
 of mugwort, 241
 of mustard, 242
 of myrtle, 162
 of neroli, 149, 242
 of nutmeg, 242
 of orange-peel, 160
 of pennyroyal, 242
 of peppermint, 242
 of pimento, 242
 of Portugal, 241
 of rhodium, 242
 of rose, 242
 of rosemary, 242
 of rue, 242
 of saffron, 242
 of sage, 242
 of sassafras, 242
 of savin, 242
 of serpolet, 242
 of sweet almonds, 152
 of tansy, 242
 of thyme, 242
 of turpentine, 242
 of valerian, 242
 of verbena, 153
 of wild thyme, 162
 of wormwood, 162
- Oil of yarrow, 242
 Oils and fats, 25
 congealing-points of, 243
 essential, table of, 242
 fish, 212
 purifying, 212, 213
 Oleate of soda, 7, 84
 Oleic acid, 8, 50
 soaps, 93
 Oleine, 8, 28
 Oleometer, 238
 Olive-oil, 8, 25, 130
 Orange mineral, 153
 flower soap, 149, 150
 powder, 162
 soap, 160
 Orangine, 178
 Origin of soap-making, 1
 Orris root, 158, 161
 Osmogene, 218
 Otto of roses, 172
 Ox-gall soap, 227
 Oxide, chromic, 220
 ferric, 237
 of chromium, 210
 of glyceryl, 10
 of iron, 45
 of lead, 8
 of manganese, 94
 Oxidising agent, 181
- P**ALE soap, 60
 Palmine, 27
 Palmitic acid, 8
 Palmitine, 7
 Palm-oil, 26, 130
 bleaching, by C. Watt's process,
 209
 Palm soap, 157
 Violet's, 178
 Pans, iron, 16
 jacket, 238
 soap, 17
 Papin's digester, 62, 233
 Paraffin soap, 175
 Parchment, vegetable, 139
 Paris toilet soaps, 156
 Paste, lime, 32
 shaving, 168
 Pasting, 129
 Payne's process, 84
 process for recovery of glycerine,
 216
 Pearlash, 111
 Pearlashes, testing, 198
 Pearl soap, 166
 Pennyroyal, oil of, 242
 Peppermint, oil of, 242

- Peroxide of iron, 41
 Peru, balsam of, 162
 Petroleum oil, 175
 soap, 175
 Bastet's process, 181
 Pickling soap, 228
 Pigment, yellow green, 159
 Pimento, oil of, 242
 Pipeclay, 111
 Plaster, diachylon, 8
 Plasters, 36
 Plastic soap, 11
 Platinum, dichloride of, 207
 Pomade, rose, 158
 Poppy oil, 25, 28
 Portugal, oil of, 241
 Potash, 30
 American, 128
 bichromate, 92
 binoxalate, 139
 carbonate, 100
 chlorate of, 181
 ley, preparation of, 128
 leys, 128
 Russian, 186
 silicate of, 100
 soap, 13, 128
 soaps, 8, 99
 stearate of, 132
 Potassa, 13
 bicarbonate of, 176
 bichromate of, 220
 carbonated, 12
 caustic, 12
 ley, 13
 silicate of, 30, 96
 Potassium, chlorate of, 198
 chloride, 13
 Potato-flour, 187
 in soap, 108
 in soft soap, 232
 Pot, crutching, 21
 Powder, bleaching, 112
 borax soap, 223, 227
 London soap, 223, 227
 orange, 162
 of cloves, 150
 of gilliflower, 150
 of pale roses, 150
 Powdered cassia, 151
 orris-root, 158
 resin, 69
 soap, 168
 Preparation of soda ley, 33
 potash ley, 100
 resin soap, 64
 silicate of soda, 100
 Preparation of silicate of potash, 100
 test-acid or standard solution, 192
 Prepared chalk, 173
 Process, cold, 79
 Processes for the recovery of glycerine, 215
 Allan's, 219
 Benno, Jappé, and Co.'s, 222
 Clolus's, 220
 Lawson and Sulman's, 219
 O'Farrell's, 218
 Payne's, 216
 Thomas and Fuller's, 218
 Versmann's, 217
 Young's, 215
 Prussian blue, 52
 Pumice, 164
 Pumps, iron, 16
 Punner, 129
 Pure olive-oil soap, 36
 Purifying and bleaching fats and oils, 213
 Pyroligneous acid, 219
 Pyroxylic spirit, 174

QUANTITY of resin in soap, to determine, 230
 Quartz, 30
 calcined, 98
 Quicklime, 33

RAMPPEL'S method of assaying soaps, 204
 Rancid tallow, 58
 Rapeseed oil, 26, 130
 Raw palm-oil, 75
 Recovered grease, 28
 Recovery of chrome, C. Watt, junior's, process, 210
 glycerine, 215
 Rectified spirit, 172
 Red lead, 145
 oil, 83
 Re-melting the soap, 144
 Rendered tallow, 53
 Resin, 8, 28
 black, 177
 clarified, 237
 Dammara, 242
 in soap, detection of, 232
 powdered, 69
 soap, 58
 preparation of, 64
 soft soap, 134
 yellow, 28
 Resinous soap, 62
 Rogers's process, 120

- Rose, essential oil of, 149
 leaf soap, 158
 oil of, 242
 soap, 77, 149
 water, 163
- Rosemary, oil of, 242
- Roses, otto of, 172
 powder of, 150
- Rhodium, oil of, 158
- Ricinic acid, 27
- Ricinus communis, 27
- River-sand, 164
- Root, alkanet, 172
 orris, 158
- Rouge, 163
- Rue, oil of, 242
- Runnings, first, 33
 second, 33
- Russian potash, 186
 soft soap, 137
 tallow, 26
- SAFFRON**, 169
 oil of, 242
- Sage, oil of, 242
- Salad-oil, virgin, 25
- Sal ammoniac, 94
- Salicylic acid, 175
 soap, 175
- Saline ley, 40
- Sal soda, 93
- Salt, anthracine, 185
 common, 10
 Glauber's, 31
 of sorrel, 139
 truck, 39
- Salted leys, 46
 soda, 42
- Salting point, 219
- Salts of iron, 40
 sulphur, 40
- Sampling alkalies, 193
- Sand-balls, 164
 river, 164
- Sanitary soap, 112
- Saponaria officinalis, 139
- Saponification explained, 7
 new process of, 120
 of neutral fatty bodies by soap, 233
 under pressure, 117
- Saponifying, 9
- Sassafras, oil of, 242
- Savin, oil of, 242
- Savon à la cannelle, 152
 à la Maréchale, 159
 à la rose, 149
 au bouquet, 152
- Savon aux fleurs d'Italie, 157
 d'amandes amères, 150
 de Corinthe, essence de, 170
 de Crimée, 157
 de guimauve, 166
 de palme, 157
 de Vienne, essence de, 169
 vert, 135
- Savonnettes or Washballs, 161
 à la vanille, 162
 au miel, 163
 floating, 163
 marble, 163
 of camphor, 162
 of neroli, 162
 of sweet herbs, 162
- Sawdust in soap, 179
- Scented soaps, 140
- Scharr's process, 186
- Scotch soft soap, 231
- Scouring balls, 227
- Screw press, 148
- Seal oil, 130
- Second ley, 129
 runnings, 33
- Seed, cotton, oil, 28
- Semi-hard soap, 231
- Separation, 43
- Serpolet, oil of, 242
- Sesame oil, 26, 161
- Sesamum oil, 28
- Sesquioxide, chromium, 219
- Shaving paste, 168
 soap, Hampel's, 178
- Shoots, 23
- Sienna, burnt, 153
- Silica, 105
- Silicate of alumina, 109
 of potash, 100
 preparation of, 100
 of soda, 30, 98
 preparation of, 30, 100
 adulteration of, 237
- Silicated soaps, Sheridan's process, 98
 Gossages processes, 99, 101, 103
- Skin soap, 111
 soaps, 175
- Slaked lime, 23, 33
- Sliced soap, 145
- Soap, almond-oil, 152
 alumino-ferruginous, 41
 ambergris, 159
 ammonia and camphor, 180
 analysing, 201
 animal, 125
 antimonial, 173
 apparatus for re-melting, 140

- Soap, arsenical, 174
 assay, 201
 assaying, 201
 Belgian, 136
 soft, or green, 231
 benzoic, 175
 benzoin, 153
 bitter almond, 150
 black, 174
 bleaching in the pan, 115
 borax, 180
 soft, 227
 toilet, 175
 Bordhardt's herb, 174
 bran, 175
 brown oil, 85, 139
 Windsor, 151
 camphor, 180
 ice, 175
 carbolic acid, 173
 Castile, 8, 161
 or olive oil, 36
 Castor-oil, 175
 cheap almond; 231
 chshapened, 96, 105
 chloridised sanitary, 112
 chlorinated, 113
 cinnamon, 150
 cocoa-nut oil, 73
 cold, 133
 Continental, 135
 copper or pan, 17
 corn-meal, 175
 creams, 166
 croton oil, 175
 cutting, 127, 146
 disinfecting, 112
 Symons's, 124
 Dresden palm, 226
 dry white, 170
 elder-flower, 160
 essence of, 169
 factory, its apparatus and ap-
 pliances, 16
 fancy, 140
 farriers', 174
 fitted, 14
 frames, 19
 French marbled, 42
 formulæ for, 49
 fuller's earth, 109
 fnulling, 138
 gluten in, 122
 glycerine, 160
 half-palm, 237
 half-resin, 183
 hard, manufacture of, 36, 58, 71
- Soap, household, 82
 instantaneous, 94
 iodine, 175
 Irish moss, 175
 lard, by cold process, 83
 laudry, 82
 lemon, 160
 lettuce, 159
 lime, by Lunge's method, 116
 liquid, Scharr's, 186
 glycerine, 173
 liquored, 75
 London "crown," 133
 mottled, 50
 gray mottled, 113
 machine for slicing, 142
 marine, 73
 Marseilles, 36
 marshmallow, 153
 medicated tar, 173
 medicinal soft, 172
 mercurial, 172
 metallic, 8, 48
 mottled, 50
 musk, 150
 Naples, 165
 neutral, 88
 oatmeal, 175
 oleic acid, 88, 93
 orange, 160
 orange-flower, 150
 ox-gall, 227
 palm, 157
 Dresden, 226
 Violet's, 178
 pans, 17
 paraffin, 175
 patent, the first, 2
 pearl, 166
 petroleum, 175
 Bastet's process, 181
 pickling, 228
 potash, 8, 13, 128
 potato-flour in, 108
 powder, London, 227
 powdered, 168
 pure olive-oil, 36
 composition of, 50
 re-melting, 144
 resin, 58
 Altenburge's, 226
 preparation of, 64
 resinous, 62
 rose, 77, 149
 rose-leaf, 158
 Russian soft, 137
 salicylic, 175

- Soap, sawdust in, 179
 Scotch soft, 132
 shaving, Hampel's, 178
 silicated, 96, 98, 101, 103
 skin, 175
 soda, 8
 borax, 227
 English, 135
 medicinal, 172
 M. Loch's, 139
 potato-flour in, 232
 resin in, 134
 Russian, 137
 Scotch, 132
 soft, 236
 toilet, 166
 stamping, 146
 sulphur, Sir H. Marsh's, 172
 tallow, 53
 tannin, 175
 tar, 174
 terebene, Cleaver's, 186
 thymol, 124, 175
 toilet, 140
 tooth, 173
 transparent, 8, 9, 170
 turpentine, 174
 unsalted, 224
 used in cloth manufactories, 223
 vanilla, 153, 158
 violet Windsor, 151
 (yellow), 158
 Violet's palm-oil, 178
 wax, 175
 white and rose, 77
 cocoa-nut oil, 225
 curd, 53
 soft, toilet, 166
 to prepare, 82
 Windsor, 150
 brown, 151
 yellow, or resin, 58
 for silks and printed goods, 138,
 238
 for washing dogs, 174
 from recovered grease, 84, 85
 Soaps, camphor and ammonia, 180
 cheapened, 96, 105
 combined, 115
 French cocoa-nut oil, 77
 hard, manufacture of, 36, 58,
 71
 Kottula's, 94
 made from animal refuse, 124
 marking, 187
 medicated, 172
 potash, 8, 128
 Soaps, saponification of neutral fatty
 bodies by, 233
 scented, 146
 silicated, 98
 soda, 128
 soft, analysis of, 231
 manufacture of, 128, 136
 toilet, French system of
 making, 154 [154
 toilet, manufacture of, 140, 149,
 soft, 165
 French formulæ for, 156
 yellow, to make with cocoa-nut
 oil, 75
 Soap-making by cold process, 79
 materials used in, 25
 origin of, 1
 Soapstone, 187
 Soapwort, 139
 Soda, aluminate of, 222
 anhydrous, 189
 ash, 29, 93
 bicarbonate of, 93
 calcined, 111
 carbonate of, 28, 93
 caustic, 8, 29
 causticising, 236
 chloride of, 85, 112, 114
 crude, 2, 43
 soft, 43
 crystals, 88
 effloresced, 93
 hydrate of, 189
 oleate of, 9, 84
 sal, 93
 salted, 42
 silicate of, 30, 98
 adulteration of, 237
 mixing with soaps, 101
 preparation of, 100
 soaps, 8, 128
 soft, 42
 stearate of, 7
 sulphate of, 31, 96
 Sodium, chloride of, 13
 Soft borax, 227
 English, 128, 135
 ley, 44
 medicinal, 172
 M. Loch's, 139
 potato-flour in, 232
 resin in, 134
 Russian, 137
 Scotch, 132
 soap, Belgium, 136
 toilet, 166
 Soft soaps, analyses of, 231

Soft soaps, manufacture of, 128, 136
 resin in, 134
 toilet, 166
 Soluble glass, 98
 Sorrel, salt of, 139
 South American tallow, 26
 Spanish brown, 150
 Specific gravity bottle, 192
 tables, 240, 241
 Spent leys, 38, 218
 Sperm-oil, 133
 Spermaceti, 151, 159
 Spirit, methylated, 203, 218
 pyroxylic, 174
 rectified, 172
 wood, 227
 Stamping the soap, 146
 Starch, 161
 Steam crutch, 20
 series, Morfit's, 17
 Steaming tub, 26
 Stearate of potash, 132
 of soda, 7
 Stearates, 10
 Stearic acid, 10
 Stearine, 7
 Steatite, 187
 Stick, gauging, 24
 Stiff curd, 101
 Still-head, 68
 Stirrer, 16
 Stockholm tar, 174
 "Strength," boiling to, 72
 Strong caustic ley, 82, 129
 Stuff, kitchen, 28
 Sturtevant's process, 74
 Sublimate, corrosive, 172
 Sublimed sulphur, 172
 Sud oil, 85
 Suds of fulling mills, 28
 Suet, ground, 161
 Sugar, burnt, 151
 Sulphate of alumina, 69, 177
 of iron, 41
 of lime, 84
 of soda, 31, 96
 Sulphur, 172
 salts, 40
 soap, Sir H. Marsh's, 172
 sublimed, 172
 Sulphuret of iron, 41
 sodium, 45
 Sulphuric acid, 26
 Sweet almonds, oil of, 83
 Swimmer, 22
 Symons's disinfecting soap, 124
 Syphon, 34

TABLE, Kürten's, 243
 of fusing and congealing points
 of fats and oils, 242
 of essential oils, 241, 242
 of the mechanical power of
 steam, 246
 showing percentage of an-
 hydrous caustic potash in ley,
 239
 showing percentage of soda in
 caustic ley, 238
 showing the quantity of caustic
 soda in leys of different densi-
 ties, 245
 Tables showing specific gravity cor-
 responding with the degrees of
 Baum's hydrometer, 240, 241
 Tables, useful notes and, 228
 Tallow, 8, 26
 Australian, 26
 English, 209
 London, 26
 mutton, 160
 rancid, 58
 Russian, 26
 South American, 26
 "town," 26
 white, 49
 Tank, ley, 19, 32
 Tannic acid, 175
 Tannin, 216
 soap, 175
 Tansy, oil of, 242
 Tar, juniper, 173
 soap, 174
 medicated, 173
 Stockholm, 174
 Tardani's process, 182
 Tartaric acid, 203
 Terebene, 186
 soap, Cleaver's, 186
 Terebic acid, 231
 Test-acid, 189
 acid or standard solution, pre-
 paration of, 192
 Testing commercial pearlashes, 198
 Thermometer scales, comparative
 French and English, 239
 Third ley, 129
 Thomas and Fuller's process for re-
 covering glycerine, 218
 Thomas's process, 107
 Thyme, oil of, 242
 Thymic acid, 124
 Thymol, 175
 soap, 124, 175
 Tincture of archil, 170

- Tincture of benzoin, 153
 of cinnamon, 162
 of musk, 158
 of vanilla, 153
- Tissues, animal, 124
- To determine the quantity of resin in soap, 230
- Toilet soap, fuller's earth, 110
 soaps, French, formulæ for, 154
 soaps, French system of making, 154
 manufacture of, 140, 149, 154
 soft soaps, 165
- Tolu, balsam of, 162
- Tooth soap, 173
- Town tallow, 26
- Transparent soap, 170
- Turmeric, yellow, 170
- Turpentine, oil of, 68
 Venice, 174
 white, 68
- Twaddell's hydrometer, 228, 235
- ULTRAMARINE**, 94
 Umber, 151
- Uncombined soap, 39
- Unsalted soap, 224
- Unaponified fatty matter, 203
- Useful notes and tables, 228
- VALERIAN**, oil of, 242
 Vanilla, lard with, 158
 soap, 153, 158
 tincture of, 153
- Varicas's process, 185
- Various processes, 123
 implements, 22
- Vauquelin's system of estimating the value of alkalies, 188
- Vegetable oils, 130
 parchment, 139
- Venice turpentine, 174
- Verbena, oil of, 153
- Vermilion, 145
- Veremann's process for recovering glycerine, 217
- Villacrose's process, 126
- Villart's process, 125
- Violet soap, yellow, 158
 washballs, 161
 Windsor soap, 151
- Violet's palm-oil soap, 178
- Virgin salad-oil, 25
- Vitriol, green, 44
- Volatile oils, boiling-points of, 243
- Volumetric analysis, 189
- WAKEFIELD** fat, 86
 Walnut-oil, 242
- Washballs, 161
 violet, 161
- Waste leys, 22
 lays, recovery of glycerine from, 23, 215
 lime, 23
- Water, lavender, 169
 rose, 163
- Watt's fuller's earth soap, 109
 process for bleaching palm-oil, 209
 sanitary soap, 112
 process for recovering chrome, 210
- Wax, 158
 bees', 242
 soap, 175
 white, 158
- Whale-oil, 130
- White cocoa-nut oil soap, 225
 cocoa-nut oil soap, to make, 74
 curd soap, 36, 53, 162
 soap, 82, 77, 160
 soft, toilet soap, 166
 tallow, 49
 tallow soap, 157
 turpentine, 68
 wax, 158
- Whiting, cream of, 220
- Wild thyma, oil of, 162
- Windsor soap, 150
- Wood spirit, 227
- Wooden frames, 19
- Wormwood, oil of, 162
- YARROW**, oil of, 242
 Yellow, cadmium, 158
 cocoa-nut oil, 158
 soap, 75
 green pigment, 150
 naphthaline, 160
 ochre, 145
 or resin soap, 58
 resin, 28
 turmeric, 170
 violet soap, 158
- Yorkshire fat, or recovered grease, 28
- Young's process for recovering glycerine, 215

LONDON, December, 1883.

A Catalogue of Books

INCLUDING MANY NEW AND STANDARD WORKS IN

**ENGINEERING, ARCHITECTURE, AGRICULTURE,
MATHEMATICS, MECHANICS, SCIENCE, ETC.**

PUBLISHED BY

CROSBY LOCKWOOD & CO.,

7, STATIONERS'-HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

ENGINEERING, SURVEYING, ETC.

Humber's Work on Water-Supply.

A COMPREHENSIVE TREATISE on the WATER-SUPPLY of CITIES and TOWNS. By WILLIAM HUMBER, A.-M. Inst. C.E., and M. Inst. M.E. Illustrated with 50 Double Plates, 1 Single Plate, Coloured Frontispiece, and upwards of 250 Woodcuts, and containing 400 pages of Text. Imp. 4to, 6l. 6s. elegantly and substantially half-bound in morocco.

List of Contents:—

I. Historical Sketch of some of the means that have been adopted for the Supply of Water to Cities and Towns.—II. Water and the Foreign Matter usually associated with it.—III. Rainfall and Evaporation.—IV. Springs and the water-bearing formations of various districts.—V. Measurement and Estimation of the Flow of Water.—VI. On the Selection of the Source of Supply.—VII. Wells.—VIII. Reservoirs.—IX. The Purification of Water.—X. Pumps.—XI. Pumping Machinery.—XII. Conduits.—XIII. Distribution of Water.—XIV. Meters, Service Pipes, and House Fittings.—XV. The Law and Economy of Water Works.—XVI. Constant and Intermittent Supply.—XVII. Description of Plates.—Appendices, giving Tables of Rates of Supply, Velocities, &c. &c., together with Specifications of several Works illustrated, among which will be found:—Aberdeen, Bideford, Canterbury, Dundee, Halifax, Lambeth, Rotherham, Dublin, and others.

“The most systematic and valuable work upon water supply hitherto produced in English, or in any other language . . . Mr. Humber's work is characterised almost throughout by an exhaustiveness much more distinctive of French and German than of English technical treatises.”—*Engineer*.

Humber's Work on Bridge Construction.

A COMPLETE and PRACTICAL TREATISE on CAST and WROUGHT-IRON BRIDGE CONSTRUCTION, including Iron Foundations. In Three Parts—Theoretical, Practical, and Descriptive. By WILLIAM HUMBER, A.-M. Inst. C.E., and M. Inst. M.E. Third Edition, with 115 Double Plates. In 2 vols. imp. 4to, 6l. 16s. 6d. half-bound in morocco.

“A book—and particularly a large and costly treatise like Mr. Humber's—which has reached its third edition may certainly be said to have established its own reputation.”—*Engineering*.

Humber's Modern Engineering.

A RECORD of the PROGRESS of MODERN ENGINEERING. First Series. Comprising Civil, Mechanical, Marine, Hydraulic, Railway, Bridge, and other Engineering Works, &c. By WILLIAM HUMBER, A.-M. Inst. C.E., &c. Imp. 4to, with 36 Double Plates, drawn to a large scale, and Portrait of John Hawkshaw, C.E., F.R.S., &c., and descriptive Letter-press, Specifications, &c. 3*l.* 3*s.* half morocco.

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

Victoria Station and Roof, L. B. & S. C. R. (8 plates); Southport Pier (2 plates); Victoria Station and Roof, L. C. & D. and G. W. R. (6 plates); Roof of Cremorne Music Hall; Bridge over G. N. Railway; Roof of Station, Dutch Rhenish Rail (2	plates); Bridge over the Thames, West London Extension Railway (5 plates); Armour Plates; Suspension Bridge, Thames (4 plates); The Allen Engine; Suspension Bridge, Avon (3 plates); Underground Railway (3 plates).
--	---

HUMBER'S RECORD OF MODERN ENGINEERING. Second Series. Imp. 4to, with 36 Double Plates, Portrait of Robert Stephenson, C.E., &c., and descriptive Letterpress, Specifications, &c. 3*l.* 3*s.* half morocco.

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

Birkenhead Docks, Low Water Basin (15 plates); Charing Cross Station Roof, C. C. Railway (3 plates); Digswell Viaduct, G. N. Railway; Robbery Wood Viaduct, G. N. Railway; Iron Permanent Way; Clydach Viaduct, Merthyr, Tredegar; Abergavenny Railway; Ebbw	Viaduct, Merthyr, Tredegar, and Abergavenny Railway; College Wood Viaduct, Cornwall Railway; Dublin Winter Palace Roof (3 plates); Bridge over the Thames, L. C. and D. Railway (6 plates); Albert Harbour, Greenock (4 plates).
--	--

HUMBER'S RECORD OF MODERN ENGINEERING. Third Series. Imp. 4to, with 40 Double Plates, Portrait of J. R. M'Clean, Esq., late Pres. Inst. C.E., and descriptive Letterpress, Specifications, &c. 3*l.* 3*s.* half morocco.

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

MAIN DRAINAGE, METROPOLIS.— <i>North Side.</i> —Map showing Interception of Sewers; Middle Level Sewer (2 plates); Outfall Sewer, Bridge over River Lea (3 plates); Outfall Sewer, Bridge over Marsh Lane, North Woolwich Railway, and Bow and Barking Railway Junction; Outfall Sewer, Bridge over Bow and Barking Railway (3 plates); Outfall Sewer, Bridge over East London Waterworks' Feeder (2 plates); Outfall Sewer, Reservoir (2 plates); Outfall Sewer, Tumbling Bay and Outlet; Outfall Sewer, Penstocks. <i>South Side.</i> —Outfall Sewer, Bermondsey	Branch (2 plates); Outfall Sewer, Reservoir and Outlet (4 plates); Outfall Sewer, Filth Hoist; Sections of Sewers (North and South Sides). THAMES EMBANKMENT.—Section of River Wall; Steamboat Pier, Westminster (2 plates); Landing Stairs between Charing Cross and Waterloo Bridges; York Gate (2 plates); Overflow and Outlet at Savoy Street Sewer (3 plates); Steamboat Pier, Waterloo Bridge (3 plates); Junction of Sewers, Plans and Sections; Gullies, Plans and Sections; Rolling Stock; Granite and Iron Forts.
--	--

HUMBER'S RECORD OF MODERN ENGINEERING. Fourth Series. Imp. 4to, with 36 Double Plates, Portrait of John Fowler, Esq., late Pres. Inst. C.E., and descriptive Letterpress, Specifications, &c. 3*l.* 3*s.* half morocco.

List of the Plates and Diagrams.

Abbey Mills Pumping Station, Main Drainage, Metropolis (4 plates); Barrow Docks (5 plates); Manquix Viaduct, Santiago and Valparaiso Railway (2 plates); Adam's Locomotive, St. Helen's Canal Railway (2 plates); Cannon Street Station Roof, Charing Cross Railway (3 plates); Road Bridge over the River Moka (2 plates) Telegraphic Apparatus for Meso-	potamia; Viaduct over the River Wye, Midland Railway (3 plates); St. German's Viaduct, Cornwall Railway (2 plates); Wrought-Iron Cylinder for Diving Bell; Millwall Docks (6 plates); Milroy's Patent Excavator, Metropolitan District Railway (6 plates); Harbours, Ports, and Breakwaters (3 plates).
--	---

Strains in Iron Frameworks, &c.

GRAPHIC AND ANALYTIC STATICS IN THEORY AND COMPARISON. Their Practical Application to the Treatment of Stresses in Roofs, Solid Girders, Lattice, Bowstring and Suspension Bridges, Braced Iron Arches and Piers, and other Frameworks. To which is added a Chapter on Wind Pressures. By R. HUDSON GRAHAM, C.E. With numerous Examples, many taken from existing Structures. 8vo., 16s. cloth.

"Mr. Graham's book will find a place wherever graphic and analytic statics are used or studied."—*Engineer*.

"This exhaustive treatise is admirably adapted for the architect and engineer, and will tend to wean the profession from a tedious and laboured mode of calculation. To prove the accuracy of the graphical demonstrations, the author compares them with the analytic formulæ given by Rankine."—*Building News*.

Strength of Girders.

GRAPHIC TABLE for FACILITATING the COMPUTATION of the WEIGHTS of WROUGHT-IRON and STEEL GIRDERS, &c., for Parliamentary and other Estimates. By J. H. WATSON BUCK, M. Inst. C. E. On a Sheet, 2s. 6d.

Strains, Formulæ & Diagrams for Calculation of.

A HANDY BOOK for the CALCULATION of STRAINS in GIRDERS and SIMILAR STRUCTURES, and their STRENGTH; consisting of Formulæ and Corresponding Diagrams, with numerous Details for Practical Application, &c. By WILLIAM HUMBER, A.-M. Inst. C. E., &c. Third Edition. Cr. 8vo, 7s. 6d. cl.

Strains.

THE STRAINS ON STRUCTURES OF IRONWORK; with Practical Remarks on Iron Construction. By F. W. SHEILDS, M. Inst. C.E. Second Edition, with 5 Plates. Royal 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"The student cannot find a better book on this subject than Mr. Shields'."—*Engineer*

Barlow on the Strength of Materials, enlarged.

A TREATISE ON THE STRENGTH OF MATERIALS, with Rules for application in Architecture, the Construction of Suspension Bridges, Railways, &c. By PETER BARLOW, F.R.S. Revised by his Sons, P. W. and W. H. BARLOW. Edited by W. HUMBER, A.-M. Inst. C.E. 8vo, 18s. cloth.

"The standard treatise upon this particular subject."—*Engineer*.

Strength of Cast Iron, &c.

A PRACTICAL ESSAY on the STRENGTH of CAST IRON and OTHER METALS. By T. TREGOLD, C.E. 5th Edition. To which are added, Experimental Researches on the Strength, &c., of Cast Iron. By E. HODGKINSON, F.R.S. 8vo, 12s. cloth.

* * HODGKINSON'S RESEARCHES, separate, price 6s.

Hydraulics.

HYDRAULIC TABLES, CO-EFFICIENTS, and FORMULÆ for finding the Discharge of Water from Orifices, Notches, Weirs, Pipes, and Rivers. With New Formulæ, Tables, and General Information on Rain-fall, Catchment-Basins, Drainage, Sewerage, and Water Supply. By J. NEVILLE, C.E., M.R.I.A. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo, 14s. cloth.

Hydraulics.

HYDRAULIC MANUAL. Consisting of Working Tables and Explanatory Text. Intended as a Guide in Hydraulic Calculations and Field Operations. By **LOWIS D'A. JACKSON**. Fourth Edition. Rewritten and Enlarged. Large Crown 8vo., 16s. cloth.

"Mr. Jackson's Hydraulic Manual is recognised as the standard work in this department of mechanics. The present edition has been brought abreast of the most recent practice."—*Scotsman*.

River Engineering.

RIVER BARS: The Causes of their Formation, and their Treatment by 'Induced Tidal Scour,' with a Description of the Successful Reduction by this Method of the Bar at Dublin. By **I. J. MANN**, Assis. Eng. to the Dublin Port and Docks Board. Rl. 8vo. 7s. 6d. cl.

Levelling.

A TREATISE on the PRINCIPLES and PRACTICE of LEVELLING; showing its Application to Purposes of Railway and Civil Engineering, in the Construction of Roads; with Mr. TELFORD'S Rules for the same. By **FREDERICK W. SIMMS**, F.G.S., M. Inst. C.E. Sixth Edition, very carefully revised, with the addition of Mr. LAW'S Practical Examples for Setting out Railway Curves, and Mr. TRAUTWINE'S Field Practice of Laying out Circular Curves. With 7 Plates and numerous Woodcuts. 8vo, 8s. 6d. cloth. * * TRAUTWINE on Curves, separate, 5s.

Practical Tunnelling.

PRACTICAL TUNNELLING: Explaining in detail the Setting out of the Works, Shaft-sinking and Heading-Driving, Ranging the Lines and Levelling under Ground, Sub-Excavating, Timbering, and the Construction of the Brickwork of Tunnels with the amount of labour required for, and the Cost of, the various portions of the work. By **F. W. SIMMS**, M. Inst. C.E. Third Edition, Revised and Extended. By **D. KINNEAR CLARK**, M.I.C.E. Imp. 8vo, with 21 Folding Plates and numerous Wood Engravings, 30s. cloth.

Civil and Hydraulic Engineering.

CIVIL ENGINEERING. By **HENRY LAW**, M. Inst. C.E. Including a Treatise on Hydraulic Engineering, by **GEORGE R. BURNELL**, M.I.C.E. Seventh Edition, Revised, with large additions, by **D. KINNEAR CLARK**, M. Inst. C.E. 7s. 6d., cloth.

Gas-Lighting.

COMMON SENSE FOR GAS-USERS: a Catechism of Gas-Lighting for Householders, Gasfitters, Millowners, Architects, Engineers, &c. By **R. WILSON**, C.E. 2nd Edition. Cr. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Earthwork.

EARTHWORK TABLES, showing the Contents in Cubic Yards of Embankments, Cuttings, &c., of Heights or Depths up to an average of 80 feet. By **JOSEPH BROADBENT**, C.E., and **FRANCIS CAMPIN**, C.E. Cr. 8vo, oblong, 5s. cloth.

Tramways and their Working.

TRAMWAYS: THEIR CONSTRUCTION and WORKING. Embracing a Comprehensive History of the System, with an Exhaustive Analysis of the various modes of Traction, including Horse-power, Steam, Heated Water, and Compressed Air; a Description of the Varieties of Rolling Stock, and Ample Details of Cost and Working Expenses; the Progress recently made in Tramway Construction, &c., &c. By D. KINNEAR CLARK, M. Inst. C. E. With over 200 Wood Engravings, and 13 Folding Plates. 2 vols. Large Crown 8vo, 30s. cloth.

"All interested in tramways must refer to it, as all railway engineers have turned to the author's work 'Railway Machinery.'"—*The Engineer*.

"The work is based on former tramway experience, and is specially valuable in these days of rapid change and progress."—*Engineering*.

Steam.

STEAM AND THE STEAM ENGINE, Stationary and Portable. Being an Extension of Sewell's Treatise on Steam. By D. KINNEAR CLARK, M.I.C.E. Second Edition. 12mo, 4s. cloth.

Steam Engine.

TEXT-BOOK ON THE STEAM ENGINE. By T. M. GOODEVE, M.A., Barrister-at-Law, Author of "The Principles of Mechanics," "The Elements of Mechanism," &c. Fifth Edition. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 6s. cloth.

"Mr. Goodeve's text-book is a work of which every young engineer should possess himself."—*Mining Journal*.

Steam.

THE SAFE USE OF STEAM: containing Rules for Unprofessional Steam Users. By an ENGINEER. 4th Edition. Sewed, 6d.

"If steam-users would but learn this little book by heart, boiler explosions would become sensations by their rarity."—*English Mechanic*.

Smithing and Farriery.

THE SMITHY AND FORGE. A Rüdimentary Treatise, including Instructions in the Farrier's Art, and a Chapter on Coach-Smithing. By W. J. E. CRANE. 3s. cloth.

Mechanical Engineering.

DETAILS OF MACHINERY: Comprising Instructions for the Execution of various Works in Iron, in the Fitting-Shop, Foundry, and Boiler-Yard. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Mechanical Engineering.

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING: Comprising Metallurgy, Moulding, Casting, Forging, Tools, Workshop Machinery, Manufacture of the Steam Engine, &c. By F. CAMPIN, C.E. 3s. cloth.

Works of Construction.

MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION: a Theoretical and Practical Treatise on the Strains, Designing, and Erection of Works of Construction. By F. CAMPIN, C.E. 12mo, 3s. 6d. cl. brds.

Iron Bridges, Girders, Roofs, &c.

A TREATISE ON THE APPLICATION OF IRON TO THE CONSTRUCTION OF BRIDGES, GIRDERS, ROOFS, AND OTHER WORKS. By F. CAMPIN, C.E. 12mo, 3s.

Bridge Construction in Masonry, Timber, & Iron.

EXAMPLES OF BRIDGE AND VIADUCT CONSTRUCTION IN MASONRY, TIMBER, AND IRON; consisting of 46 Plates from the Contract Drawings or Admeasurement of select Works. By W. DAVIS HASKOLL, C.E. Second Edition, with the addition of 554 Estimates, and the Practice of Setting out Works, with 6 pages of Diagrams. Imp. 4to, 2l. 12s. 6d. half-morocco.

"A work of the present nature by a man of Mr. Haskoll's experience, must prove invaluable. The tables of estimates considerably enhance its value."—*Engineering*.

Oblique Bridges.

A PRACTICAL and THEORETICAL ESSAY on OBLIQUE BRIDGES, with 13 large Plates. By the late GEO. WATSON BUCK, M.I.C.E. Third Edition, revised by his Son, J. H. WATSON BUCK, M.I.C.E.; and with the addition of Description to Diagrams for Facilitating the Construction of Oblique Bridges, by W. H. BARLOW, M.I.C.E. Royal 8vo, 12s. cloth.

"The standard text book for all engineers regarding skew arches."—*Engineer*.

Oblique Arches.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE CONSTRUCTION of OBLIQUE ARCHES. By JOHN HART. 3rd Ed. Imp. 8vo, 8s. cloth.

Boiler Construction.

THE MECHANICAL ENGINEER'S OFFICE BOOK: Boiler Construction. By NELSON FOLEY, Cardiff, late Assistant Manager Palmer's Engine Works, Jarrow. With 29 full-page Lithographic Diagrams. Folio 21s. half-bound.

Locomotive-Engine Driving.

LOCOMOTIVE-ENGINE DRIVING; a Practical Manual for Engineers in charge of Locomotive Engines. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS, M.S.E. Sixth Edition. Including A KEY TO THE LOCOMOTIVE ENGINE. With Illustrations. Cr. 8vo, 4s. 6d. cl.

"Mr. Reynolds has supplied a want, and has supplied it well."—*Engineer*.

The Engineer, Fireman, and Engine-Boy.

THE MODEL LOCOMOTIVE ENGINEER, FIREMAN, AND ENGINE-BOY. By M. REYNOLDS. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

Stationary Engine Driving.

STATIONARY ENGINE DRIVING. A Practical Manual for Engineers in Charge of Stationary Engines. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With Plates and Woodcuts. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d. cloth.

Engine-Driving Life.

ENGINE-DRIVING LIFE; or Stirring Adventures and Incidents in the Lives of Locomotive Engine-Drivers. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Eighth Thousand. Crown 8vo, 2s. cloth.

Continuous Railway Brakes.

CONTINUOUS RAILWAY BRAKES. A Practical Treatise on the several Systems in Use in the United Kingdom; their Construction and Performance. With copious Illustrations and numerous Tables. By MICHAEL REYNOLDS. Large Crown 8vo, 9s. cloth.

Construction of Iron Beams, Pillars, &c.

IRON AND HEAT; exhibiting the Principles concerned in the construction of Iron Beams, Pillars, and Bridge Girders, and the Action of Heat in the Smelting Furnace. By J. ARMOUR, C.E. 3s.

Fire Engineering.

FIRES, FIRE-ENGINES, AND FIRE BRIGADES. With a History of Fire-Engines, their Construction, Use, and Management; Remarks on Fire-Proof Buildings, and the Preservation of Life from Fire; Statistics of the Fire Appliances in English Towns; Foreign Fire Systems; Hints on Fire Brigades, &c., &c. By CHARLES F. T. YOUNG, C.E. Demy 8vo, 1l. 4s. cloth.

Trigonometrical Surveying.

AN OUTLINE OF THE METHOD OF CONDUCTING A TRIGONOMETRICAL SURVEY, for the Formation of Geographical and Topographical Maps and Plans, Military Reconnaissance, Levelling, &c., with the most useful Problems in Geodesy and Practical Astronomy. By LIEUT.-GEN. FROME, R.E., late Inspector-General of Fortifications. Fourth Edition, Enlarged, and partly Re-written. By CAPTAIN CHARLES WARREN, R.E. With 19 Plates and 115 Woodcuts, royal 8vo, 16s. cloth.

Tables of Curves.

TABLES OF TANGENTIAL ANGLES and MULTIPLES for setting out Curves from 5 to 200 Radius. By ALEXANDER BEAZELEY, M. Inst. C.E. Third Edition. Printed on 48 Cards, and sold in a cloth box, waistcoat-pocket size, 3s. 6d.

* Each table is printed on a small card, which, being placed on the theodolite, leaves the hands free to manipulate the instrument."—*Engineer.*

"Very handy; a man may know that all his day's work must fall on two of these cards, which he puts into his own card-case, and leaves the rest behind."—

Pioneer Engineering.

[*Athenæum.*]

PIONEER ENGINEERING. A Treatise on the Engineering Operations connected with the Settlement of Waste Lands in New Countries. By EDWARD DOBSON, A.I.C.E. With Plates and Wood Engravings. Revised Edition. 12mo, 5s. cloth.

"A workmanlike production, and one without possession of which no man should start to encounter the duties of a pioneer engineer."—*Athenæum.*

Engineering Fieldwork.

THE PRACTICE OF ENGINEERING FIELDWORK, applied to Land and Hydraulic, Hydrographic, and Submarine Surveying and Levelling. Second Edition, revised, with considerable additions, and a Supplement on WATERWORKS, SEWERS, SEWAGE, and IRRIGATION. By W. DAVIS HASKOLL, C.E. Numerous folding Plates. In 1 Vol., demy 8vo, 1l. 5s., cl. boards.

Large Tunnel Shafts.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF LARGE TUNNEL SHAFTS. By J. H. WATSON BUCK, M. Inst. C.E., &c. Illustrated with Folding Plates. Royal 8vo, 12s. cloth.

"Many of the methods given are of extreme practical value to the mason, and the observations on the form of arch, the rules for ordering the stone, and the construction of the templates, will be found of considerable use. We commend the book to the profession, and to all who have to build similar shafts."—*Building News.*

Survey Practice.

AID TO SURVEY PRACTICE: for Reference in Surveying, Levelling, Setting-out and in Route Surveys of Travellers by Land and Sea. With Tables, Illustrations, and Records. By **LOWIS D'A. JACKSON, A.-M.I.C.E.** Author of "Hydraulic Manual and Statistics," &c. Large crown 8vo, 12s. 6d., cloth.

"Mr. Jackson has had much and varied experience in field work and some knowledge of bookmaking, and he has utilised both these acquirements with a very useful result. The volume covers the ground it occupies very thoroughly."—*Engineering.*

"A general text book was wanted, and we are able to speak with confidence of Mr. Jackson's treatise. . . . We cannot recommend to the student who knows something of the mathematical principles of the subject a better course than to fortify his practice in the field under a competent surveyor with a study of Mr. Jackson's useful manual. The field records illustrate every kind of survey, and will be found an essential aid to the student."—*Building News.*

Sanitary Work.

SANITARY WORK IN THE SMALLER TOWNS AND IN VILLAGES. Comprising:—1. Some of the more Common Forms of Nuisance and their Remedies; 2. Drainage; 3. Water Supply. By **CHAS. SLAGG, Assoc. M. Inst. C.E.** Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 3s. 6d., cloth boards. [*Just published.*]

"This book contains all that such a treatise can be expected to contain, and is sound and trustworthy in every particular."—*Builder.*

Gas and Gasworks.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GASWORKS AND THE MANUFACTURE AND DISTRIBUTION OF COAL-GAS. Originally written by **S. HUGHES, C.E.** Sixth Edition. Re-written and enlarged, by **W. RICHARDS, C.E.** 12mo, 5s. cloth.

Waterworks for Cities and Towns.

WATERWORKS for the SUPPLY of CITIES and TOWNS, with a Description of the Principal Geological Formations of England as influencing Supplies of Water. By **S. HUGHES.** 4s. 6d. cloth.

Fuels and their Economy.

FUEL, its Combustion and Economy; consisting of an Abridgment of "A Treatise on the Combustion of Coal and the Prevention of Smoke." By **C. W. WILLIAMS, A.I.C.E.** With extensive additions on Recent Practice in the Combustion and Economy of Fuel—Coal, Coke, Wood, Peat, Petroleum, &c.; by **D. KINNEAR CLARK, M. Inst. C.E.** Second Edition, revised. With Illustrations. 12mo, 4s. cloth boards.

"Students should buy the book and read it, as one of the most complete and satisfactory treatises on the combustion and economy of fuel to be had."—*Engineer.*

Roads and Streets.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF ROADS AND STREETS. In Two Parts. I. The Art of Constructing Common Roads. By **HENRY LAW, C.E.** Revised and Condensed. II. Recent Practice in the Construction of Roads and Streets; including Pavements of Stone, Wood, and Asphalte. By **D. KINNEAR CLARK, M. Inst. C.E.** Second Edit., revised. 12mo, 5s. cloth.

"A book which every borough surveyor and engineer must possess, and of considerable service to architects, builders, and property owners."—*Building News.*

Locomotives.

LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES, A Rudimentary Treatise on. Comprising an Historical Sketch and Description of the Locomotive Engine. By G. D. DEMPSEY, C.E. With large additions treating of the MODERN LOCOMOTIVE, by D. KINNEAR CLARK, M. Inst. C.E. With Illustrations. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth boards.

"The student cannot fail to profit largely by adopting this as his preliminary textbook."—*Iron and Coal Trades Review*.

Field-Book for Engineers.

THE ENGINEER'S, MINING SURVEYOR'S, and CONTRACTOR'S FIELD-BOOK. By W. DAVIS HASKOLL, C.E. Consisting of a Series of Tables, with Rules, Explanations of Systems, and Use of Theodolite for Traverse Surveying and Plotting the Work with minute accuracy by means of Straight Edge and Set Square only; Levelling with the Theodolite, Casting out and Reducing Levels to Datum, and Plotting Sections in the ordinary manner; Setting out Curves with the Theodolite by Tangential Angles and Multiples with Right and Left-hand Readings of the Instrument; Setting out Curves without Theodolite on the System of Tangential Angles by Sets of Tangents and Offsets; and Earthwork Tables to 80 feet deep, calculated for every 6 inches in depth. With numerous Woodcuts. 4th Edition, enlarged. Cr. 8vo. 12s. cloth.

"The book is very handy, and the author might have added that the separate tables of sines and tangents to every minute will make it useful for many other purposes, the genuine traverse tables existing all the same."—*Ashenaeum*.

Earthwork, Measurement and Calculation of.

A MANUAL on EARTHWORK. By ALEX. J. S. GRAHAM, C.E. With numerous Diagrams. 18mo, 2s. 6d. cloth.

"As a really handy book for reference, we know of no work equal to it; and the railway engineers and others employed in the measurement and calculation of earthwork will find a great amount of practical information very admirably arranged, and available for general or rough estimates, as well as for the more exact calculations required in the engineers' contractor's offices."—*Artizan*.

Drawing for Engineers.

THE WORKMAN'S MANUAL OF ENGINEERING DRAWING. By JOHN MAXTON, Instructor in Engineering Drawing, Royal Naval College, Greenwich, formerly of R. S. N. A., South Kensington. Fifth Edition, carefully revised. With upwards of 300 Plates and Diagrams. 12mo, cloth, strongly bound, 4s.

"A copy of it should be kept for reference in every drawing office."—*Engineering*.
 "Indispensable for teachers of engineering drawing."—*Mechanics' Magazine*.

Weale's Dictionary of Terms.

A DICTIONARY of TERMS used in ARCHITECTURE, BUILDING, ENGINEERING, MINING, METALLURGY, ARCHÆOLOGY, the FINE ARTS, &c. By JOHN WEALE. Fifth Edition, revised by ROBERT HUNT, F.R.S., Keeper of Mining Records, Editor of "Ure's Dictionary of Arts." 12mo, 6s. cl. bds.

"The best small technological dictionary in the language."—*Architect*.

"The absolute accuracy of a work of this character can only be judged of after extensive consultation, and from our examination it appears very correct and very complete."—*Mining Journal*.

MINING, METALLURGY, ETC.

Metalliferous Mining.

BRITISH MINING. A Practical Treatise on the Metalliferous Mines and Minerals of the United Kingdom, dealing comprehensively with the Theories of Mineral Deposits, the History of Mines, their Practical Working, and the Future Prospects of British Mining Industry. Super royal 8vo. Fully Illustrated. By ROBERT HUNT, F.R.S., Keeper of Mining Records; Editor of "Ure's Dictionary of Arts, Manufactures, and Mines," &c.

[*In the press.*]

Coal and Iron.

THE COAL AND IRON INDUSTRIES OF THE UNITED KINGDOM: comprising a Description of the Coal Fields, and of the Principal Seams of Coal, with returns of their Produce and its Distribution, and Analyses of Special Varieties. Also, an Account of the occurrence of Iron Ores in Veins or Seams; Analyses of each Variety; and a History of the Rise and Progress of Pig Iron Manufacture since the year 1740, exhibiting the economies introduced in the Blast Furnaces for its Production and Improvement. By RICHARD MEADE, Assistant Keeper of Mining Records. With Maps of the Coal Fields and Ironstone Deposits of the United Kingdom. 8vo., £1 8s. cloth.

Metalliferous Minerals and Mining.

A TREATISE ON METALLIFEROUS MINERALS AND MINING. By D. C. DAVIES, F.G.S. With Numerous Wood Engravings. Second Edition, revised. Cr. 8vo, 12s. 6d. cloth.

"Without question, the most exhaustive and the most practically useful work we have seen; the amount of information given is enormous, and it is given concisely and intelligibly."—*Mining Journal.*

Earthy Minerals and Mining.

EARTHY AND OTHER MINERALS, AND MINING. By D. C. DAVIES, F.G.S. Uniform with, and forming a companion volume to, the same Author's "Metalliferous Minerals and Mining." With numerous Illustrations. [*In the press.*]

Slate and Slate Quarrying.

A TREATISE ON SLATE AND SLATE QUARRYING, Scientific, Practical, and Commercial. By D. C. DAVIES, F.G.S. Illustrated. Second Edition, revised. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Mining, Surveying and Valuing.

THE MINERAL SURVEYOR AND VALUER'S COMPLETE GUIDE, comprising a Treatise on Improved Mining Surveying, with new Traverse Tables; and Descriptions of Improved Instruments; also an Exposition of the Correct Principles of Laying out and Valuing Home and Foreign Iron and Coal Mineral Properties. By WILLIAM LINTERN, Mining and Civil Engineer. With four Plates of Diagrams, Plans, &c., 12mo, 4s. cloth.

* * * Also, bound with THOMAN'S TABLES. 7s. 6d. (See page 20.)

Metallurgy of Iron.

A TREATISE ON THE METALLURGY OF IRON: containing Outlines of the History of Iron Manufacture, Methods of Assay, and Analyses of Iron Ores, Processes of Manufacture of Iron and Steel, &c. By H. BAUERMAN, F.G.S. Fifth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Illustrated. 5s. 6d., cloth.

Coal and Coal Mining.

COAL AND COAL MINING. By WARINGTON W. SMYTH, M.A., F.R.S., &c., Chief Inspector of the Mines of the Crown. Fifth edition, revised. 4s. cloth.

"Every portion of the volume appears to have been prepared with much care, and as an outline is given of every known coal-field in this and other countries, as well as of the two principal methods of working, the book will doubtless interest a very large number of readers."—*Mining Journal*.

Underground Pumping Machinery.

MINE DRAINAGE; being a Complete and Practical Treatise on Direct-Acting Underground Steam Pumping Machinery, with a Description of a large number of the best known Engines, their General Utility and the Special Sphere of their Action, the Mode of their Application, and their merits compared with other forms of Pumping Machinery. By STEPHEN MICHELL. 8vo, 15s. cloth.

Manual of Mining Tools.

MINING TOOLS. By W. MORGANS. Text, 12mo, 3s. Atlas of 235 Illustrations, 4to, 6s. Together, 9s. cloth.

NAVAL ARCHITECTURE, NAVIGATION, ETC.

Pocket Book for Naval Architects & Shipbuilders.

THE NAVAL ARCHITECT'S AND SHIPBUILDER'S POCKET BOOK OF FORMULÆ, RULES, AND TABLES AND MARINE ENGINEER'S AND SURVEYOR'S HANDY BOOK OF REFERENCE. By CLEMENT MACKROW, M. Inst. N. A., Naval Draughtsman. Second Edition, revised. With numerous Diagrams. Fcap., 12s. 6d., strongly bound in leather.

"Should be used by all who are engaged in the construction or design of vessels."—*Engineer*.

"Mr. Mackrow has compressed an extraordinary amount of information into this useful volume."—*Athenæum*.

Pocket-Book for Marine Engineers.

A POCKET-BOOK OF USEFUL TABLES AND FORMULÆ FOR MARINE ENGINEERS. By FRANK PROCTOR, A.I.N.A. Third Edition. Royal 32mo, leather, gilt edges, 4s.

"A most useful companion to all marine engineers."—*United Service Gazette*.

"Scarcely anything required by a naval engineer appears to have been forgotten."—*Iron*.

Grantham's Iron Ship-Building.

ON IRON SHIP-BUILDING; with Practical Examples and Details. By JOHN GRANTHAM, M. Inst. C.E., &c. Fifth Edition. 40 Plates. Imp. 4to, bds., with separate Text, 2l. 2s. complete.

Light-Houses.

EUROPEAN LIGHT-HOUSE SYSTEMS; being a Report of a Tour of Inspection made in 1873. By Major GEORGE H. ELLIOT, Corps of Engineers, U.S.A. Illustrated by 51 Engravings and 31 Woodcuts in the Text. 8vo, 21s. cloth.

Surveying (Land and Marine).

LAND AND MARINE SURVEYING, in Reference to the Preparation of Plans for Roads and Railways, Canals, Rivers, Towns' Water Supplies, Docks and Harbours; with Description and Use of Surveying Instruments. By W. DAVIS HASKOLL, C.E. With 14 folding Plates, and numerous Woodcuts. 8vo, 12s. 6d. cloth.

Storms.

STORMS: their Nature, Classification, and Laws, with the Means of Predicting them by their Embodiments, the Clouds. By WILLIAM BLASIUS. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d. cloth boards.

Rudimentary Navigation.

THE SAILOR'S SEA-BOOK: a Rudimentary Treatise on Navigation. By JAMES GREENWOOD, B.A. New and enlarged edition. By W. H. ROSSER. 12mo, 3s. cloth boards.

Mathematical and Nautical Tables.

MATHEMATICAL TABLES, for Trigonometrical, Astronomical, and Nautical Calculations; to which is prefixed a Treatise on Logarithms. By HENRY LAW, C.E. Together with a Series of Tables for Navigation and Nautical Astronomy. By Professor J. R. YOUNG. New Edition. 12mo, 4s. cloth boards.

Navigation (Practical), with Tables.

PRACTICAL NAVIGATION: consisting of the Sailor's Sea-Book, by JAMES GREENWOOD and W. H. ROSSER; together with the requisite Mathematical and Nautical Tables for the Working of the Problems. By HENRY LAW, C.E., and Professor J. R. YOUNG. Illustrated. 12mo, 7s. strongly half-bound in leather.

WEALE'S RUDIMENTARY SERIES.

The following books in Naval Architecture, etc., are published in the above series.

- NAVIGATION AND NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY IN THEORY AND PRACTICE. By PROFESSOR J. R. YOUNG. New Edition. Including the Requisite Elements from the Nautical Almanac for Working the Problems. 12mo, 2s. 6d. cloth.
- MASTING, MAST-MAKING, AND RIGGING OF SHIPS. By ROBERT KIPPING, N.A. Fifteenth Edition. 12mo, 2s. 6d. cloth.
- SAILS AND SAIL-MAKING. Tenth Edition, enlarged. By ROBERT KIPPING, N.A. Illustrated. 12mo, 3s. cloth boards.
- NAVAL ARCHITECTURE. By JAMES PEAKE. Fifth Edition, with Plates and Diagrams. 12mo, 4s. cloth boards.
- MARINE ENGINES, AND STEAM VESSELS. By ROBERT MURRAY, C.E. Eighth Edition. [In preparation.]

ARCHITECTURE, BUILDING, ETC.

Construction.

THE SCIENCE of BUILDING: An Elementary Treatise on the Principles of Construction. By E. WYNDHAM TARN, M.A. With 58 Engravings. Second Edition, revised, including a new chapter on the Nature of Lightning, and the Means of Protecting Buildings from its Violence. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d. cloth.

"A very valuable book, which we strongly recommend to all students."—*Builder*.
 "No architectural student should be without this hand-book."—*Architect*.

Civil and Ecclesiastical Building.

A BOOK ON BUILDING, CIVIL AND ECCLESIASTICAL, Including CHURCH RESTORATION. By Sir EDMUND BECKETT, Bart., LL.D., Q.C., F.R.A.S. 12mo, 5s. cloth boards.

"A book which is always amusing and nearly always instructive. We are able very cordially to recommend all persons to read it for themselves."—*Times*.

"We commend the book to the thoughtful consideration of all who are interested in the building art."—*Builder*.

Villa Architecture.

A HANDY BOOK OF VILLA ARCHITECTURE; being a Series of Designs for Villa Residences in various Styles. With Outline Specifications and Estimates. By C. WICKES, Architect. 30 Plates, 4to, half morocco, gilt edges, 17. 1s.

* * * Also an Enlarged edition of the above. 61 Plates, with Outline Specifications, Estimates, &c. 27. 2s. half morocco.

Useful Text-Book for Architects.

THE ARCHITECT'S GUIDE: Being a Text-book of Useful Information for Architects, Engineers, Surveyors, Contractors, Clerks of Works, &c. By F. ROGERS: Cr. 8vo, 6s. cloth.

The Young Architect's Book.

HINTS TO YOUNG ARCHITECTS. By G. WIGHTWICK. New Edition. By G. H. GUILLAUME. 12mo, cloth, 4s.

"Will be found an acquisition to pupils, and a copy ought to be considered as necessary a purchase as a box of instruments."—*Architect*.

Drawing for Builders and Students.

PRACTICAL RULES ON DRAWING for the OPERATIVE BUILDER and YOUNG STUDENT in ARCHITECTURE. By GEORGE PYNE. With 14 Plates, 4to, 7s. 6d. boards.

Boiler and Factory Chimneys.

BOILER AND FACTORY CHIMNEYS; their Draught-power and Stability, with a chapter on Lightning Conductors. By ROBERT WILSON, C.E. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

Builder's and Contractor's Price Book.

LOCKWOOD & CO.'S BUILDER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S PRICE BOOK, containing the latest prices of all kinds of Builders' Materials and Labour, &c. Revised by F. T. W. MILLER, A.R.I.B.A. Half-bound, 4s.

Taylor and Cresy's Rome.

THE ARCHITECTURAL ANTIQUITIES OF ROME. By the late G. L. TAYLOR, Esq., F.S.A., and EDWARD CRESY, Esq. New Edition, Edited by the Rev. ALEXANDER TAYLOR, M.A. (son of the late G. L. Taylor, Esq.) This is the only book which gives on a large scale, and with the precision of architectural measurement, the principal Monuments of Ancient Rome in plan, elevation, and detail. Large folio, with 130 Plates, half-bound, 3*l.* 3*s.*

* * * Originally published in two volumes, folio, at 18*l.* 18*s.*

Vitruvius' Architecture.

THE ARCHITECTURE OF MARCUS VITRUVIUS POLLIO. Translated by JOSEPH GWILT, F.S.A., F.R.A.S. Numerous Plates. 12mo, cloth limp, 5*s.*

Ancient Architecture.

RUDIMENTARY ARCHITECTURE (ANCIENT); comprising VITRUVIUS, translated by JOSEPH GWILT, F.S.A., &c., with 23 fine plates; and GRECIAN ARCHITECTURE. By the EARL of ABERDERN; 12mo, 6*s.*, half-bound.

* * * *The only edition of VITRUVIUS procurable at a moderate price.*

Modern Architecture.

RUDIMENTARY ARCHITECTURE (MODERN); comprising THE ORDERS OF ARCHITECTURE. By W. H. LEEDS, Esq.; The STYLES of ARCHITECTURE of VARIOUS COUNTRIES. By T. TALBOT BURY; and The PRINCIPLES of DESIGN in ARCHITECTURE. By E. L. GARBETT. Numerous illustrations, 12mo, 6*s.* half-bound.

Civil Architecture.

THE DECORATIVE PART of CIVIL ARCHITECTURE. By Sir WILLIAM CHAMBERS, F.R.S. With Illustrations, Notes, and an Examination of Grecian Architecture. By JOSEPH GWILT, F.S.A. Edited by W. H. LEEDS. 66 Plates, 4to, 21*s.*

House Painting.

HOUSE PAINTING, GRAINING, MARBLING, AND SIGN WRITING: a Practical Manual of. With 9 Coloured Plates of Woods and Marbles, and nearly 150 Wood Engravings. By ELLIS A. DAVIDSON. Third Edition, Revised. 12mo, 6*s.* cloth.

Plumbing.

PLUMBING; a Text-book to the Practice of the Art or Craft of the Plumber. With chapters upon House-drainage, embodying the latest Improvements. By W. P. BUCHAN, Sanitary Engineer. Fourth Edition, Revised, with 330 illustrations. 12mo. 4*s.* cloth.

Joints used in Building, Engineering, &c.

THE JOINTS MADE AND USED BY BUILDERS in the construction of various kinds of Engineering and Architectural works, with especial reference to those wrought by artificers in erecting and finishing Habitable Structures. By W. J. CHRISTY, Architect. With 160 Illustrations. 12mo, 3*s.* 6*d.* cloth boards.

Handbook of Specifications.

THE HANDBOOK OF SPECIFICATIONS; or, Practical Guide to the Architect, Engineer, Surveyor, and Builder, in drawing up Specifications and Contracts for Works and Constructions. Illustrated by Precedents of Buildings actually executed by eminent Architects and Engineers. By Professor THOMAS L. DONALDSON, M.I.B.A. New Edition, in One large volume, 8vo, with upwards of 1000 pages of text, and 33 Plates, cloth, 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.*

"In this work forty-four specifications of executed works are given. . . . Donaldson's Handbook of Specifications must be bought by all architects."—*Builder*.

Specifications for Practical Architecture.

SPECIFICATIONS FOR PRACTICAL ARCHITECTURE: A Guide to the Architect, Engineer, Surveyor, and Builder; with an Essay on the Structure and Science of Modern Buildings. By FREDERICK ROGERS, Architect. 8vo, 15*s.* cloth.

** A volume of specifications of a practical character being greatly required, and the old standard work of Alfred Bartholomew being out of print, the author, on the basis of that work, has produced the above.—*Extract from Preface*.

Designing, Measuring, and Valuing.

THE STUDENT'S GUIDE to the PRACTICE of MEASURING and VALUING ARTIFICERS' WORKS; containing Directions for taking Dimensions, Abstracting the same, and bringing the Quantities into Bill, with Tables of Constants, and copious Memoranda for the Valuation of Labour and Materials in the respective Trades of Bricklayer and Slater, Carpenter and Joiner, Painter and Glazier, Paperhanger, &c. With 8 Plates and 63 Woodcuts. Originally edited by EDWARD DOBSON, Architect. Fifth Edition, Revised, with considerable Additions on Mensuration and Construction, and a new chapter on Dilapidations, Repairs, and Contracts. By E. WYNDHAM TARN, M.A. [*In the press.*]

"Well fulfils the promise of its title-page. Mr. Tarn's additions and revisions have much increased the usefulness of the work."—*Engineering*.

Beaton's Pocket Estimator.

THE POCKET ESTIMATOR FOR THE BUILDING TRADES, being an easy method of estimating the various parts of a Building collectively, more especially applied to Carpenters' and Joiners' work. By A. C. BEATON. Second Edition. Waistcoat-pocket size. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Beaton's Builders' and Surveyors' Technical Guide.

THE POCKET TECHNICAL GUIDE AND MEASURER FOR BUILDERS AND SURVEYORS; containing an Explanation of the Terms used in Building Construction, Directions for Measuring Work, Useful Memoranda, &c. By A. C. BEATON. 1*s.* 6*d.*

The House-Owner's Estimator.

THE HOUSE-OWNER'S ESTIMATOR; or, What will it Cost to Build, Alter, or Repair? A Price-Book for Unprofessional People, Architectural Surveyors, Builders, &c. By the late JAMES D. SIMON. Edited by F. T. W. MILLER, A.R.I.B.A. Third Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*, cloth.

"In two years it will repay its cost a hundred times over."—*Field*.

CARPENTRY, TIMBER, ETC.

Tredgold's Carpentry, new and cheaper Edition.

THE ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF CARPENTRY: a Treatise on the Pressure and Equilibrium of Timber Framing, the Resistance of Timber, and the Construction of Floors, Arches, Bridges, Roofs, Uniting Iron and Stone with Timber, &c. To which is added an Essay on the Nature and Properties of Timber, &c., with Descriptions of the Kinds of Wood used in Building; also numerous Tables of the Scantlings of Timber for different purposes, the Specific Gravities of Materials, &c. By THOMAS TREGOLD, C.E. Edited by PETER BARLOW, F.R.S. Fifth Edition, corrected and enlarged. With 64 Plates, Portrait of the Author, and Woodcuts. 4to, published at 2l. 2s., reduced to 1l. 5s. cloth.

"A work whose monumental excellence must commend it wherever skilful carpentry is concerned. The Author's principles are rather confirmed than impaired by time. The additional plates are of great intrinsic value."—*Building News*.

Grandy's Timber Tables.

THE TIMBER IMPORTER'S, TIMBER MERCHANT'S, & BUILDER'S STANDARD GUIDE. By R. E. GRANDY. 2nd Edition. Carefully revised and corrected. 12mo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

"Everything it pretends to be: built up gradually, it leads one from a forest to a treenail, and throws in, as a makeweight, a host of material concerning bricks, columns, cisterns, &c.—all that the class to whom it appeals requires."—*English Mechanic*.

Timber Freight Book.

THE TIMBER IMPORTERS' AND SHIPOWNERS' FREIGHT BOOK: Being a Comprehensive Series of Tables for the Use of Timber Importers, Captains of Ships, Shipbrokers, Builders, and Others. By W. RICHARDSON. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Tables for Packing-Case Makers.

PACKING-CASE TABLES; showing the number of Superficial Feet in Boxes or Packing-Cases, from six inches square and upwards. By W. RICHARDSON. Oblong 4to, 3s. 6d. cloth.

"Invaluable labour-saving tables."—*Ironmonger*.

Carriage Building, &c.

COACH BUILDING: A Practical Treatise, Historical and Descriptive, containing full information of the various Trades and Processes involved, with Hints on the proper keeping of Carriages, &c. 57 Illustrations. By JAMES W. BURGESS. 12mo, 3s. cloth.

Horton's Measurer.

THE COMPLETE MEASURER; setting forth the Measurement of Boards, Glass, &c.; Unequal-sided, Square-sided, Octagonal-sided, Round Timber and Stone, and Standing Timber. Also a Table showing the solidity of hewn or eight-sided timber, or of any octagonal-sided column. By RICHARD HORTON. Fourth Edit. With Additions, 12mo, strongly bound in leather, 5s.

Horton's Underwood and Woodland Tables.

TABLES FOR PLANTING AND VALUING UNDERWOOD AND WOODLAND; also Lineal, Superficial, Cubical, and Decimal Tables, &c. By R. HORTON. 12mo, 2s. leather.

Nicholson's Carpenter's Guide.

THE CARPENTER'S NEW GUIDE; or, BOOK of LINES for CARPENTERS: comprising all the Elementary Principles essential for acquiring a knowledge of Carpentry. Founded on the late PETER NICHOLSON'S standard work. A new Edition, revised by ARTHUR ASHPITEL, F.S.A., together with Practical Rules on Drawing, by GEORGE PYNE. With 74 Plates, 4to, 1l. 1s. cloth.

Dowsing's Timber Merchant's Companion.

THE TIMBER MERCHANT'S AND BUILDER'S COMPANION; containing New and Copious Tables of the Reduced Weight and Measurement of Deals and Battens, of all sizes, from One to a Thousand Pieces, also the relative Price that each size bears per Lineal Foot to any given Price per Petersburg Standard Hundred, &c., &c. Also a variety of other valuable information. By W. DOWSING. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, 3s.

Practical Timber Merchant.

THE PRACTICAL TIMBER MERCHANT, being a Guide for the use of Building Contractors, Surveyors, Builders, &c., comprising useful Tables for all purposes connected with the Timber Trade, Essay on the Strength of Timber, Remarks on the Growth of Timber, &c. By W. RICHARDSON. Fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d. cl.

Woodworking Machinery.

WOODWORKING MACHINERY; its Rise, Progress, and Construction. With Hints on the Management of Saw Mills and the Economical Conversion of Timber. Illustrated with Examples of Recent Designs by leading English, French, and American Engineers. By M. POWIS BALE, M.I.M.E. Crown 8vo, 12s. 6d. cl.

"Mr. Bale is evidently an expert on the subject, and he has collected so much information that his book is all-sufficient for builders and others engaged in the conversion of timber."—*Architect*.

"The most comprehensive compendium of wood-working machinery we have seen. The author is a thorough master of his subject."—*Building News*.

Saw Mills.

SAW MILLS, THEIR ARRANGEMENT AND MANAGEMENT, AND THE ECONOMICAL CONVERSION OF TIMBER. (Being a Companion Volume to "Woodworking Machinery.") By M. POWIS BALE, M.I.M.E. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d., cloth. [*Just published.*]

"The author is favourably known by his former work on 'Woodworking Machinery,' of which we were able to speak approvingly. This is a companion volume, in which the *administration* of a large sawing establishment is discussed, and the subject examined from a financial standpoint. Hence the size, shape, order, and disposition of saw-mills and the like are gone into in detail, and the course of the timber is traced from its reception to its delivery in its converted state. We could not desire a more complete or practical treatise."—*Builder*.

"We highly recommend Mr. Bale's work to the attention and perusal of all those who are engaged in the art of wood conversion, or who are about building or remodelling saw-mills on improved principles."—*Building News*.

"Will be found of much value by that special class of readers for whose information it is designed. We have pleasure in recommending the book to those about to construct or to manage saw-mills."—*Athenæum*.

MECHANICS, ETC.

Turning.

LATHE-WORK: a Practical Treatise on the Tools, Appliances, and Processes employed in the Art of Turning. By PAUL N. HASLUCK. Second Edition, thoroughly Revised, with a New Chapter on the Screw-cutting Lathe. Crown 8vo, 5s.

Turning.

THE METAL TURNER'S HANDBOOK: A Practical Manual for Workers at the Foot-lathe. By PAUL N. HASLUCK. With over 100 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 1s., cloth.

* * * *The above forms the first volume of HASLUCK'S HANDBOOKS ON HANDICRAFTS. Other Volumes in preparation.*

Mechanic's Workshop Companion.

THE OPERATIVE MECHANIC'S WORKSHOP COMPANION, and **THE SCIENTIFIC GENTLEMAN'S PRACTICAL ASSISTANT**. By W. TEMPLETON. 13th Edit., with Mechanical Tables for Operative Smiths, Millwrights, Engineers, &c.; and an Extensive Table of Powers and Roots, 12mo, 5s. bound.

"Admirably adapted to the wants of a very large class. It has met with great success in the engineering workshop, as we can testify; and there are a great many men who, in a great measure, owe their rise in life to this little work."—*Building News*.

Engineer's and Machinist's Assistant.

THE ENGINEER'S, MILLWRIGHT'S, and MACHINIST'S PRACTICAL ASSISTANT; comprising a Collection of Useful Tables, Rules, and Data. By WM. TEMPLETON. 18mo, 2s. 6d.

Smith's Tables for Mechanics, &c.

TABLES, MEMORANDA, and CALCULATED RESULTS, FOR MECHANICS, ENGINEERS, ARCHITECTS, BUILDERS, &c. Selected and Arranged by FRANCIS SMITH. 24opp. Walstcoat-pocket size, 1s. 6d., limp leather. [*Just published.*]

Boiler Making.

THE BOILER-MAKER'S READY RECKONER. With Examples of Practical Geometry and Templating, for the use of Platers, Smiths, and Riveters. By JOHN COURTNEY, Edited by D. K. CLARK, M. I. C.E. 12mo, 9s. half-bd.

Superficial Measurement.

THE TRADESMAN'S GUIDE TO SUPERFICIAL MEASUREMENT. Tables calculated from 1 to 200 inches in length, by 1 to 108 inches in breadth. By J. HAWKINGS. Fcp. 3s. 6d. cl.

The High-Pressure Steam Engine.

THE HIGH-PRESSURE STEAM ENGINE. By Dr. ERNST ALBAN. Translated from the German, with Notes, by Dr. POLE, F.R.S. Plates. 8vo, 16s. 6d., cloth.

Steam Boilers.

A TREATISE ON STEAM BOILERS: their Strength, Construction, and Economical Working. By R. WILSON, C.E. Fifth Edition. 12mo, 6s. cloth.

"The best treatise that has ever been published on steam boilers."—*Engineer*.

MATHEMATICS, TABLES, ETC.

Metrical Units and Systems, &c.

MODERN METROLOGY: A Manual of the Metrical Units and Systems of the present Century. With an Appendix containing a proposed English System. By **LOWIS D'A. JACKSON**, A.-M. Inst. C.E., Author of "Aid to Survey Practice," &c. Large Crown 8vo, 12s. 6d. cloth.

Gregory's Practical Mathematics.

MATHEMATICS for PRACTICAL MEN; being a Common-place Book of Pure and Mixed Mathematics. Designed chiefly for the Use of Civil Engineers, Architects, and Surveyors. Part I. PURE MATHEMATICS—comprising Arithmetic, Algebra, Geometry, Mensuration, Trigonometry, Conic Sections, Properties of Curves. Part II. MIXED MATHEMATICS—comprising Mechanics in general, Statics, Dynamics, Hydrostatics, Hydrodynamics, Pneumatics, Mechanical Agents, Strength of Materials, &c. By **OLINTHUS GREGORY**, LL.D., F.R.A.S. Enlarged by **H. LAW**, C.E. 4th Edition, revised by **Prof. J. R. YOUNG**. With 13 Plates. 8vo, 1l. 1s. cloth.

Mathematics as applied to the Constructive Arts.

A TREATISE ON MATHEMATICS AS APPLIED TO THE CONSTRUCTIVE ARTS. Illustrating the various processes of Mathematical Investigation by means of Arithmetical and simple Algebraical Equations and Practical Examples, &c. By **FRANCIS CAMPIN**, C.E. 12mo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

Geometry for the Architect, Engineer, &c.

PRACTICAL GEOMETRY, for the Architect, Engineer, and Mechanic. By **E. W. TARN**, M.A. With Appendices on Diagrams of Strains and Isometrical projection. Demy 8vo, 9s. cloth.

Practical Geometry.

THE GEOMETRY OF COMPASSES, or Problems Resolved by the Mere Description of Circles, and the Use of Coloured Diagrams and Symbols. By **OLIVER BYRNE**. Coloured Plates. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d., cloth.

The Metric System.

A SERIES OF METRIC TABLES, in which the British Standard Measures and Weights are compared with those of the Metric System at present in use on the Continent. By **C. H. DOWLING**, C.E. 2nd Edit., revised and enlarged. 8vo, 10s. 6d. cl.

Inwood's Tables, greatly enlarged and improved.

TABLES FOR THE PURCHASING of ESTATES, Freehold, Copyhold, or Leasehold; Annuities, Advowsons, &c., and for the Renewing of Leases; also for Valuing Reversionary Estates, Deferred Annuities, &c. By **WILLIAM INWOOD**. 21st edition, with Tables of Logarithms for the more Difficult Computations of the Interest of Money, &c. By **M. FÉDOR THOMAN**. 12mo. 8s. cloth.

"Those interested in the purchase and sale of estates, and in the adjustment of compensation cases, as well as in transactions in annuities, life insurances, &c., will find the present edition of eminent service."—*Engineering*.

Weights, Measures, and Moneys.

MEASURES, WEIGHTS, and MONEYS of all NATIONS, Entirely New Edition, Revised and Enlarged. By W. S. B. WOOLHOUSE, F.R.A.S. 12mo, 2s. 6d. cloth boards.

Compound Interest and Annuities.

THEORY of COMPOUND INTEREST and ANNUITIES; with Tables of Logarithms for the more Difficult Computations of Interest, Discount, Annuities, &c., in all their Applications and Uses for Mercantile and State Purposes. By FÉDOR THOMAN, of the Société Crédit Mobilier, Paris. 3rd Edit., 12mo, 4s. 6d. cl.

Iron and Metal Trades' Calculator.

THE IRON AND METAL TRADES' COMPANION: Being a Calculator containing a Series of Tables upon a new and comprehensive plan for expeditiously ascertaining the value of any goods bought or sold by weight, from 1s. per cwt. to 112s. per cwt., and from one farthing per lb. to 1s. per lb. Each Table extends from one lb. to 100 tons. By T. DOWNIE. 396 pp., 9s., leather.

Iron and Steel.

IRON AND STEEL: a Work for the Forge, Foundry, Factory, and Office. Containing Information for Ironmasters; Civil, Mechanical, and Mining Engineers; Architects, Builders, &c. By CHARLES HOARE. Eighth Edit. Oblong 32mo, 6s., leather.

Comprehensive Weight Calculator.

THE WEIGHT CALCULATOR, being a Series of Tables upon a New and Comprehensive Plan, exhibiting at one Reference the exact Value of any Weight from 1lb. to 15 tons, at 300 Progressive Rates, from 1 Penny to 168 Shillings per cwt., and containing 186,000 Direct Answers, which, with their Combinations, consisting of a single addition, will afford an aggregate of 10,266,000 Answers; the whole being calculated and designed to ensure Correctness and promote Despatch. By HENRY HARBEN, Accountant. New Edition. Royal 8vo, 1l. 5s., half-bound.

Comprehensive Discount Guide.

THE DISCOUNT GUIDE: comprising Tables for the use of Merchants, Manufacturers, Ironmongers, and others, by which may be ascertained the exact profit arising from any mode of using Discounts, either in the Purchase or Sale of Goods, and the method of either Altering a Rate of Discount, or Advancing a Price, so as to produce, by one operation, a sum that will realise any required profit after allowing one or more Discounts: to which are added Tables of Profit or Advance from $1\frac{1}{4}$ to 90 per cent., Tables of Discount from $1\frac{1}{4}$ to $98\frac{3}{4}$ per cent., and Tables of Commission, &c., from $\frac{1}{8}$ to 10 per cent. By H. HARBEN, 8vo, 1l. 5s., half-bound.

Mathematical Instruments.

MATHEMATICAL INSTRUMENTS: Their Construction, Adjustment, Testing, and Use; comprising Drawing, Measuring, Optical, Surveying, and Astronomical Instruments. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Enlarged Edition. 12mo, 5s. cloth,

SCIENCE AND ART.

Gold and Gold-Working.

THE GOLDSMITH'S HANDBOOK: containing full instructions for the Alloying and Working of Gold. Including the Art of Alloying, Melting, Reducing, Colouring, Collecting and Refining. Chemical and Physical Properties of Gold, with a new System of Mixing its Alloys; Solders, Enamels, &c. By GEORGE E. GEE. Second Edition, enlarged. 12mo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

"The best work yet printed on its subject for a reasonable price."—*Jeweller.*

"Essentially a practical manual, well adapted to the wants of amateurs and apprentices, containing trustworthy information that only a practical man can supply."—*English Mechanic.*

Silver and Silver Working.

THE SILVERSMITH'S HANDBOOK, containing full Instructions for the Alloying and Working of Silver. Including the different Modes of Refining and Melting the Metal, its Solders, the Preparation of Imitation Alloys, &c. By G. E. GEE. 12mo, 3s. 6d.

"The chief merit of the work is its practical character. The workers in the trade will speedily discover its merits when they sit down to study it."—*English Mechanic.*

Hall-Marking of Jewellery.

THE HALL-MARKING OF JEWELLERY PRACTICALLY CONSIDERED, comprising an account of all the different Assay Towns of the United Kingdom; with the Stamps at present employed; also the Laws relating to the Standards and Hall-Marks at the various Assay Offices; and a variety of Practical Suggestions concerning the Mixing of Standard Alloys, &c. By GEORGE E. GEE. Crown 8vo, 5s. cloth.

Electro-Plating, &c.

ELECTROPLATING: A Practical Handbook. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E. Crown 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"An ordinarily intelligent person may become an adept in electro-deposition with a very little science indeed, and this is the book to show the way."—*Builder.*

Electrotyping, &c.

ELECTROTYPING: The Reproduction and Multiplication of Printing Surfaces and Works of Art by the Electro-deposition of Metals. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E. Crown 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"A guide to beginners and those who practise the old and imperfect methods."—*Iron.*

Electro-Plating.

ELECTRO-METALLURGY PRACTICALLY TREATED. BY ALEXANDER WATT, F.R.S.S.A. Including the Electro-Deposition of Copper, Silver, Gold, Brass and Bronze, Platinum, Lead, Nickel, Tin, Zinc, Alloys of Metals, Practical Notes, &c., &c. Eighth Edition, Revised, including the most recent Processes. 12mo, 3s. 6d., cloth.

"From this book both amateur and artisan may learn everything necessary for the successful prosecution of electroplating."—*Iron.*

"A practical treatise for the use of those who desire to work in the art of electro-deposition as a business."—*English Mechanic.*

Dentistry.

MECHANICAL DENTISTRY. A Practical Treatise on the Construction of the various kinds of Artificial Dentures. Comprising also Useful Formulæ, Tables, and Receipts for Gold Plate, Clasps, Solders, etc., etc. By CHARLES HUNTER. Second Edition, Revised; including a new chapter on the use of Celluloid. With over 100 Engravings. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d., cloth.

"An authoritative treatise, which we can strongly recommend to all students."—*Dublin Journal of Medical Science.*

Electricity.

A MANUAL of ELECTRICITY; including Galvanism, Magnetism, Diamagnetism, Electro-Dynamics, Magneto-Electricity, and the Electric Telegraph. By HENRY M. NOAD, Ph.D., F.C.S. Fourth Edition, with 500 Woodcuts. 8vo, 1l. 4s. cloth.

"The accounts given of electricity and galvanism are not only complete in a scientific sense, but, which is a rarer thing, are popular and interesting."—*Lancet.*

Text-Book of Electricity.

THE STUDENT'S TEXT-BOOK OF ELECTRICITY. By HENRY M. NOAD, Ph.D., F.R.S., &c. New Edition, Revised. With an Introduction and Additional Chapters by W. H. PREECE, M.I.C.E., Vice-President of the Society of Telegraph Engineers, &c. With 470 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 12s. 6d. cloth.

"A reflex of the existing state of Electrical Science adapted for students."—W. H. Preece, Esq., vide "Introduction."

"We can recommend Dr. Noad's book for clear style, great range of subject, a good index, and a plethora of woodcuts. Such collections as the present are indispensable."—*Athenæum.*

"An admirable text-book for every student—beginner or advanced—of electricity."—*Engineering.*

"Recommended to students as one of the best text-books on the subject that they can have. Mr. Preece appears to have introduced all the newest inventions in the shape of telegraphic, telephonic, and electric-lighting apparatus."—*English Mechanic.*

"Under the editorial hand of Mr. Preece the late Dr. Noad's text-book of electricity has grown into an admirable handbook."—*Westminster Review.*

Electric Lighting.

ELECTRIC LIGHT: Its Production and Use, embodying plain Directions for the Treatment of Voltaic Batteries, Electric Lamps, and Dynamo-Electric Machines. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E., Author of "Electroplating." Edited by F. C. WEBB, M.I.C.E., M.S.T.E. 2nd Edition, Carefully Revised, with Large Additions and 128 Illustrations. Cr. 8vo, 7s. 6d. cloth.

"The book is by far the best that we have yet met with on the subject."—*Athenæum.*

"An important addition to the literature of the electric light. Students of the subject should not fail to read it."—*Colliery Guardian.*

Lightning.

THE ACTION of LIGHTNING, and the MEANS of DEFENDING LIFE AND PROPERTY FROM ITS EFFECTS. By Major ARTHUR PARNELL, R.E. 12mo, 7s. 6d. cloth.

"Major Parnell has written an original work on a scientific subject of unusual interest; and he has prefaced his arguments by a patient and almost exhaustive citation of the best writers on the subject in the English language."—*Athenæum.*

"The work comprises all that is actually known on the subject."—*Land.*

"Major Parnell's measures are based on the results of experience. A valuable repertoire of facts and principles arranged in a scientific form."—*Building News.*

The Alkali Trade—Sulphuric Acid, &c.

A MANUAL OF THE ALKALI TRADE, including the Manufacture of Sulphuric Acid, Sulphate of Soda, and Bleaching Powder. By JOHN LOMAS, Alkali Manufacturer. With 232 Illustrations and Working Drawings, and containing 386 pages of text. Super-royal 8vo, 2l. 12s. 6d. cloth.

This work provides (1) a Complete Handbook for intending Alkali and Sulphuric Acid Manufacturers, and for those already in the field who desire to improve their plant, or to become practically acquainted with the latest processes and developments of the trade; (2) a Handy Volume which Manufacturers can put into the hands of their Managers and Foremen as a useful guide in their daily rounds of duty.

SYNOPSIS OF CONTENTS.

<p>Chap. I. Choice of Site and General Plan of Works—II. Sulphuric Acid—III. Recovery of the Nitrogen Compounds, and Treatment of Small Pyrites—IV. The Salt Cake Process—V. Legislation upon the Noxious Vapours Question—VI. The Hargreaves' and Jones' Processes—VII. The Balling Process—VIII. Lixiviation and Salting Down—</p>	<p>IX. Carbonating or Finishing—X. Soda Crystals—XI. Refined Alkali—XII. Caustic Soda—XIII. Bi-carbonate of Soda—XIV. Bleaching Powder—XV. Utilisation of Tank Waste—XVI. General Remarks—Four Appendices, treating of Yields, Sulphuric Acid Calculations, Anemometers, and Foreign Legislation upon the Noxious Vapours Question.</p>
--	---

"The author has given the fullest, most practical, and, to all concerned in the alkali trade, most valuable mass of information that, to our knowledge, has been published in any language."—*Engineer*.

"This book is written by a manufacturer for manufacturers. The working details of the most approved forms of apparatus are given, and these are accompanied by no less than 232 wood engravings, all of which may be used for the purposes of construction. Every step in the manufacture is very fully described in this manual, and each improvement explained. Everything which tends to introduce economy into the technical details of this trade receives the fullest attention."—*Athenæum*.

"The author is not one of those clever compilers who, on short notice, will 'read up' any conceivable subject, but a practical man in the best sense of the word. We find here not merely a sound and luminous explanation of the chemical principles of the trade, but a notice of numerous matters which have a most important bearing on the successful conduct of alkali works, but which are generally overlooked by even the most experienced technological authors."—*Chemical Review*.

Soap-making.

THE ART OF SOAP-MAKING, 'A Practical Handbook of the Manufacture of Hard and Soft Soaps, Toilet Soaps, &c. Including Descriptions of many New Processes and a Chapter on the Recovery of Glycerine from Waste Leys. By ALEXANDER WATT, Author of "Electro-Metallurgy Practically Treated," &c.

[Nearly ready.]

Chemical Analysis.

THE COMMERCIAL HANDBOOK of CHEMICAL ANALYSIS; or Practical Instructions for the determination of the Intrinsic or Commercial Value of Substances used in Manufactures, in Trades, and in the Arts. By A. NORMANDY. *New Edition*. Enlarged, and to a great extent re-written, by HENRY M. NOAD, Ph. D., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Cr. 8vo, 12s. 6d. cloth.

"We recommend this book to the careful perusal of every one; it may be truly affirmed to be of universal interest, and we strongly recommend it as a guide, alike indispensable to the housewife as to the pharmaceutical practitioner."—*Medical Times*.

"Essential to the analysts appointed under the new Act. The most recent results are given, and the work is well edited and carefully written."—*Nature*.

Dr. Lardner's Museum of Science and Art.

THE MUSEUM OF SCIENCE AND ART. Edited by DIONYSIUS LARDNER, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in University College, London. With upwards of 1200 Engravings on Wood. In 6 Double Volumes. Price £1 1s., in a new and elegant cloth binding, or handsomely bound in half morocco, 31s. 6d.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"This series, besides affording popular but sound instruction on scientific subjects, with which the humblest man in the country ought to be acquainted, also undertakes that teaching of 'common things' which every well-wisher of his kind is anxious to promote. Many thousand copies of this serviceable publication have been printed, in the belief and hope that the desire for instruction and improvement widely prevails; and we have no fear that such enlightened faith will meet with disappointment."—*Times*.

"A cheap and interesting publication, alike informing and attractive. The papers combine subjects of importance and great scientific knowledge, considerable inductive powers, and a popular style of treatment."—*Spectator*.

"The 'Museum of Science and Art' is the most valuable contribution that has ever been made to the Scientific Instruction of every class of society."—*Sir David Brewster in the North British Review*.

"Whether we consider the liberality and beauty of the illustrations, the charm of the writing, or the durable interest of the matter, we must express our belief that there is hardly to be found among the new books, one that would be welcomed by people of so many ages and classes as a valuable present."—*Examiner*.

* * *Separate books formed from the above, suitable for Workmen's Libraries, Science Classes, &c.*

COMMON THINGS EXPLAINED. Containing Air, Earth, Fire, Water, Time, Man, the Eye, Locomotion, Colour, Clocks and Watches, &c. 233 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 5s.

THE MICROSCOPE. Containing Optical Images, Magnifying Glasses, Origin and Description of the Microscope, Microscopic Objects, the Solar Microscope, Microscopic Drawing and Engraving, &c. 147 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s.

POPULAR GEOLOGY. Containing Earthquakes and Volcanoes, the Crust of the Earth, etc. 201 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s. 6d.

POPULAR PHYSICS. Containing Magnitude and Minuteness, the Atmosphere, Meteoric Stones, Popular Fallacies, Weather Prognostics, the Thermometer, the Barometer, Sound, &c. 85 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s. 6d.

STEAM AND ITS USES. Including the Steam Engine, the Locomotive, and Steam Navigation. 89 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s.

POPULAR ASTRONOMY. Containing How to Observe the Heavens. The Earth, Sun, Moon, Planets. Light, Comets, Eclipses, Astronomical Influences, &c. 182 Illustrations, 4s. 6d.

THE BEE AND WHITE ANTS: Their Manners and Habits. With Illustrations of Animal Instinct and Intelligence. 135 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 2s.

THE ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH POPULARISED. To render intelligible to all who can Read, irrespective of any previous Scientific Acquirements, the various forms of Telegraphy in Actual Operation. 100 Illustrations, cloth gilt, 1s. 6d.

Dr. Lardner's Handbooks of Natural Philosophy.

* * * *The following five volumes, though each is Complete in itself, and to be purchased separately, form A COMPLETE COURSE OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, and are intended for the general reader who desires to attain accurate knowledge of the various departments of Physical Science, without pursuing them according to the more profound methods of mathematical investigation. The style is studiously popular. It has been the author's aim to supply Manuals such as are required by the Student, the Engineer, the Artisan, and the superior classes in Schools.*

THE HANDBOOK OF MECHANICS. Enlarged and almost rewritten by BENJAMIN LOEWY, F.R.A.S. With 378 Illustrations. Post 8vo, 6s. cloth.

"The perspicuity of the original has been retained, and chapters which had become obsolete, have been replaced by others of more modern character. The explanations throughout are studiously popular, and care has been taken to show the application of the various branches of physics to the industrial arts, and to the practical business of life."—*Mining Journal*.

THE HANDBOOK OF HYDROSTATICS and PNEUMATICS.

New Edition, Revised and Enlarged by BENJAMIN LOEWY, F.R.A.S. With 236 Illustrations. Post 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"For those who desire to attain an accurate knowledge of physical science without the profound methods of mathematical investigation, this work is not merely intended, but well adapted."—*Chemical News*.

THE HANDBOOK OF HEAT. Edited and almost entirely rewritten by BENJAMIN LOEWY, F.R.A.S., etc. 117 Illustrations. Post 8vo, 6s. cloth.

"The style is always clear and precise, and conveys instruction without leaving any cloudiness or lurking doubts behind."—*Engineering*.

THE HANDBOOK OF OPTICS. New Edition. Edited by T. OLVER HARDING, B.A. 298 Illustrations. Post 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"Written by one of the ablest English scientific writers; beautifully and elaborately illustrated."—*Mechanics' Magazine*.

THE HANDBOOK OF ELECTRICITY, MAGNETISM, and ACOUSTICS. New Edition. Edited by GEO. CAREY FOSTER, B.A., F.C.S. With 400 Illustrations. Post 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"The book could not have been entrusted to any one better calculated to preserve the terse and lucid style of Lardner, while correcting his errors and bringing up his work to the present state of scientific knowledge."—*Popular Science Review*.

Dr. Lardner's Handbook of Astronomy.

THE HANDBOOK OF ASTRONOMY. Forming a Companion to the "Handbooks of Natural Philosophy." By DIONYSIUS LARDNER, D.C.L. Fourth Edition. Revised and Edited by EDWIN DUNKIN, F.R.S., Royal Observatory, Greenwich. With 38 Plates and upwards of 100 Woodcuts. In 1 vol., small 8vo, 550 pages, 9s. 6d., cloth.

"Probably no other book contains the same amount of information in so compendious and well-arranged a form—certainly none at the price at which this is offered to the public."—*Athenæum*.

"We can do no other than pronounce this work a most valuable manual of astronomy, and we strongly recommend it to all who wish to acquire a general—but at the same time correct—acquaintance with this sublime science."—*Quarterly Journal of Science*.

Dr. Lardner's Handbook of Animal Physics.

THE HANDBOOK OF ANIMAL PHYSICS. By DR. LARDNER. With 520 Illustrations. New edition, small 8vo, cloth, 732 pages, 7s. 6d.

"We have no hesitation in cordially recommending it."—*Educational Times*.

Dr. Lardner's School Handbooks.

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR SCHOOLS. By DR. LARDNER.
328 Illustrations. Sixth Edition. 1 vol. 3s. 6d. cloth.

"Conveys, in clear and precise terms, general notions of all the principal divisions of Physical Science."—*British Quarterly Review*.

ANIMAL PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS. By DR. LARDNER.
With 190 Illustrations. Second Edition. 1 vol. 3s. 6d. cloth.

"Clearly written, well arranged, and excellently illustrated."—*Gardeners' Chronicle*.

Dr. Lardner's Electric Telegraph.

THE ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH. By DR. LARDNER. New Edition. Revised and Re-written, by E. B. BRIGHT, F.R.A.S.
140 Illustrations. Small 8vo, 2s. 6d. cloth.

"One of the most readable books extant on the Electric Telegraph."—*Eng. Mechanic*.

Mollusca.

A MANUAL OF THE MOLLUSCA; being a Treatise on Recent and Fossil Shells. By Dr. S. P. WOODWARD, A.L.S.
With Appendix by RALPH TATE, A.L.S., F.G.S. With numerous Plates and 300 Woodcuts. 3rd Edition. Cr. 8vo, 7s. 6d. cloth.

Geology and Genesis.

THE TWIN RECORDS OF CREATION; or, 'Geology and Genesis, their Perfect Harmony and Wonderful Concord. By GEORGE W. VICTOR LE VAUX. Fcap. 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"A valuable contribution to the evidences of revelation, and disposes very conclusively of the arguments of those who would set God's Works against God's Word. No real difficulty is shirked, and no sophistry is left unexposed."—*The Rock*.

Geology.

GEOLOGY, PHYSICAL AND HISTORICAL: Consisting of "Physical Geology," which sets forth the Leading Principles of the Science; and "Historical Geology," which treats of the Mineral and Organic Conditions of the Earth at each successive epoch, especial reference being made to the British Series of Rocks. By RALPH TATE. With more than 250 Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo, 5s. cloth.

Practical Philosophy.

A SYNOPSIS OF PRACTICAL PHILOSOPHY. By Rev. JOHN CARR, M.A., late Fellow of Trin. Coll., Camb. 18mo, 5s. cl.

The Military Sciences.

AIDE-MÉMOIRE to the MILITARY SCIENCES. Framed from Contributions of Officers and others connected with the different Services. Originally edited by a Committee of the Corps of Royal Engineers. 2nd Edition, revised; nearly 350 Engravings and many hundred Woodcuts. 3 vols. royal 8vo, cloth, 4l. 10s.

Field Fortification.

A TREATISE on FIELD FORTIFICATION, the ATTACK of FORTRESSES, MILITARY MINING, and RECON-NOITRING. By Colonel I. S. MACAULAY, late Professor of Fortification in the R. M. A., Woolwich. Sixth Edition, crown 8vo, cloth, with separate Atlas of 12 Plates, 12s. complete,

Clocks, Watches, and Bells.

RUDIMENTARY TREATISE on CLOCKS, and WATCHES, and BELLS. By Sir EDMUND BECKETT, Bart., LL.D., Q.C., F.R.A.S. Seventh Edition, revised and enlarged. Limp cloth (No. 67, Weale's Series), 4s. 6d.; cl. bds. 5s. 6d.

"The best work on the subject extant. The treatise on bells is undoubtedly the best in the language."—*Engineering*.

"The only modern treatise on clock-making."—*Horological Journal*.

The Construction of the Organ.

PRACTICAL ORGAN-BUILDING. By W. E. DICKSON, M.A., Precentor of Ely Cathedral. Second Edition, revised, with Additions. 12mo, 3s. cloth boards.

"The amateur builder will find in this book all that is necessary to enable him personally to construct a perfect organ with his own hands."—*Academy*.

Brewing.

A HANDBOOK FOR YOUNG BREWERS. By HERBERT EDWARDS WRIGHT, B.A. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

"A thoroughly scientific treatise in popular language."—*Morning Advertiser*.

"We would particularly recommend teachers of the art to place it in every pupil's hands, and we feel sure its perusal will be attended with advantage."—*Brewer*.

Dye-Wares and Colours.

THE MANUAL of COLOURS and DYE-WARES: their Properties, Applications, Valuation, Impurities, and Sophistications. For the Use of Dyers, Printers, Drysalters, Brokers, &c. By J. W. SLATER. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d. cloth.

"A complete encyclopædia of the materia tinctoria."—*Chemist and Druggist*.

"The newest resources of the dyer and printer are noticed with completeness, accuracy, and clearness."—*Chemical News*.

Grammar of Colouring.

A GRAMMAR OF COLOURING, applied to Decorative Painting and the Arts. By GEORGE FIELD. New edition. By ELLIS A. DAVIDSON. 12mo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

Woods and Marbles (Imitation of).

SCHOOL OF PAINTING FOR THE IMITATION OF WOODS AND MARBLES, as Taught and Practised by A. R. and P. VAN DER BURG. With 24 full-size Coloured Plates; also 12 Plain Plates, comprising 154 Figures. Folio, 2l. 12s. 6d. bound.

"The book will be usefully studied by all those who imitate woods and marbles, as a comprehensive guide to the art."—*Building News*.

Pictures and Painters.

THE PICTURE AMATEUR'S HANDBOOK AND DICTIONARY OF PAINTERS: A Guide for Visitors to Picture Galleries, and for Art-Students, including methods of Painting, Cleaning, Re-Lining, and Restoring, the Principal Schools of Painting. With Notes on Copyists and Imitators of each Master. By PHILIPPE DARYL, B.A. Cr. 8vo, 3s. cloth.

"A really admirable dictionary of painters, which we cordially recommend."—

Builder.

"A guide to the authorship, quality, and value of a picture, and furnishes the fundamental knowledge necessary to amateurs."—*Saturday Review*.]

Delamotte's Works on Illumination & Alphabets.

A PRIMER OF THE ART OF ILLUMINATION; for the use of Beginners: with a Rudimentary Treatise on the Art, Practical Directions for its Exercise, and numerous Examples taken from Illuminated MSS., printed in Gold and Colours. By F. DELAMOTTE. Small 4to, 9s. Elegantly bound, cloth antique.

"The examples of ancient MSS. recommended to the student, which, with much good sense, the author chooses from collections accessible to all, are selected with judgment and knowledge, as well as taste."—*Athenæum*.

ORNAMENTAL ALPHABETS, ANCIENT and MEDIÆVAL; from the Eighth Century, with Numerals; including Gothic, Church-Text, German, Italian, Arabesque, Initials, Monograms, Crosses, &c. Collected and engraved by F. DELAMOTTE, and printed in Colours. Tenth and Cheaper Edition. Royal 8vo, oblong, 2s. 6d. ornamental boards.

"For those who insert enamelled sentences round gilded chalices, who blazon shop legends over shop-doors, who letter church walls with pithy sentences from the Decalogue, this book will be useful."—*Athenæum*.

EXAMPLES OF MODERN ALPHABETS, PLAIN and ORNAMENTAL; including German, Old English, Saxon, Italic, Perspective, Greek, Hebrew, Court Hand, Engrossing, Tuscan, Riband, Gothic, Rustic, and Arabesque, &c., &c. Collected and engraved by F. DELAMOTTE, and printed in Colours. Eighth and Cheaper Edition. Royal 8vo, oblong, 2s. 6d. ornamental boards.

"There is comprised in it every possible shape into which the letters of the alphabet and numerals can be formed."—*Standard*.

MEDIÆVAL ALPHABETS AND INITIALS FOR ILLUMINATORS. By F. DELAMOTTE. Containing 21 Plates, and Illuminated Title, printed in Gold and Colours. With an Introduction by J. WILLIS BROOKS. Small 4to, 6s. cloth gilt.

THE EMBROIDERER'S BOOK OF DESIGN; containing Initials, Emblems, Cyphers, Monograms, Ornamental Borders, Ecclesiastical Devices, Mediæval and Modern Alphabets, and National Emblems. Collected and engraved by F. DELAMOTTE, and printed in Colours. Oblong royal 8vo, 1s. 6d. ornamental wrapper.

Popular Work on Painting.

PAINTING POPULARLY EXPLAINED; with Historical Sketches of the Progress of the Art. By THOMAS JOHN GULLICK, Painter, and JOHN TIMBS, F.S.A. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. With Frontispiece and Vignette. In small 8vo, 5s. 6d. cloth.

* * * This Work has been adopted as a Prize-book in the Schools of Art at South Kensington.

"Contains a large amount of original matter, agreeably conveyed."—*Builder*.

"Much may be learned, even by those who fancy they do not require to be taught, from the careful perusal of this unpretending but comprehensive treatise."—*Art Journal*.

Wood-Carving.

INSTRUCTIONS in WOOD-CARVING, for Amateurs; with Hints on Design. By A LADY. In emblematic wrapper, handsomely printed, with Ten large Plates, 2s. 6d.

"The handicraft of the wood-carver, so well as a book can impart it, may be learnt from 'A Lady's' publication."—*Athenæum*.

AGRICULTURE, GARDENING, ETC.

Youatt and Burn's Complete Grazier.

THE COMPLETE GRAZIER, and FARMER'S and CATTLE-BREEDER'S ASSISTANT. A Compendium of Husbandry. By WILLIAM YOUATT, ESQ., V.S. 12th Edition, very considerably enlarged, and brought up to the present requirements of agricultural practice. By ROBERT SCOTT BURN. One large 8vo. volume, 860 pp. with 244 Illustrations. 1l. 1s. half-bound.

"The standard and text-book, with the farmer and grazier."—*Farmer's Magazine*.
 "A treatise which will remain a standard work on the subject as long as British agriculture endures."—*Mark Lane Express*.

History, Structure, and Diseases of Sheep.

SHEEP; THE HISTORY, STRUCTURE, ECONOMY, AND DISEASES OF. By W. C. SPOONER, M.R.V.C., &c. Fourth Edition, with fine engravings, including specimens of New and Improved Breeds. 366 pp., 4s. cloth.

Production of Meat.

MEAT PRODUCTION. A Manual for Producers, Distributors, and Consumers of Butchers' Meat. Being a treatise on means of increasing its Home Production. Also treating of the Breeding, Rearing, Fattening, and Slaughtering of Meat-yielding Live Stock; Indications of the Quality, etc. By JOHN EWART. Cr. 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"A compact and handy volume on the meat question, which deserves serious and thoughtful consideration at the present time."—*Meat and Provision Trades' Review*.

Donaldson and Burn's Suburban Farming.

SUBURBAN FARMING. A Treatise on the Laying Out and Cultivation of Farms adapted to the produce of Milk, Butter and Cheese, Eggs, Poultry, and Pigs. By the late Professor JOHN DONALDSON. With Additions, Illustrating the more Modern Practice, by R. SCOTT BURN. 12mo, 4s. cloth boards.

English Agriculture.

A TEXT-BOOK OF AGRICULTURE (THE FIELDS OF GREAT BRITAIN), adapted to the Syllabus of the Science and Art Department. For Elementary and Advanced Students. By HUGH CLEMENTS (Board of Trade). With an Introduction by H. KAINS-JACKSON. 18mo, 2s. 6d. cloth.

"A clearly written description of the ordinary routine of English farm-life."—*Land*.
 "A carefully written text-book of Agriculture."—*Athenæum*. [Economist.
 "A most comprehensive volume, giving a mass of information."—*Agricultura*.

Modern Farming.

OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING. By R. SCOTT BURN. Soils, Manures, and Crops—Farming and Farming Economy—Cattle, Sheep, and Horses—Management of the Dairy, Pigs, and Poultry—Utilisation of Town Sewage, Irrigation, &c. Sixth Edition. In 1 vol. 1250 pp., half-bound, profusely illustrated, 12s.

"There is sufficient stated within the limits of this treatise to prevent a farmer from going far wrong in any of his operations."—*Observer*.

The Management of Estates.

LANDED ESTATES MANAGEMENT: Treating of the Varieties of Lands, Methods of Farming, Farm Building, Irrigation, Drainage, &c. By R. SCOTT BURN. 12mo, 3s. cloth.

"A complete and comprehensive outline of the duties appertaining to the management of landed estates."—*Journal of Forestry*.

The Management of Farms.

OUTLINES OF FARM MANAGEMENT, and the Organization of Farm Labour. Treating of the General Work of the Farm, Field, and Live Stock, Details of Contract Work, Specialties of Labour, Economical Management of the Farmhouse and Cottage, Domestic Animals, &c. By ROBERT SCOTT BURN. 12mo, 3s.

Management of Estates and Farms.

LANDED ESTATES AND FARM MANAGEMENT. By R. SCOTT BURN. (The above Two Works in One Vol.) 6s.

Hudson's Tables for Land Valuers.

THE LAND VALUER'S BEST ASSISTANT: being Tables, on a very much improved Plan, for Calculating the Value of Estates. With Tables for reducing Scotch, Irish, and Provincial Customary Acres to Statute Measure, &c. By R. HUDSON, C.E. New Edition, royal 32mo, leather, gilt edges, elastic band, 4s.

Ewart's Land Improver's Pocket-Book.

THE LAND IMPROVER'S POCKET-BOOK OF FORMULÆ, TABLES, and MEMORANDA, required in any Computation relating to the Permanent Improvement of Landed Property. By JOHN EWART, Land Surveyor. 32mo, leather, 4s.

Complete Agricultural Surveyor's Pocket-Book.

THE LAND VALUER'S AND LAND IMPROVER'S COMPLETE POCKET-BOOK; consisting of the above two works bound together, leather, gilt edges, with strap, 7s. 6d.

"We consider Hudson's book to be the best ready-reckoner on matters relating to the valuation of land and crops we have ever seen, and its combination with Mr. Ewart's work greatly enhances the value and usefulness of the latter-mentioned.—It is most useful as a manual for reference."—*North of England Farmer*.

Grafting and Budding.

THE ART OF GRAFTING AND BUDDING. By CHARLES BALLET. Translated from the French. With upwards of 180 Illustrations. 12mo, 3s. cloth boards.

Culture of Fruit Trees.

FRUIT TREES, the Scientific and Profitable Culture of. Including Choice of Trees, Planting, Grafting, Training, Restoration of Unfruitful Trees, &c. From the French of DU BREUIL. Fourth Edition, revised. With an Introduction by GEORGE GLENNY. 4s. cl.

"The book teaches how to prune and train fruit-trees to perfection."—*Field*.

Potato Culture.

POTATOES, HOW TO GROW AND SHOW THEM: A Practical Guide to the Cultivation and General Treatment of the Potato. By JAMES PINK. With Illustrations. Cr. 8vo, 2s. cl.

Good Gardening.

A PLAIN GUIDE TO GOOD GARDENING; or, How to Grow Vegetables, Fruits, and Flowers. With Practical Notes on Soils, Manures, Seeds, Planting, Laying-out of Gardens and Grounds, &c. By S. WOOD. Third Edition. Cr. 8vo, 5s. cloth.

"A very good book, and one to be highly recommended as a practical guide. The practical directions are excellent."—*Athenæum*.

Gainful Gardening.

MULTUM-IN-PARVO GARDENING; or, How to make One Acre of Land produce £620 a year, by the Cultivation of Fruits and Vegetables; also, How to Grow Flowers in Three Glass Houses, so as to realise £176 per annum clear Profit. By SAMUEL WOOD. 3rd Edition, revised. Cr. 8vo, 2s. cloth.

"We are bound to recommend it as not only suited to the case of the amateur and gentleman's gardener, but to the market grower."—*Gardener's Magazine*.

Gardening for Ladies.

THE LADIES' MULTUM-IN-PARVO FLOWER GARDEN, and Amateur's Complete Guide. By S. WOOD. Cr. 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Bulb Culture.

THE BULB GARDEN, or, How to Cultivate Bulbous and Tuberos-rooted Flowering Plants to Perfection. By SAMUEL WOOD. Coloured Plates. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

Tree Planting.

THE TREE PLANTER AND PLANT PROPAGATOR: A Practical Manual on the Propagation of Forest Trees, Fruit Trees, Flowering Shrubs, Flowering Plants, Pot Herbs, &c. Numerous Illustrations. By SAMUEL WOOD. 12mo, 2s. 6d. cloth.

Tree Pruning.

THE TREE PRUNER: A Practical Manual on the Pruning of Fruit Trees, their Training and Renovation; also the Pruning of Shrubs, Climbers, &c. By S. WOOD. 12mo, 2s. 6d. cloth.

Tree Planting, Pruning, & Plant Propagation.

THE TREE PLANTER, PROPAGATOR, AND PRUNER. By SAMUEL WOOD, Author of "Good Gardening," &c. Consisting of the above Two Works in One Vol., 5s. half-bound.

Early Fruits, Flowers and Vegetables.

THE FORCING GARDEN: or, How to Grow Early Fruits, Flowers, and Vegetables. With Plans and Estimates for Building Glasshouses, Pits, Frames, &c. By S. WOOD. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

Market Gardening, Etc.

THE KITCHEN AND MARKET GARDEN. By Contributors to "The Garden." Compiled by C. W. SHAW, Editor of "Gardening Illustrated." 12mo, 3s. 6d. cl. bds.

Kitchen Gardening.

KITCHEN GARDENING MADE EASY. Showing how to prepare and lay out the ground, the best means of cultivating every known Vegetable and Herb, etc. By G. M. F. GLENNY. 12mo, 2s.

'A Complete Epitome of the Laws of this Country.'

EVERY MAN'S OWN LAWYER; a Handy-Book of the Principles of Law and Equity. By A BARRISTER. New Edition. Corrected to the end of last Session. Embracing upwards of 3,500 Statements on Points of Law, Verified by the addition of Notes and References to the Authorities. Crown 8vo, cloth, price 6s. 8d. (saved at every consultation).

COMPRISING THE RIGHTS AND WRONGS OF INDIVIDUALS, MERCANTILE AND COMMERCIAL LAW, CRIMINAL LAW, PARISH LAW, COUNTY COURT

LAW, GAME AND FISHERY LAWS, POOR MEN'S LAW, THE LAWS OF BANKRUPTCY—BILLS OF EXCHANGE—CONTRACTS AND AGREEMENTS—COPYRIGHT—DOWER AND DIVORCE—ELECTIONS AND REGISTRATION—INSURANCE—LIBEL AND SLANDER—MORTGAGES—

Also Law for Landlord and Tenant—Master and Servant—Workmen and Apprentices—Heirs, Devisees, and Legatees—Husband and Wife—Executors and Trustees—Guardian and Ward—Married Women and Infants—Partners and Agents—Lender and Borrower—Debtor and Creditor—Purchaser and Vendor—Companies and Associations—Friendly Societies—Clergymen, Churchwardens—Medical Practitioners, &c.—Bankers—Farmers—Contractors—Stock and Share Brokers—Sportsmen and Gamekeepers—Farriers and Horse-Dealers—Auctioneers, House-Agents—Innkeepers, &c.—Pawbrokers—Surveyors, &c., &c.

"No Englishman ought to be without this book."—*Engineer.*

"What it professes to be—a complete epitome of the laws of this country, thoroughly intelligible to non-professional readers. The book is a handy one to have in readiness when some knotty point requires ready solution."—*Bell's Life.*

"A useful and concise epitome of the law."—*Law Magazine.*

Auctioneer's Assistant.

THE APPRAISER, AUCTIONEER, BROKER, HOUSE AND ESTATE AGENT, AND VALUER'S POCKET ASSISTANT, for the Valuation for Purchase, Sale, or Renewal of Leases, Annuities, and Reversions, and of property generally; with Prices for Inventories, &c. By JOHN WHEELER, Valuer, &c.

Fourth Edition, enlarged, by C. NORRIS. Royal 32mo, cloth, 5s.

"A concise book of reference, containing a clearly-arranged list of prices for inventories, a practical guide to determine the value of furniture, &c."—*Standard.*

Auctioneering.

AUCTIONEERS: THEIR DUTIES AND LIABILITIES.

By ROBERT SQUIBBS, Auctioneer. Demy 8vo, 10s. 6d. cloth.

"The history, position, and duties of auctioneers, treated compendiously and clearly."—*Builder.*

House Property.

HANDBOOK OF HOUSE PROPERTY: a Popular and Practical Guide to the Purchase, Mortgage, Tenancy, and Compulsory Sale of Houses and Land; including the Law of Dilapidations and Fixtures, &c. By E. L. TARBUCK. 3rd Edit. 12mo, 3s. 6d. cloth.

"We are glad to be able to recommend it."—*Builder.*

"The advice is thoroughly practical."—*Law Journal.*

[*Just published.*]

Metropolitan Rating.

METROPOLITAN RATING: a Summary of the Appeals heard before the Court of General Assessment Sessions at Westminster, in the years 1871-80 inclusive. Containing a large mass of very valuable information with respect to the Rating of Railways, Gas and Waterworks, Tramways, Wharves, Public Houses, &c. By EDWARD and A. L. RYDE. 8vo, 12s. 6d.

Weale's Rudimentary Series.



PHILADELPHIA, 1876.
THE PRIZE MEDAL
Was awarded to the Publishers for
Books: Rudimentary, Scientific,
"WEALE'S SERIES," ETC.



A NEW LIST OF WEALE'S SERIES

RUDIMENTARY SCIENTIFIC, EDUCATIONAL
AND CLASSICAL.

Comprising nearly Two Hundred distinct works in almost every department of Science, Art, and Education, recommended to the notice of Engineers, Architects, Builders, Artisans, and Students generally, as well as to those interested in Workmen's Libraries, Literary and Scientific Institutions, Colleges, Schools, Science Classes, &c., &c.

“WEALE'S SERIES includes Text-Books on almost every branch of Science and Industry, comprising such subjects as Agriculture, Architecture and Building, Civil Engineering, Fine Arts, Mechanics and Mechanical Engineering, Physical and Chemical Science, and many miscellaneous Treatises. The whole are constantly undergoing revision, and new editions, brought up to the latest discoveries in scientific research, are constantly issued. The prices at which they are sold are as low as their excellence is assured.”—*American Literary Gazette.*

“Amongst the literature of technical education, WEALE'S SERIES has ever enjoyed a high reputation, and the additions being made by Messrs. CROSBY LOCKWOOD & CO. render the series even more complete, and bring the information upon the several subjects down to the present time.”—*Mining Journal.*

“It is impossible to do otherwise than bear testimony to the value of WEALE'S SERIES.”—*Engineer.*

“Everybody—even that outrageous nuisance 'Every Schoolboy'—knows the merits of 'WEALE'S RUDIMENTARY SERIES.' Any persons wishing to acquire knowledge cannot do better than look through Weale's Series and get all the books they require. The Series is indeed an inexhaustible mine of literary wealth.”—*The Metropolitan.*

“WEALE'S SERIES has become a standard as well as an unrivalled collection of treatises in all branches of art and science.”—*Public Opinion.*



LONDON, 1862.
THE PRIZE MEDAL
Was awarded to the Publishers of
"WEALE'S SERIES."



CROSBY LOCKWOOD & CO.,

7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL, LONDON, E.C.

WEALE'S RUDIMENTARY SCIENTIFIC SERIES.



** The volumes of this Series are freely Illustrated with Woodcuts, or otherwise, where requisite. Throughout the following List it must be understood that the books are bound in limp cloth, unless otherwise stated; but the volumes marked with a † may also be had strongly bound in cloth boards for 6d. extra.

N.B.—In ordering from this List it is recommended, as a means of facilitating business and obviating error, to quote the numbers affixed to the volumes, as well as the titles and prices.

CIVIL ENGINEERING, SURVEYING, ETC.

31. **WELLS AND WELL-SINKING.** By JOHN GEO. SWINDELL, A.R.I.B.A., and G. R. BURNELL, C.E. Revised Edition. With a New Appendix on the Qualities of Water. Illustrated. 2s.
35. **THE BLASTING AND QUARRYING OF STONE,** for Building and other Purposes. With Remarks on the Blowing up of Bridges. By Gen. Sir JOHN BURGOYNE, Bart., K.C.B. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
44. **FOUNDATIONS AND CONCRETE WORKS,** a Rudimentary Treatise on; containing a Synopsis of the principal cases of Foundation Works, with the usual Modes of Treatment, and Practical Remarks on Footings, Planking, Sand, Concrete, Béton, Pile-driving, Caissons, and Cofferdams. By E. DONSON, M.R.I.B.A., &c. Fifth Edition, revised. 1s. 6d.
60. **LAND AND ENGINEERING SURVEYING,** a Treatise on; with all the Modern Improvements. By T. BAKER, C.E. New Edition, revised by EDWARD NUGENT, C.E. Illustrated with Plates and Diagrams. 2s.†
- 80*. **EMBANKING LANDS FROM THE SEA,** the Practice of. Treated as a Means of Profitable Employment for Capital. With Examples and Particulars of actual Embankments, &c. By J. WIGGINS, F.G.S. 2s.
81. **WATER WORKS,** for the Supply of Cities and Towns. With a Description of the Principal Geological Formations of England as influencing Supplies of Water; and Details of Engines and Pumping Machinery for raising Water. By SAMUEL HUGHES, F.G.S., C.E. New Edition. 4s.†
117. **SUBTERRANEAN SURVEYING,** an Elementary and Practical Treatise on. By THOMAS FENWICK. Also the Method of Conducting Subterranean Surveys without the Use of the Magnetic Needle, and other Modern Improvements. By THOMAS BAKER, C.E. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.†
118. **CIVIL ENGINEERING IN NORTH AMERICA,** a Sketch of. By DAVID STEVENSON, F.R.S.E., &c. Plates and Diagrams. 3s.
167. **IRON BRIDGES, GIRDERS, ROOFS, AND OTHER WORKS.** By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 2s. 6d.†
197. **ROADS AND STREETS (THE CONSTRUCTION OF),** in two Parts: I. THE ART OF CONSTRUCTING COMMON ROADS, by HENRY LAW, C.E., revised by D. K. CLARK, C.E.; II. RECENT PRACTICE, including pavements of Stone, Wood, and Asphalte, by D. K. CLARK. 4s. 6d.†
203. **SANITARY WORK IN THE SMALLER TOWNS AND IN VILLAGES.** Comprising:—1. Some of the more Common Forms of Nuisance and their Remedies; 2. Drainage; 3. Water Supply. By CHARLES SLAGG, Assoc. M. Inst. C.E. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. 3s.†
212. **THE CONSTRUCTION OF GAS-WORKS,** and the Manufacture and Distribution of Coal Gas. Originally written by SAMUEL HUGHES, C.E. Sixth Edition, re-written and much enlarged by WILLIAM RICHARDS, C.E. With 72 Illustrations. 4s. 6d.†

† The † indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

Civil Engineering, Surveying, etc., *continued.*

213. **PIONEER ENGINEERING.** A Treatise on the Engineering Operations connected with the Settlement of Waste Lands in New Countries. By EDWARD DOBSON, Assoc. Inst. C.E. 4s. 6d.‡
216. **MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION;** A Theoretical and Practical Treatise on the Strains, Designing, and Erection of Works of Construction. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 3s.‡
219. **CIVIL ENGINEERING.** By HENRY LAW, M.Inst. C.E. Including HYDRAULIC ENGINEERING by GEO. R. BURNELL, M.Inst. C.E. Seventh Edition, revised, with large additions by D. KINNEAR CLARK, M.Inst. C.E. 6s. 6d., Cloth boards, 7s. 6d.

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING, ETC.

33. **CRANES,** the Construction of, and other Machinery for Raising Heavy Bodies. By JOSEPH GLYNN, F.R.S. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
34. **THE STEAM ENGINE.** By Dr. LARDNER. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
59. **STEAM BOILERS:** their Construction and Management. By R. ARMSTRONG, C.E. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
82. **THE POWER OF WATER,** as applied to drive Flour Mills, and to give motion to Turbines, &c. By JOSEPH GLYNN, F.R.S. 2s.‡
98. **PRACTICAL MECHANISM,** the Elements of; and Machine Tools. By T. BAKER, C.E. With Additions by J. NASMYTH, C.E. 2s. 6d.‡
139. **THE STEAM ENGINE,** a Treatise on the Mathematical Theory of, with Rules and Examples for Practical Men. By T. BAKER, C.E. 1s. 6d.
164. **MODERN WORKSHOP PRACTICE,** as applied to Marine, Land, and Locomotive Engines, Floating Docks, Dredging Machines, Bridges, Cranes, Ship-building, &c., &c. By J. G. WINTON. Illustrated. 3s.‡
165. **IRON AND HEAT,** exhibiting the Principles concerned in the Construction of Iron Beams, Pillars, and Bridge Girders, and the Action of Heat in the Smelting Furnace. By J. ARMOUR, C.E. 2s. 6d.‡
166. **POWER IN MOTION:** Horse-Power, Toothed-Wheel Gearing, Loog and Short Driving Bands, and Angular Forces. By J. ARMOUR, 2s. 6d.‡
171. **THE WORKMAN'S MANUAL OF ENGINEERING DRAWING.** By J. MAXTON. 5th Edn. With 7 Plates and 350 Cuts. 3s. 6d.‡
190. **STEAM AND THE STEAM ENGINE,** Stationary and Portable. By JOHN SEWELL and D. K. CLARK, M.I.C.E. 3s. 6d.‡
200. **FUEL,** its Combustion and Economy. By C. W. WILLIAMS, With Recent Practice in the Combustion and Economy of Fuel—Coal, Coke, Wood, Peat, Petroleum, &c.—by D. K. CLARK, M.I.C.E. 3s. 6d.‡
202. **LOCOMOTIVE ENGINES.** By G. D. DEMPSEY, C.E.; with large additions by D. KINNEAR CLARK, M.I.C.E. 3s.‡
211. **THE BOILERMAKER'S ASSISTANT** in Drawing, Templating, and Calculating Boiler and Tank Work. By JOHN COURTNEY, Practical Boiler Maker. Edited by D. K. CLARK, C.E. 100 Illustrations. 2s.
217. **SEWING MACHINERY:** Its Construction, History, &c., with full Technical Directions for Adjusting, &c. By J. W. URQUHART, C.E. 2s.‡
223. **MECHANICAL ENGINEERING.** Comprising Metallurgy, Moulding, Casting, Forging, Tools, Workshop Machinery, Manufacture of the Steam Engine, &c. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 2s. 6d.‡
236. **DETAILS OF MACHINERY.** Comprising Instructions for the Execution of various Works in Iron in the Fitting-Shop, Foundry, and Boiler-Yard. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. 3s.‡
237. **THE SMITHY AND FORGE;** including the Farrier's Art and Coachsmithing. By W. J. E. CRANE. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.‡
238. **THE SHEET-METAL WORKER'S GUIDE;** a Practical Handbook for Tinsmiths, Coppersmiths, Zincworkers, &c. With 94 Diagrams and Working Patterns. By W. J. E. CRANE. 1s. 6d. [*Just published.*]


☞ The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

MINING, METALLURGY, ETC.

4. *MINERALOGY*, Rudiments of; a concise View of the Properties of Minerals. By A. RAMSAY, JUD. Woodcuts and Steel Plates. 3s.‡
117. *SUBTERRANEAN SURVEYING*, Elementary and Practical Treatise on, with and without the Magnetic Needle. By THOMAS FENWICK, Surveyor of Mines, and THOMAS BAKER, C.E. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.‡
133. *METALLURGY OF COPPER*; an Introduction to the Methods of Seeking, Mining, and Assaying Copper, and Manufacturing its Alloys. By ROBERT H. LAMBORN, Ph.D. Woodcuts. 2s. 6d.‡
135. *ELECTRO-METALLURGY*; Practically Treated. By ALEXANDER WATT, F.R.S.S.A. Eighth Edition, revised, with additional Matter and Illustrations, including the most recent Processes. 3s.‡
172. *MINING TOOLS*, Manual of. For the Use of Mine Managers, Agents, Students, &c. By WILLIAM MORGANS. 2s. 6d.‡
- 172*. *MINING TOOLS, ATLAS* of Engravings to Illustrate the above, containing 235 Illustrations, drawn to Scale. 4to. 4s. 6d.; cloth boards, 6s.
176. *METALLURGY OF IRON*. Containing History of Iron Manufacture. Methods of Assay, and Analyses of Iron Ores, Processes of Manufacture of Iron and Steel, &c. By H. BAUERMAN, F.G.S. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. 5s.‡
180. *COAL AND COAL MINING*. By WARINGTON W. SMYTH, M.A., F.R.S. Fifth Edition, revised. With numerous Illustrations. 3s. 6d.‡
195. *THE MINERAL SURVEYOR AND VALUER'S COMPLETE GUIDE*, with new Traverse Tables, and Descriptions of Improved Instruments; also the Correct Principles of Laying out and Valuing Mineral Properties. By WILLIAM LINTERN, Mining and Civil Engineer. 3s. 6d.‡
214. *SLATE AND SLATE QUARRYING*, Scientific, Practical, and Commercial. By D. C. DAVIES, F.G.S., Mining Engineer, &c. 3s.‡
220. *MAGNETIC SURVEYING, AND ANGULAR SURVEYING*, with Records of the Peculiarities of Needle Disturbances. Compiled from the Results of carefully made Experiments. By W. LINTERN. 2s.


No. ARCHITECTURE, BUILDING, ETC.

16. *ARCHITECTURE—ORDERS*—The Orders and their Æsthetic Principles. By W. H. LEEDS. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
17. *ARCHITECTURE—STYLES*—The History and Description of the Styles of Architecture of Various Countries, from the Earliest to the Present Period. By T. TALBOT BURY, F.R.I.B.A., &c. Illustrated. 2s.
** ORDERS AND STYLES OF ARCHITECTURE, in One Vol., 3s. 6d.
18. *ARCHITECTURE—DESIGN*—The Principles of Design in Architecture, as deducible from Nature and exemplified in the Works of the Greek and Gothic Architects. By E. L. GARBETT, Architect. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.
** The three preceding Works, in One handsome Vol., half bound, entitled "MODERN ARCHITECTURE," price 6s.
22. *THE ART OF BUILDING*, Rudiments of. General Principles of Construction, Materials used in Building, Strength and Use of Materials, Working Drawings, Specifications, and Estimates. By E. DOBSON, 2s.‡
25. *MASONRY AND STONECUTTING*; in which the Principles of Masonic Projection and their application to the Construction of Curved Wing-Walls, Domes, Oblique Bridges, and Roman and Gothic Vaulting, are explained. By EDWARD DOBSON, M.R.I.B.A., &c. 2s. 6d.‡
42. *COTTAGE BUILDING*. By C. BRUCE ALLEN, Architect. Ninth Edition, revised and enlarged. Numerous Illustrations. 1s. 6d.
45. *LIMES, CEMENTS, MORTARS, CONCRETES, MASTICS, PLASTERING*, &c. By G. R. BURNELL, C.E. Twelfth Edition. 1s. 6d.

 The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

Architecture, Building, etc., *continued.*

57. **WARMING AND VENTILATION.** An Exposition of the General Principles as applied to Domestic and Public Buildings, Mines, Lighthouses, Ships, &c. By C. TOMLINSON, F.R.S., &c. Illustrated. 3s.
111. **ARCHES, PIERS, BUTTRESSES, &c.:** Experimental Essays on the Principles of Construction. By W. BLAND. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
116. **THE ACOUSTICS OF PUBLIC BUILDINGS;** or, The Principles of the Science of Sound applied to the purposes of the Architect and Builder. By T. ROGER SMITH, M.R.I.B.A., Architect. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
127. **ARCHITECTURAL MODELLING IN PAPER,** the Art of. By T. A. RICHARDSON, Architect. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
128. **VITRUVIUS—THE ARCHITECTURE OF MARCUS VITRUVIUS POLLO.** In Ten Books. Translated from the Latin by JOSEPH GWILT, F.S.A., F.R.A.S. With 23 Plates. 5s.
130. **GRECIAN ARCHITECTURE,** An Inquiry into the Principles of Beauty in; with an Historical View of the Rise and Progress of the Art in Greece. By the EARL OF ABERDEEN. 1s.
- * * *The two preceding Works in One handsome Vol., half bound, entitled "ANCIENT ARCHITECTURE," price 6s.*
132. **THE ERECTION OF DWELLING-HOUSES.** Illustrated by a Perspective View, Plans, Elevations, and Sections of a pair of Semi-detached Villas, with the Specification, Quantities, and Estimates, &c. By S. H. BROOKS. New Edition, with Plates.—2s. 6d.‡
156. **QUANTITIES AND MEASUREMENTS,** How to Calculate and Take them in Bricklayers', Masons', Plasterers', Plumbers', Painters', Paper-hangers', Gilders', Smiths', Carpenters', and Joiners' Work. By A. C. BEATON, Architect and Surveyor. New and Enlarged Edition. Illus. 1s. 6d.
175. **LOCKWOOD & CO.'S BUILDER'S AND CONTRACTOR'S PRICE BOOK,** containing the latest Prices of all kinds of Builders' Materials and Labour, and of all Trades connected with Building, &c., &c. Edited by F. T. W. MILLER, Architect. Published annually. 3s. 6d.; half bound, 4s.
182. **CARPENTRY AND JOINERY—THE ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF CARPENTRY.** Chiefly composed from the Standard Work of THOMAS TREGOLD, C.E. With Additions from the Works of the most Recent Authorities, and a TREATISE ON JOINERY by E. WYNDHAM TAUN, M.A. Numerous Illustrations. 3s. 6d.‡
- 182*. **CARPENTRY AND JOINERY. ATLAS** of 35 Plates to accompany the above. With Descriptive Letterpress. 4to. 6s.; cloth, 7s. 6d.
185. **THE COMPLETE MEASURER;** the Measurement of Boards, Glass, &c.; Unequal-sided, Square-sided, Octagonal-sided, Round Timber and Stone, and Standing Timber, &c. By RICHARD HORTON. Fourth Edition. 4s.; strongly bound in leather, 5s.
187. **HINTS TO YOUNG ARCHITECTS.** By G. WIGHTWICK. New Edition. By G. H. GUILLAUME. Illustrated. 3s. 6d.‡
188. **HOUSE PAINTING, GRAINING, MARBLING, AND SIGN WRITING:** containing full information on the Processes of House-Painting, the Practice of Sign-Writing, the Principles of Decorative Art, a Course of Elementary Drawing for House-Painters, Writers, &c., &c. With 9 Coloured Plates, and nearly 150 Wood Engravings. By ELLIS A. DAVIDSON. Third Edition, revised. 5s. cloth limp; 6s. cloth boards.
189. **THE RUDIMENTS OF PRACTICAL BRICKLAYING.** In Six Sections: General Principles; Arch Drawing, Cutting, and Setting; Pointing; Paving, Tiling, Materials; Slating and Plastering; Practical Geometry, Mensuration, &c. By ADAM HAMMOND. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
191. **PLUMBING.** A Text-Book to the Practice of the Art or Craft of the Plumber. With Chapters upon House Drainage. Fourth Edition. With 330 Illustrations. By W. P. BUCHAN. 3s. 6d.‡


 The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

Architecture, Building, etc., *continued.*

192. *THE TIMBER IMPORTER'S, TIMBER MERCHANT'S, and BUILDER'S STANDARD GUIDE.* By RICHARD E. GRANDY. Second Edition, Revised. 3s.‡
206. *A BOOK ON BUILDING, Civil and Ecclesiastical,* including CHURCH RESTORATION. With the Theory of Domes and the Great Pyramid, &c. By Sir EDMUND BECKETT, Bart., LL.D., Q.C., F.R.A.S. 4s. 6d.‡
226. *THE JOINTS MADE AND USED BY BUILDERS* in the Construction of various kinds of Engineering and Architectural Works. By WYVILL J. CHRISTY, Architect. With upwards of 160 Engravings on Wood. 3s.‡
228. *THE CONSTRUCTION OF ROOFS OF WOOD AND IRON* (An Elementary Treatise on). By E. WYNOHAM TARN, M.A., Architect. Second edition, revised and corrected. 1s. 6d.
229. *ELEMENTARY DECORATION:* as applied to the Interior and Exterior Decoration of Dwelling-Houses, &c. By JAMES W. FACEY, Jun. Illustrated with Sixty-eight explanatory Engravings. 2s.
230. *HANDRAILING* (A Practical Treatise on). Showing New and Simple Methods for finding the Pitch of the Plank, Drawing the Moulds, Bevelling, Jointing-up, and Squaring the Wreath. By GEORGE COLLINGS. Illustrated with Plates and Diagrams. 1s. 6d.
247. *BUILDING ESTATES:* a Rudimentary Treatise on the Development, Sale, Purchase, and General Management of Building Land, including the Formation of Streets and Sewers, and the Requirements of Sanitary Authorities. By FOWLER MAITLAND, Surveyor. Illustrated. 2s.
248. *PORTLAND CEMENT FOR USERS.* By HENRY FAIJA, Assoc. M. Inst. C.E. Second Edition, corrected. Illustrated. 2s.

SHIPBUILDING, NAVIGATION, MARINE ENGINEERING, ETC.

51. *NAVAL ARCHITECTURE,* the Rudiments of; or an Exposition of the Elementary Principles of the Science, and their Practical Application to Naval Construction. Compiled for the Use of Beginners. By JAMES PRAKE. Fifth Edition, with Plates and Diagrams. 3s. 6d.‡
- 53*. *SHIPS FOR OCEAN AND RIVER SERVICE,* Elementary and Practical Principles of the Construction of. By HAKON A. SOMMERFELDT, Surveyor of the Royal Norwegian Navy. With an Appendix. 1s. 6d.
- 53**. *AN ATLAS OF ENGRAVINGS* to Illustrate the above. Twelve large folding plates. Royal 4to, cloth. 7s. 6d.
54. *MASTING, MAST-MAKING, AND RIGGING OF SHIPS,* Rudimentary Treatise on. Also Tables of Spars, Rigging, Blocks; Chain, Wire, and Hemp Ropes, &c., relative to every class of vessels. By ROBERT KIPPING, N.A. Fifteenth Edition. Illustrated. 2s.‡
- 54*. *IRON SHIP-BUILDING.* With Practical Examples and Details for the Use of Ship Owners and Ship Builders. By JOHN GRANHAM, Consulting Engineer and Naval Architect. 5th Edition, with Additions. 4s.
- 54**. *AN ATLAS OF FORTY PLATES* to Illustrate the above. Fifth Edition. 4to, boards. 38s.
55. *THE SAILOR'S SEA BOOK:* a Rudimentary Treatise on Navigation. Part I. How to Keep the Log and Work it off. Part II. On Finding the Latitude and Longitude. By JAMES GREENWOOD, B.A. To which are added, the Deviation and Error of the Compass; Great Circle Sailing; the International (Commercial) Code of Signals; the Rule of the Road at Sea; Rocket and Mortar Apparatus for Saving Life; the Law of Storms; and a Brief Dictionary of Sea Terms. With Coloured Plates of Flags, &c. New, and enlarged edition. By W. H. ROSSER. 2s. 6d.‡

 The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

Shipbuilding, Navigation, Marine Engineering, etc., *cont.*

80. *MARINE ENGINES, AND STEAM VESSELS.* By ROBERT MURRAY, C.E. Eighth Edition. [*In preparation.*]
- 83bis. *THE FORMS OF SHIPS AND BOATS: Hints, Experimentally Derived, on some of the Principles regulating Ship-building.* By W. BLAND. Seventh Edition, revised, with numerous Illustrations and Models. 1s. 6d.
99. *NAVIGATION AND NAUTICAL ASTRONOMY, in Theory and Practice.* By Prof. J. R. YOUNG. New Edition, including the requisite Elements from the Nautical Almanac for working the Problems. 2s. 6d.†
106. *SHIPS' ANCHORS, a Treatise on.* By G. COTSELL, N.A. 1s. 6d.
149. *SAILS AND SAIL-MAKING, an Elementary Treatise on.* With Draughting, and the Centre of Effort of the Sails. Also, Weights and Sizes of Ropes; Mastng, Rigging, and Sails of Steam Vessels, &c., &c. Eleventh Edition, enlarged, with an Appendix. By ROBERT KIEPPING, N.A., Sailmaker, Quayside, Newcastle. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.‡
155. *THE ENGINEER'S GUIDE TO THE ROYAL AND MERCANTILE NAVIES.* By a PRACTICAL ENGINEER. Revised by D. F. M'CARHY, late of the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton. 3s.
- 55 & 204. *PRACTICAL NAVIGATION.* Consisting of The Sailor's Sea-Book. By JAMES GREENWOOD and W. H. ROSSER. Together with the requisite Mathematical and Nautical Tables for the Working of the Problems. By HENRY LAW, C.E., and J. R. YOUNG, formerly Professor of Mathematics in Belfast College. Illustrated with numerous Wood Engravings and Coloured Plates. 7s. Strongly half-bound in leather.


AGRICULTURE, GARDENING, ETC.

- 61*. *READY RECKONER FOR THE ADMEASUREMENT OF LAND,* including Tables showing the price of work from 2s. 6d. to £1 per acre, and other useful Tables. By ABRAHAM ARMAN. Second Edition, corrected and extended by C. NORRIS, Surveyor, &c. 2s. [*Nearly ready.*]
131. *MILLER'S, MERCHANT'S, AND FARMER'S READY RECKONER.* With approximate values of Millstones, Millwork, &c. 1s.
140. *SOILS, MANURES, AND CROPS.* (Vol. 1. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN. Woodcuts. 2s.
141. *FARMING & FARMING ECONOMY,* Notes, Historical and Practical, on. (Vol. 2. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN. 3s.
142. *STOCK; CATTLE, SHEEP, AND HORSES.* (Vol. 3. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN. Woodcuts. 2s. 6d.
145. *DAIRY, PIGS, AND POULTRY,* Management of the. By R. SCOTT BURN. With Notes on the Diseases of Stock. (Vol. 4. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) Woodcuts. 2s.
146. *UTILIZATION OF SEWAGE, IRRIGATION, AND RECLAMATION OF WASTE LAND.* (Vol. 5. OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING.) By R. SCOTT BURN. Woodcuts. 2s. 6d.
- ** Nos. 140-1-2-5-6, in One Vol., handsomely half-bound, entitled "OUTLINES OF MODERN FARMING." By ROBERT SCOTT BURN. Price 12s.
177. *FRUIT TREES,* The Scientific and Profitable Culture of. From the French of DU BREUIL. Revised by GEO. GLENNY. 187 Woodcuts. 3s. 6d.‡
198. *SHEEP; THE HISTORY, STRUCTURE, ECONOMY, AND DISEASES OF.* By W. C. SPOONER, M.R.V.C., &c. Fourth Edition, enlarged, including Specimens of New and Improved Breeds. 3s. 6d.‡
201. *KITCHEN GARDENING MADE EASY.* Showing how to prepare and lay out the ground, the best means of cultivating every known Vegetable and Herb, &c. By GEORGE M. F. GLENNY. 1s. 6d.‡

☞ The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

Agriculture, Gardening, etc., *continued.*

207. **OUTLINES OF FARM MANAGEMENT, and the Organization of Farm Labour:** Treating of the General Work of the Farm; Field and Live Stock; Details of Contract Work; Specialities of Labour, &c., &c. By ROBERT SCOTT BURN. 2s. 6d.‡
208. **OUTLINES OF LANDED ESTATES MANAGEMENT:** Treating of the Varieties of Lands, Methods of Farming, Farm Buildings, Irrigation, Drainage, &c. By R. SCOTT BURN. 2s. 6d.‡
- *. Nos. 207 & 208 in *One Vol., handsomely half-bound, entitled "OUTLINES OF LANDED ESTATES AND FARM MANAGEMENT."* By R. SCOTT BURN. Price 6s.
209. **THE TREE PLANTER AND PLANT PROPAGATOR.** A Practical Manual on the Propagation of Forest Trees, Fruit Trees, Flowering Shrubs, Flowering Plants, &c. By SAMUEL WOOD. 2s.‡
210. **THE TREE PRUNER.** A Practical Manual on the Pruning of Fruit Trees, including also their Training and Renovation; also the Pruning of Shrubs, Climbers, and Flowering Plants. By SAMUEL WOOD. 2s.‡
- *. Nos. 209 & 210 in *One Vol., handsomely half-bound, entitled "THE TREE PLANTER, PROPAGATOR, AND PRUNER."* By SAMUEL WOOD. Price 5s.
218. **THE HAY AND STRAW MEASURER:** Being New Tables for the Use of Auctioneers, Valuers, Farmers, Hay and Straw Dealers, &c., forming a complete Calculator and Ready-Reckoner, especially adapted to persons connected with Agriculture. Fourth Edition. By JOHN STEELE. 2s.
222. **SUBURBAN FARMING.** The Laying-out and Cultivation of Farms, adapted to the Produce of Milk, Butter, and Cheese, Eggs, Poultry, and Pigs. By Prof. JOHN DONALDSON and R. SCOTT BURN. 3s. 6d.‡
231. **THE ART OF GRAFTING AND BUDDING.** By CHARLES BALLET. With Illustrations. 2s. 6d.‡
232. **COTTAGE GARDENING;** or, Flowers, Fruits, and Vegetables for Small Gardens. By E. HOBDAY. 1s. 6d.
233. **GARDEN RECEIPTS.** Edited by CHARLES W. QUIN. 1s. 6d.
234. **THE KITCHEN AND MARKET GARDEN.** By Contributors to "The Garden." Compiled by C. W. SHAW, Editor of "Gardening Illustrated." 430 pp. 3s.‡
239. **DRAINING AND EMBANKING.** A Practical Treatise, embodying the most recent experience in the Application of Improved Methods. By JOHN SCOTT, late Professor of Agriculture and Rural Economy at the Royal Agricultural College, Cirencester. With 68 Illustrations. 1s. 6d. [Just published.]
240. **IRRIGATION AND WATER SUPPLY.** A Treatise on Water Meadows, Sewage Irrigation, Warping, &c.; on the Construction of Wells, Ponds, and Reservoirs; and on Raising Water by Machinery for Agricultural and Domestic Purposes. By Professor JOHN SCOTT. With 34 Illustrations. 1s. 6d. [Just published.]
241. **FARM ROADS, FENCES, AND GATES.** A Practical Treatise on the Roads, Tramways, and Waterways of the Farm; the Principles of Enclosures; and the different kinds of Fences, Gates, and Stiles. By Professor JOHN SCOTT. With 75 Illustrations. 1s. 6d. [Just published.]
242. **FARM BUILDINGS.** A Practical Treatise on the Buildings necessary for various kinds of Farms, their Arrangement and Construction. With Plans and Estimates. By Professor JOHN SCOTT. 105 Illustrations. [Nearly ready.]
- *. Nos. 239 to 242 form part of SCOTT'S "FARM ENGINEERING TEXT-BOOKS." The following Volumes, completing the Series, are in active preparation:—
- FIELD IMPLEMENTS AND MACHINES. | BARN IMPLEMENTS AND MACHINES.
AGRICULTURAL SURVEYING, LEVELLING, &c.

 The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

MATHEMATICS, ARITHMETIC, ETC.

32. **MATHEMATICAL INSTRUMENTS**, a Treatise on; in which their Construction and the Methods of Testing, Adjusting, and Using them are concisely Explained. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A., of the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Original Edition, in 1 vol., Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
 ** In ordering the above, be careful to say, "Original Edition" (No. 32), to distinguish it from the Enlarged Edition in 3 vols. (Nos. 168-9-70.)
76. **DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY**, an Elementary Treatise on; with a Theory of Shadows and of Perspective, extracted from the French of G. MONGE. To which is added, a description of the Principles and Practice of Isometrical Projection. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. With 14 Plates. 2s.
178. **PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY**: giving the Simplest Modes of Constructing Figures contained in one Plane and Geometrical Construction of the Ground. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. With 215 Woodcuts. 2s.
179. **PROJECTION**: Orthographic, Topographic, and Perspective. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. [In preparation.]
 ** The above three volumes will form a COMPLETE ELEMENTARY COURSE OF MATHEMATICAL DRAWING.
83. **COMMERCIAL BOOK-KEEPING**. With Commercial Phrases and Forms in English, French, Italian, and German. By JAMES HADDON, M.A., Arithmetical Master of King's College School, London. 1s. 6d.
84. **ARITHMETIC**, a Rudimentary Treatise on: with full Explanations of its Theoretical Principles, and numerous Examples for Practice. By Professor J. R. YOUNG. Tenth Edition, corrected. 1s. 6d.
- 84*. A KEY to the above, containing Solutions in full to the Exercises, together with Comments, Explanations, and Improved Processes, for the Use of Teachers and Unassisted Learners. By J. R. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.
85. **EQUATIONAL ARITHMETIC**, applied to Questions of Interest, 85*. Annuities, Life Assurance, and General Commerce; with various Tables by which all Calculations may be greatly facilitated. By W. HIPSLEY. 2s.
86. **ALGEBRA**, the Elements of. By JAMES HADDON, M.A. With Appendix, containing miscellaneous Investigations, and a Collection of Problems in various parts of Algebra. 2s.
- 86*. A KEY AND COMPANION to the above Book, forming an extensive repository of Solved Examples and Problems in Illustration of the various Expedients necessary in Algebraical Operations. By J. R. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.
88. **EUCLID, THE ELEMENTS OF**: with many additional Propositions 89. and Explanatory Notes: to which is prefixed, an Introductory Essay on Logic. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 2s. 6d. ‡
 *** Sold also separately, viz. :-
88. EUCLID, The First Three Books. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 1s. 6d.
89. EUCLID, Books 4, 5, 6, 11, 12. By HENRY LAW, C.E. 1s. 6d.
90. **ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS**, By JAMES HANN. A New Edition, by Professor J. R. YOUNG. 2s. ‡
91. **PLANE TRIGONOMETRY**, the Elements of. By JAMES HANN, formerly Mathematical Master of King's College, London. 1s. 6d.
92. **SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY**, the Elements of. By JAMES HANN. Revised by CHARLES H. DOWLING, C.E. 1s.
 ** Or with "The Elements of Plane Trigonometry," in One Volume, 2s. 6d.
93. **MENSURATION AND MEASURING**. With the Mensuration and Levelling of Land for the Purposes of Modern Engineering. By T. BAKER, C.E. New Edition by E. NUGENT, C.E. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
101. **DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS**, Elements of the. By W. S. B. WOOLHOUSE, F.R.A.S., &c. 1s. 6d.
102. **INTEGRAL CALCULUS**, Rudimentary Treatise on the. By HOMERSHAM COX, B.A. Illustrated. 1s.
105. **MNEMONICAL LESSONS**. — GEOMETRY, ALGEBRA, AND TRIGONOMETRY, in Easy Mnemonical Lessons. By the Rev. THOMAS PENYNGTON KIRKMAN, M.A. 1s. 6d.

☞ The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

Mathematics, Geometry, etc., continued.

136. **ARITHMETIC**, Rudimentary, for the Use of Schools and Self-Instruction. By JAMES HADDON, M.A. Revised by A. ARMAN. 1s. 6d.
137. **A KEY TO HADDON'S RUDIMENTARY ARITHMETIC.** By A. ARMAN. 1s. 6d.
168. **DRAWING AND MEASURING INSTRUMENTS.** Including—I. Instruments employed in Geometrical and Mechanical Drawing, and in the Construction, Copying, and Measurement of Maps and Plans. II. Instruments used for the purposes of Accurate Measurement, and for Arithmetical Computations. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
169. **OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS.** Including (more especially) Telescopes, Microscopes, and Apparatus for producing copies of Maps and Plans by Photography. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
170. **SURVEYING AND ASTRONOMICAL INSTRUMENTS.** Including—I. Instruments Used for Determining the Geometrical Features of a portion of Ground. II. Instruments Employed in Astronomical Observations. By J. F. HEATHER, M.A. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
- ** *The above three volumes form an enlargement of the Author's original work, "Mathematical Instruments." (See No. 32 in the Series.).*
168. } **MATHEMATICAL INSTRUMENTS.** By J. F. HEATHER,
169. } M.A. Enlarged Edition, for the most part entirely re-written. The 3 Parts as
170. } above, in One thick Volume. With numerous Illustrations. 4s. 6d.†
158. **THE SLIDE RULE, AND HOW TO USE IT;** containing full, easy, and simple Instructions to perform all Business Calculations with unexampled rapidity and accuracy. By CHARLES HOARE, C.E. With a Slide Rule in tuck of cover. 2s. 6d.†
196. **THEORY OF COMPOUND INTEREST AND ANNUITIES;** with Tables of Logarithms for the more Difficult Computations of Interest, Discount, Annuities, &c. By FÉDOR THOMAN. 4s.†
199. **INTUITIVE CALCULATIONS;** or, Easy Methods of Performing the Arithmetical Operations required in Commercial and Business Transactions; with Full Explanations of Decimals and Duodecimals; Tables, &c. By D. O'GORMAN. Twenty-fifth Edition, by Prof. J. R. YOUNG. 3s.†
204. **MATHEMATICAL TABLES,** for Trigonometrical, Astronomical, and Nautical Calculations; to which is prefixed a Treatise on Logarithms. By HENRY LAW, C.E. Together with a Series of Tables for Navigation and Nautical Astronomy. By Professor J. R. YOUNG. 3s. 6d.†
221. **MEASURES, WEIGHTS, AND MONEYS OF ALL NATIONS,** and an Analysis of the Christian, Hebrew, and Mahometan Calendars. By W. S. B. WOOLHOUSE, F.R.A.S., F.S.S. Sixth Edition. 2s.†
227. **MATHEMATICS AS APPLIED TO THE CONSTRUCTIVE ARTS.** Illustrating the various processes of Mathematical Investigation, by means of Arithmetical and Simple Algebraical Equations and Practical Examples. By FRANCIS CAMPIN, C.E. Second Edition. 3s.†

PHYSICAL SCIENCE, NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, ETC.

1. **CHEMISTRY.** By Professor GEORGE FOWNES, F.R.S. With an Appendix on the Application of Chemistry to Agriculture. 1s.
2. **NATURAL PHILOSOPHY,** Introduction to the Study of. By C. TOMLINSON. Woodcuts. 1s. 6d.
6. **MECHANICS,** Rudimentary Treatise on. By CHARLES TOMLINSON. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
7. **ELECTRICITY;** showing the General Principles of Electrical Science, and the purposes to which it has been applied. By Sir W. SNOW HARRIS, F.R.S., &c. With Additions by R. SABINE, C.E., F.S.A. 1s. 6d.
- 7*. **GALVANISM.** By Sir W. SNOW HARRIS. New Edition by ROBERT SABINE, C.E., F.S.A. 1s. 6d.
8. **MAGNETISM;** being a concise Exposition of the General Principles of Magnetical Science, and the Purposes to which it has been applied. By Sir W. SNOW HARRIS. New Edition, revised and enlarged by H. M. NQAD, Ph.D. With 165 Woodcuts. 3s. 6d.†


† The † indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

Physical Science, Natural Philosophy, etc., *continued.*

11. *THE ELECTRIC TELEGRAPH*; its History and Progress; with Descriptions of some of the Apparatus. By R. SABINE, C.E., F.S.A. 3s.
12. *PNEUMATICS*, for the Use of Beginners. By CHARLES TOMLINSON. Illustrated. 1s. 6d.
72. *MANUAL OF THE MOLLUSCA*; a Treatise on Recent and Fossil Shells. By Dr. S. P. WOODWARD, A.L.S. Fourth Edition. With Appendix by RALPH TATE, A.L.S., F.G.S. With numerous Plates and 300 Woodcuts. 6s. 6d. Cloth boards, 7s. 6d.
96. *ASTRONOMY*. By the late Rev. ROBERT MAIN, M.A. Third Edition, by WILLIAM THYNNNE LYNN, B.A., F.R.A.S. 2s.
97. *STATICS AND DYNAMICS*, the Principles and Practice of; embracing also a clear development of Hydrostatics, Hydrodynamics, and Central Forces. By T. BAKER, C.E. 1s. 6d.
138. *TELEGRAPH*, Handbook of the; a Guide to Candidates for Employment in the Telegraph Service. By R. BOND. Fourth Edition. Including Questions on Magnetism, Electricity, and Practical Telegraphy, by W. MCGREGOR. 3s. †
173. *PHYSICAL GEOLOGY*, partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK's "Rudiments of Geology." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., &c. Woodcuts. 2s.
174. *HISTORICAL GEOLOGY*, partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK's "Rudiments." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., &c. Woodcuts. 2s. 6d.
- 173 & 174. *RUDIMENTARY TREATISE ON GEOLOGY*, Physical and Historical. Partly based on Major-General PORTLOCK's "Rudiments of Geology." By RALPH TATE, A.L.S., F.G.S., &c. In One Volume. 4s. 6d. †
- 183 & 184. *ANIMAL PHYSICS*, Handbook of. By Dr. LARDNER, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in University College, Lond. With 520 Illustrations. In One Vol. 7s. 6d., cloth boards.
183. *ANIMAL PHYSICS*. By Dr. LARDNER. Part I., Chapters I.—VII. 4s.
184. *ANIMAL PHYSICS*. By Dr. LARDNER. Part II., Chapters VIII.—XVIII. 3s.

FINE ARTS.

20. *PERSPECTIVE FOR BEGINNERS*. Adapted to Young Students and Amateurs in Architecture, Painting, &c. By GEORGE PYNE. 2s.
- 40 & 41. *GLASS STAINING, AND THE ART OF PAINTING ON GLASS*. From the German of Dr. GESSERT and EMANUEL OTTO FROMBERG. With an Appendix on THE ART OF ENAMELLING. 2s. 6d.
69. *MUSIC*, A Rudimentary and Practical Treatise on. With numerous Examples. By CHARLES CHILD SPENCER. 2s. 6d.
71. *PIANOFORTE*, The Art of Playing the. With numerous Exercises & Lessons from the Best Masters. By CHARLES CHILD SPENCER. 1s. 6d.
- 69-71. *MUSIC & THE PIANOFORTE*. In one vol. Half bound, 5s.
181. *PAINTING POPULARLY EXPLAINED*, including Fresco, Oil, Mosaic, Water Colour, Water-Glass, Tempera, Encaustic, Miniature, Painting on Ivory, Vellum, Pottery, Enamel, Glass, &c. With Historical Sketches of the Progress of the Art by THOMAS JOHN GULLICK, assisted by JOHN TIMBS, F.S.A. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. 5s. †
186. *A GRAMMAR OF COLOURING*, applied to Decorative Painting and the Arts. By GEORGE FIELD. New Edition, enlarged and adapted to the Use of the Ornamental Painter and Designer. By ELLIS A. DAVIDSON. With two new Coloured Diagrams, &c. 3s. †
246. *A DICTIONARY OF PAINTERS, AND HANDBOOK FOR PICTURE AMATEURS*; including Methods of Painting, Cleaning, Re-lining and Restoring, Schools of Painting, &c. With Notes on the Copyists and Imitators of each Master. By PHILIPPE DARYL. 2s. 6d. †

 The † indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.


7, STATIONERS' HALL COURT, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

INDUSTRIAL AND USEFUL ARTS.

23. *BRICKS AND TILES*, Rudimentary Treatise on the Manufacture of; containing an Outline of the Principles of Brickmaking. By EDW. DOBSON, M.R.I.B.A. With Additions by C. TOMLINSON, F.R.S. Illustrated, 3s.‡
67. *CLOCKS, WATCHES, AND BELLS*, a Rudimentary Treatise on. By Sir EDMUND BECKETT, LL.D., Q.C. Seventh Edition, revised and enlarged. 4s. 6d. limp; 5s. 6d. cloth boards.
- 88** *CONSTRUCTION OF DOOR LOCKS*. Compiled from the Papers of A. C. HOBBS, and Edited by CHARLES TOMLINSON, F.R.S. With Additions by ROBERT MALLETT, M.I.C.E. Illus. 2s. 6d.
162. *THE BRASS FOUNDER'S MANUAL*; Instructions for Modelling, Pattern-Making, Moulding, Turning, Filing, Burnishing, Bronzing, &c. With copious Receipts, &c. By WALTER GRAHAM. 2s.‡
205. *THE ART OF LETTER PAINTING MADE EASY*. By J. G. BADENOCH. Illustrated with 12 full-page Engravings of Examples. 1s.
215. *THE GOLDSMITH'S HANDBOOK*, containing full Instructions for the Alloying and Working of Gold. By GEORGE E. GEE, 3s.‡
224. *COACH BUILDING*, A Practical Treatise, Historical and Descriptive. By J. W. BURGESS. 2s. 6d.‡
225. *THE SILVERSMITH'S HANDBOOK*, containing full Instructions for the Alloying and Working of Silver. By GEORGE E. GEE. 3s.‡
235. *PRACTICAL ORGAN BUILDING*. By W. E. DICKSON, M.A., Precentor of Ely Cathedral. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.‡

MISCELLANEOUS VOLUMES.

36. *A DICTIONARY OF TERMS used in ARCHITECTURE, BUILDING, ENGINEERING, MINING, METALLURGY, ARCHÆOLOGY, the FINE ARTS, &c.* By JOHN WEALE. Fifth Edition. Revised by ROBERT HUNT, F.R.S. Illustrated. 5s. limp; 6s. cloth boards.
50. *THE LAW OF CONTRACTS FOR WORKS AND SERVICES*. By DAVID GIBBONS. Third Edition, enlarged. 3s.‡
112. *MANUAL OF DOMESTIC MEDICINE*. By R. GOODING, B.A., M.D. Intended as a Family Guide in all Cases of Accident and Emergency. Third Edition. 2s.‡
- 112*. *MANAGEMENT OF HEALTH*. A Manual of Home and Personal Hygiene. By the Rev. JAMES BAIRD, B.A. 1s.
150. *LOGIC*, Pure and Applied. By S. H. EMMENS. 1s. 6d.
153. *SELECTIONS FROM LOCKE'S ESSAYS ON THE HUMAN UNDERSTANDING*. With Notes by S. H. EMMENS. 2s.
154. *GENERAL HINTS TO EMIGRANTS*. Notices of the various Fields for Emigration, Hints on Outfits, Useful Recipes, &c. 2s.
157. *THE EMIGRANT'S GUIDE TO NATAL*. By ROBERT JAMES MANN, F.R.A.S., F.M.S. Second Edition. Map. 2s.
193. *HANDBOOK OF FIELD FORTIFICATION*, intended for the Guidance of Officers Preparing for Promotion. By Major W. W. KNOLLYS, F.R.G.S. With 163 Woodcuts. 3s.‡
194. *THE HOUSE MANAGER*: Being a Guide to Housekeeping. Practical Cookery, Pickling and Preserving, Household Work, Dairy Management, the Table and Dessert, Cellarage of Wines, Home-brewing and Wine-making, the Boudoir and Dressing-room, Travelling, Stable Economy, Gardening Operations, &c. By AN OLD HOUSEKEEPER. 3s. 6d.‡
194. *HOUSE BOOK (The)*. Comprising:—I. THE HOUSE MANAGER. II. By an OLD HOUSEKEEPER. II. DOMESTIC MEDICINE. By RALPH GOODING, M.D. III. MANAGEMENT OF HEALTH. By JAMES BAIRD. In One Vol., & strongly half-bound. 6s.
- 112*.

 The ‡ indicates that these vols. may be had strongly bound at 6d. extra.

EDUCATIONAL AND CLASSICAL SERIES.

HISTORY.

1. **England, Outlines of the History of;** more especially with reference to the Origin and Progress of the English Constitution. By WILLIAM DOUGLAS HAMILTON, F.S.A., of Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 4th Edition, revised. 5s.; cloth boards, 6s.
5. **Greece, Outlines of the History of;** in connection with the Rise of the Arts and Civilization in Europe. By W. DOUGLAS HAMILTON, of University College, London, and EDWARD LEVIEN, M.A., of Balliol College, Oxford. 2s. 6d.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.
7. **Rome, Outlines of the History of;** from the Earliest Period to the Christian Era and the Commencement of the Decline of the Empire. By EDWARD LEVIEN, of Balliol College, Oxford. Map, 2s. 6d.; cl. bds. 3s. 6d.
9. **Chronology of History, Art, Literature, and Progress,** from the Creation of the World to the Conclusion of the Franco-German War. The Continuation by W. D. HAMILTON, F.S.A. 3s.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d.
50. **Dates and Events in English History,** for the use of Candidates in Public and Private Examinations. By the Rev. E. RAND. 1s.

ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND MISCELLANEOUS.

11. **Grammar of the English Tongue, Spoken and Written.** With an Introduction to the Study of Comparative Philology. By HYDE CLARKE, D.C.L. Fourth Edition. 1s. 6d.
- 11*. **Philology; Handbook of the Comparative Philology of English, Anglo-Saxon, Frisian, Flemish or Dutch, Low or Platt Dutch, High Dutch or German, Danish, Swedish, Icelandic, Latin, Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese Tongues.** By HYDE CLARKE, D.C.L. 1s.
12. **Dictionary of the English Language, as Spoken and Written.** Containing above 100,000 Words. By HYDE CLARKE, D.C.L. 3s. 6d.; cloth boards, 4s. 6d.; complete with the GRAMMAR, cloth bds., 5s. 6d.
48. **Composition and Punctuation, familiarly Explained** for those who have neglected the Study of Grammar. By JUSTIN BRENNAN. 17th Edition. 1s. 6d.
49. **Derivative Spelling-Book: Giving the Origin of Every Word** from the Greek, Latin, Saxon, German, Teutonic, Dutch, French, Spanish, and other Languages; with their present Acceptation and Pronunciation. By J. ROWBOTHAM, F.R.A.S. Improved Edition. 1s. 6d.
51. **The Art of Extempore Speaking: Hints for the Pulpit, the Senate, and the Bar.** By M. BAUTAIN, Vicar-General and Professor at the Sorbonne. Translated from the French. 7th Edition, carefully corrected. 2s. 6d.
52. **Mining and Quarrying, with the Sciences connected there-with.** First Book of, for Schools. By J. H. COLLINS, F.G.S., Lecturer to the Miners' Association of Cornwall and Devon. 1s.
53. **Places and Facts in Political and Physical Geography,** for Candidates in Examinations. By the Rev. EDGAR RAND, B.A. 1s.
54. **Analytical Chemistry, Qualitative and Quantitative, a Course of.** To which is prefixed, a Brief Treatise upon Modern Chemical Nomenclature and Notation. By WM. W. PINK and GEORGE E. WEBSTER. 2s.

THE SCHOOL MANAGERS' SERIES OF READING BOOKS,

Edited by the Rev. A. R. GRANT, Rector of Hitcham, and Honorary Canon of Ely; formerly H.M. Inspector of Schools.

INTRODUCTORY PRIMER, 3d.

	s.	d.		s.	d.
FIRST STANDARD	0	6	FOURTH STANDARD	1	2
SECOND "	0	10	FIFTH "	1	6
THIRD "	1	0	SIXTH "	1	6
LESSONS FROM THE BIBLE. Part I. Old Testament. 1s.					
LESSONS FROM THE BIBLE. Part II. New Testament, to which is added					
THE GEOGRAPHY OF THE BIBLE, for very young Children. By Rev. C. THORNTON FORSTER. 1s. 2d. ** Or the Two Parts in One Volume. 2s.					

FRENCH.

24. **French Grammar.** With Complete and Concise Rules on the Genders of French Nouns. By G. L. STRAUSS, Ph.D. 1s. 6d.
25. **French-English Dictionary.** Comprising a large number of New Terms used in Engineering, Mining, &c. By ALFRED ELWES. 1s. 6d.
26. **English-French Dictionary.** By ALFRED ELWES. 2s.
- 25,26. **French Dictionary** (as above). Complete, in One Vol., 3s.; cloth boards, 3s. 6d. ** Or with the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 4s. 6d.
47. **French and English Phrase Book;** containing Introductory Lessons, with Translations, several Vocabularies of Words, a Collection of suitable Phrases, and Easy Familiar Dialogues. 1s. 6d.

GERMAN.

39. **German Grammar.** Adapted for English Students, from Heyse's Theoretical and Practical Grammar, by Dr. G. L. STRAUSS. 1s. 6d.
40. **German Reader; A Series of Extracts,** carefully culled from the most approved Authors of Germany; with Notes, Philological and Explanatory. By G. L. STRAUSS, Ph.D. 1s.
- 41-43. **German Triglot Dictionary.** By NICHOLAS ESTERHAZY S. A. HAMILTON. In Three Parts. Part I. German-French-English. Part II. English-German-French. Part III. French-German-English. 3s., or cloth boards, 4s.
- 41-43 & 39. **German Triglot Dictionary** (as above), together with German Grammar (No. 39), in One Volume, cloth boards, 5s.

ITALIAN.

27. **Italian Grammar,** arranged in Twenty Lessons, with a Course of Exercises. By ALFRED ELWES. 1s. 6d.
28. **Italian Triglot Dictionary,** wherein the Genders of all the Italian and French Nouns are carefully noted down. By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. 1. Italian-English-French. 2s. 6d.
30. **Italian Triglot Dictionary.** By A. ELWES. Vol. 2. English-French-Italian. 2s. 6d.
32. **Italian Triglot Dictionary.** By ALFRED ELWES. Vol. 3. French-Italian-English. 2s. 6d.
- 28,30,32. **Italian Triglot Dictionary** (as above). In One Vol., 7s. 6d. Cloth boards.

SPANISH AND PORTUGUESE.

34. **Spanish Grammar,** in a Simple and Practical Form. With a Course of Exercises. By ALFRED ELWES. 1s. 6d.
35. **Spanish-English and English-Spanish Dictionary.** Including a large number of Technical Terms used in Mining, Engineering, &c., with the proper Accents and the Gender of every Noun. By ALFRED ELWES. 4s.; cloth boards, 5s. ** Or with the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 6s.
55. **Portuguese Grammar,** in a Simple and Practical Form. With a Course of Exercises. By ALFRED ELWES. 1s. 6d.
56. **Portuguese-English and English-Portuguese Dictionary,** with the Genders of each Noun. By ALFRED ELWES. [Nearly ready.]

HEBREW.

- 46*. **Hebrew Grammar.** By Dr. BRESSLAU. 1s. 6d.
44. **Hebrew and English Dictionary,** Biblical and Rabbinical; containing the Hebrew and Chaldee Roots of the Old Testament Post-Rabbinical Writings. By Dr. BRESSLAU. 6s.
46. **English and Hebrew Dictionary.** By Dr. BRESSLAU. 3s.
- 44,46. **Hebrew Dictionary** (as above), in Two Vols., complete, with 46*. the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 12s.

LATIN.

19. **Latin Grammar.** Containing the Inflections and Elementary Principles of Translation and Construction. By the Rev. THOMAS GOODWIN, M.A., Head Master of the Greenwich Proprietary School. 1s.
20. **Latin-English Dictionary.** By the Rev. THOMAS GOODWIN, M.A. 2s.
22. **English-Latin Dictionary;** together with an Appendix of French and Italian Words which have their origin from the Latin. By the Rev. THOMAS GOODWIN, M.A. 1s. 6d.
- 20, 22. **Latin Dictionary** (as above). Complete in One Vol., 3s. 6d. cloth boards, 4s. 6d. * * Or with the GRAMMAR, cloth boards, 5s. 6d.
- LATIN CLASSICS.** With Explanatory Notes in English.
1. **Latin Delectus.** Containing Extracts from Classical Authors, with Genealogical Vocabulary and Explanatory Notes, by H. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.
2. **Cæsar's Commentarii de Bello Gallico.** Notes, and a Geographical Register for the Use of Schools, by H. YOUNG. 2s.
3. **Cornelius Nepos.** With Notes. By H. YOUNG. 1s.
4. **Virgilii Maronis Bucolica et Georgica.** With Notes on the Bucolics by W. RUSHTON, M.A., and on the Georgics by H. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.
5. **Virgilii Maronis Æneis.** With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by H. YOUNG. New Edition, revised and improved. With copious Additional Notes by Rev. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L., formerly Scholar of Brasenose College, Oxford. 3s.
- 5* ——— Part 1. Books i.—vi., 1s. 6d.
- 5** ——— Part 2. Books vii.—xii., 2s.
6. **Horace; Odes, Epode, and Carmen Sæculare.** Notes by H. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.
7. **Horace; Satires, Epistles, and Ars Poetica.** Notes by W. BROWNRIGG SMITH, M.A., F.R.G.S. 1s. 6d.
8. **Sallustii Crispi Catalina et Bellum Jugurthinum.** Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by W. M. DONNE, B.A., Trin. Coll., Cam. 1s. 6d.
9. **Terentii Andria et Heautontimorumenos.** With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s. 6d.
10. **Terentii Adelphi, Hecyra, Phormio.** Edited, with Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 2s.
11. **Terentii Eunuchus, Comœdia.** Notes, by Rev. J. DAVIES, M.A. 1s. 6d.
12. **Ciceronis Oratio pro Sexto Roscio Amerino.** Edited, with an Introduction, Analysis, and Notes, Explanatory and Critical, by the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s. 6d.
13. **Ciceronis Orationes in Catilinam, Verrem, et pro Archia.** With Introduction, Analysis, and Notes, Explanatory and Critical, by Rev. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L. formerly Scholar of Brasenose College, Oxford. 1s. 6d.
14. **Ciceronis Cato Major, Lælius, Brutus, sive de Senectute, de Amicitia, de Claris Oratoribus Dialogi.** With Notes by W. BROWNRIGG SMITH, M.A., F.R.G.S. 2s.
16. **Livy: History of Rome.** Notes by H. YOUNG and W. B. SMITH, M.A. Part 1. Books i., ii., 1s. 6d.
- 16* ——— Part 2. Books iii., iv., v., 1s. 6d.
17. ——— Part 3. Books xxi., xxii., 1s. 6d.
19. **Latin Verse Selections,** from Catullus, Tibullus, Propertius, and Ovid. Notes by W. B. DONNE, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge. 2s.
20. **Latin Prose Selections,** from Varro, Columella, Vitruvius, Seneca, Quintilian, Florus, Velleius Paterculus, Valerius Maximus, Suetonius, Apuleius, &c. Notes by W. B. DONNE, M.A. 2s.
21. **Juvenalis Satiræ.** With Prolegomena and Notes by T. H. S. ESCOTT, B.A., Lecturer on Logic at King's College, London. 2s.

GREEK.

14. **Greek Grammar**, in accordance with the Principles and Philological Researches of the most eminent Scholars of our own day. By HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON. 1s. 6d.
- 15, 17. **Greek Lexicon**. Containing all the Words in General Use, with their Significations, Inflections, and Doubtful Quantities. By HENRY R. HAMILTON. Vol. 1. Greek-English, 2s. 6d.; Vol. 2. English-Greek, 2s. Or the Two Vols. in One, 4s. 6d.: cloth boards, 5s.
- 14, 15. **Greek Lexicon** (as above). Complete, with the GRAMMAR, in 17. One Vol., cloth boards, 6s.

GREEK CLASSICS. With Explanatory Notes in English.

1. **Greek Delectus**. Containing Extracts from Classical Authors, with Genealogical Vocabulary and Explanatory Notes, by H. YOUNG. New Edition, with an improved and enlarged Supplementary Vocabulary, by JOHN HUTCHISON, M.A., of the High School, Glasgow. 1s. 6d.
- 2, 3. **Xenophon's Anabasis**; or, The Retreat of the Ten Thousand. Notes and a Geographical Register, by H. YOUNG. Part 1. Books i. to iii., 1s. Part 2. Books iv. to vii., 1s.
4. **Lucian's Select Dialogues**. The Text carefully revised, with Grammatical and Explanatory Notes, by H. YOUNG. 1s. 6d.
- 5-12. **Homer, The Works of**. According to the Text of BARUMLEIN. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, drawn from the best and latest Authorities, with Preliminary Observations and Appendices, by T. H. L. LEARY, M.A., D.C.L.
- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| THE ILIAD: | Part 1. Books i. to vi., 1s. 6d. | Part 3. Books xiii. to xviii., 1s. 6d. |
| | Part 2. Books vii. to xii., 1s. 6d. | Part 4. Books xix. to xxiv., 1s. 6d. |
| THE ODYSSEY: | Part 1. Books i. to vi., 1s. 6d. | Part 3. Books xiii. to xviii., 1s. 6d. |
| | Part 2. Books vii. to xii., 1s. 6d. | Part 4. Books xix. to xxiv., and Hymns, 2s. |
13. **Plato's Dialogues**: The Apology of Socrates, the Crito, and the Phædo. From the Text of C. F. HERMANN. Edited with Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 2s.
- 14-17. **Herodotus, The History of**, chiefly after the Text of GAISFORD. With Preliminary Observations and Appendices, and Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by T. H. L. LEARY, M.A., D.C.L.
- | |
|---|
| Part 1. Books i., ii. (The Clio and Enterpe), 2s. |
| Part 2. Books iii., iv. (The Thalia and Melpomene), 2s. |
| Part 3. Books v.-vii. (The Terpsichore, Erato, and Polymnia), 2s. |
| Part 4. Books viii., ix. (The Urania and Calliope) and Index, 1s. 6d. |
18. **Sophocles: Œdipus Tyrannus**. Notes by H. YOUNG. 1s.
20. **Sophocles: Antigone**. From the Text of DINDORF. Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by the Rev. JOHN MILNER, B.A. 2s.
23. **Euripides: Hecuba and Medea**. Chiefly from the Text of DINDORF. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by W. BROWNIGG SMITH, M.A., F.R.G.S. 1s. 6d.
26. **Euripides: Alceſtis**. Chiefly from the Text of DINDORF. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by JOHN MILNER, B.A. 1s. 6d.
30. **Æschylus: Prometheus Vincſtus: The Prometheus Bound**. From the Text of DINDORF. Edited, with English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s.
32. **Æschylus: Septem Contra Thebes: The Seven against Thebes**. From the Text of DINDORF. Edited, with English Notes, Critical and Explanatory, by the Rev. JAMES DAVIES, M.A. 1s.
40. **Aristophanes: Acharnians**. Chiefly from the Text of C. H. WEISE. With Notes, by C. S. T. TOWNSEND, M.A. 1s. 6d.
41. **Thucydides: History of the Peloponnesian War**. Notes by H. YOUNG. Book 1. 1s.
42. **Xenophon's Panegyric on Agesilaus**. Notes and Introduction by L. F. W. JEWITT. 1s. 6d.
43. **Demosthenes: The Oration on the Crown and the Philippics**. With English Notes. By Rev. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L., formerly Scholar of Brasenose College, Oxford. 1s. 6d.

